



CASSANDRA, A ROMANCE.

Written Originally in French,

Faithfully Translated into English,

BY

Sir CHARLES COTTERELL,
Master of the CEREMONIES.

VOL. IV.

The THIRD EDITION, very much Corrected.

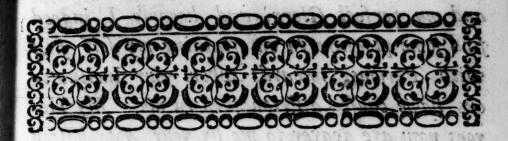
LONDON:

Printed for J. DARBY, A. BETTESWORTH, F. FAYRAM, J. PEMBERTON, J. HOOKE, C. RIVINGTON, F. CLAY, J. BATLEY, E. SYMON. M.DCC.XXV.

ISSAND

yay andrial abiet set.





Tito Author to Califfa.

easte in pleasing son I meet have

judged them worthy of the tent diffections, the ave, too proud of that here Entwe a to steep

than by their ocon Defert, and fince you

AUTHOR

in your offecial. They wiled I was taken up court be Businesses was a proven from this, sale

CALISTA.

bring them to you a fought time, divine,



I is but reason, Calista, that I should watch for you all manner of ways, and that some part of those Nights you make me pass

without Sleep, should be bestowed on this Employment which you have ordained me: I obey you without Repugnance, both be-

cause in pleasing you I meet my Satisfaction and my perfect Glory, and because I indeed find some pleasure in entertaining my self still with Persons, towards whom your Inclinations bave caused a Friendship in me. My Heroes now are dearer to me by your Approbation than by their own Defert, and since you have judged them worthy of your Affections, they are too proud of that high Fortune to neglect any thing from benceforth that may maintain them in it, or to conceal any of those gallant Actions from you which may preserve them in your esteem. They, when I was taken up with Businesses very different from this, sollicited me themselves to give you the Continuation of their Adventures, and I had your Commands too deeply graven in my Remembrance to resist their Sollicitations. I here bring them to you a fourth time, divine Calista; at their next visit they shall take their Leave of you, and in this they perhaps will tell you some part of that you have desired from them. If you think my Arfaces too long in the recital of his Life, perhaps you will pardon that Defect, in Consideration of the Accidents whereof it is composed, and of the

t

3

1

011

ed

11

i-

e-

012

ve

ey

Et

in

nt

m

up

1-

a-

ur

12-

re

a-

ir

ill

ed

00

ou

of

of

be

the Importance of the Actions and Person; fince his Death drew Tears from your fair Eyes, and that you have interessed your self enough both in his return, and in his whole Fortune, to bear the relation of it without Weariness. If all the Adventures of it are not equal, and if you find some places in them not so strong, nor so diverting as others, you will be pleased to consider, that my Invention bas not had an entire Liberty, and that it has been rack'd by Chronology, by the Truth of the History, and by those things I had already written; and, in short, that I have been put to it, as many others would have been, to make Darius's Son pass bis time bandsomly in Scythia, whilft his Country was laid desolate, and his Father deprived of his Empire. and of his Life, by Alexander's victorious Forces. Tet in this Encounter, and in many others, which truly have kept me in a very troublesome Constraint, I have stuck to Probability as much as possibly I could, and bave made up a Story which in mine own Opinion is not the most defective of this Piece. You your self (it may be) will make a more favourable Judgment of it, than I, since you have A 3 ever

ever shewed as much Goodness, and as much Complacency to your Cassandra, as you have had little for him who gave her to you before her Birth, and who here confirms the Gift with that of his own Life.



CASSAN-



CASSANDRA.

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK I.

HILE nothing but Joy refounds in the Prince of Scythia's Tent, Sorrow displays all its mournful Effects in that of Antigonus, and in the Soul of young Demetrius.

That amorous Prince, whom the Variety of so many Objects, and of so many Em-

ployments, could not divert from his fatal Thoughts, was gone out as foon as Day began to break, to pay his ordinary Tribute to the Ashes of his Hermione. He had wash'd the cold Marble of her Tomb with his Tears, whose Source seem'd impossible to be dried up; he had invok'd her Ghost, and a thousand times pronounc'd that Name so dear to his Remembrance; when after having spent some time in these doleful Employments, he began

A

to walk along the River-side, seeking in all kind of Ob-

jects for new Matter to increase his Affliction.

He was insensibly gotten a good way from the Camp, and already drew near that Walk which reach'd from the Bank of the River to the Temple of Apollo, when he chanc'd to light upon an extraordinary Adventure. He first saw certain Horses loosned from a Chariot which stood some twenty Paces from them, and a little farther off under certain Trees he saw Women sitting upon the Grass, and three or four Men standing about them. Demetrius's sorrowful Humour made him think of going directly back, or of turning into some other way to avoid that Encounter.

For that Purpose, after having taken a little Circuit, he left that Company on his Right-hand, but passing somewhat near them, he discover'd Objects that were powerful enough to ftay him, and make him change his Reso-He cast his Eye upon those Women with more Curiofity than his Grief seem'd to have left him, and being naturally a Lover, or rather an Idolater of that Sex, he began to interest himself in certain Sighs and Complaints he heard come from among them. That potent Inclination which was predominant in him over all others, suspended the Violence of his Sorrow for a few Moments, and made him capable of some Attention, and even of some defire to know more. To fatisfy himself he drew near to those Trees again, and took his place behind a Hedge, thro' which he distinctly could observe the Persons whereof that Company was composed. There was a young Lady, to whom all the rest bore Respect as to the Mistress, or Chief of two Women'that seem'd to be her Retinue, an old Man of reasonable good Presence, and fome other Servants. This Lady was laid along upon the Grass, leaning her Head in the Lap of one of those Women; the old Man was sitting five or six Paces from her, and the Servants stood waiting round about

Demetrius could fee the Lady's Face but on the side, yet in that little that appear'd to his Eyes he observed an extraordinary Beauty. That sight obliged him to lend an Ear to their Conversation, and then he heard the Lady

e

e

h

e

t

-

d

f

e

0

e

S

,

S

C

d

e

Q

Lady speak on this manner; Flatter me no longer, Theogenes, but think as I do, that this eternal Anger of the Gods bas no other Cause but my Ingratitude, and the meanness of my Spirit; I am confident enough of it to believe, that it bath drawn part of those Desolations which have fallen upon our House, and I account it a manifest Folly to struggle any more against my Destiny. Ab! how many Misfortunes sould I have escaped, if I had not surviv'd that deplorable Loss, which settled a gloomy cruel Night for ever in my Soul! What an infinite of Tears sould I have spared my Eyes, and from how many bloody dismal Spectacles sould I have freed them? How great Remorfe, bow great Repentance should I have avoided, and in fort, what a World of Miseries should I have for saken, to enjoy that rest which you have always opposed? Ab! without doubt! (continued she, with a Voice interrupted by many Sighs) without doubt, O most valiant, and most confrant Prince, I ought to have accompanied you to your Grave; I should then no more be guilty of faint-heartedness, and should only have felt my first Misfortunes. I should not have seen the loss of my Friends, and the general Ruin of our Family, nor fould I have been reduced to wander from Province to Province, to seek a Sanctury for this Life, which I had so many Occasions

This fair defolate Lady brought forth these Words with so fad and yet so pleasing a Tone, that they pierced even into the very Soul of Demetrius, and prefently begot a Defire in him, both to know that Stranger, and to offer her his Assistance in the Miseries she complained of. With this Intent, lending an Ear to their Discourse more carefully than before, he heard that the old Man, after having kept silence a good while, made this Reply, It is no longer time, Madam, to renew your Grief by these tragical Remembrances which afflict you, and to feek out new Matter of Sorrow in a Wound, which Time, your Reason, and your Resignation to the Will of the Gods, ought to have perfectly cured. You have spent Time enough in mournful Employments, and you have shewed both Sense enough of your Losses, and Contempt enough of your Life, to fear no Reproaches of Ingratitude, or of Meanness of Spirit. Think now of giving some Rest unso your Mind, and begin to hope for an end of part of your

your Miseries. The Gods do expressly command it you, and they have discovered their Intentions clearly enough, to leave your Disobedience no Excuse, and to free you

from all new Caufe of Apprehension.

What would you have me hope, O Theogenes? (said the sair afflicted Lady, with a sigh) shall I hope for the Recovery of those Persons I have lost? and will those Gods, whose Pleasure ought to be a sacred Law to us, restore me the King my Father, of whose Death these Eyes were sad Spectators? Will they regain me that dear Prince, whom my Ingratitude sent unto his Grave? Ah! Theogenes, you know that that's the true Cause of all my Tears, and if you will have me hope for the end of my Wandrings, and for that Resuge which we seek against our Persecutors, how little able is that hope to comfort me; and besides, how little certainty is there in it! That great Man, at whose Feet we went to seek both Resuge and Revenge, is now no longer in this World, and his valiant Successors are imbroil d in Quarrels themselves, which will leave

them but little Sense of ours.

The Lady without Question would have faid more, if Demetrius by chance had not shewed himself a little, and by that fight interrupted their Conversation. he faw he was discovered, he resolved to make his addreffes to that Stranger, and affure her that amongst Alexander's Successors she should still find that Generosity which made him protect the miserable, and the oppressed. At his coming toward them, the fair Stranger raised up her Head, and observing something that was great and noble in Demetrius's Face, she believed him to be a Man of Quality, and thought her felf oblig'd to rife, to repay part of his Salutation. Demetrius had no sooner cast his Eyes upon her, but he was in a manner blinded with the Lustre of that marvellous Beauty, and calling to mind the Remembrance of the most accomplish'd one he knew, he was of Opinion, that he had feen nothing in the Faces of the Princess Berenice, or of Queen Statira, which might not be equall'd in that of this young Stranger. The whitest and smoothest things in the whole World, came nothing near the Delicacy of her Skin, all the Lineaments of her Face were form'd, as it were in Emulation, with the most exact Proportion Nature could possibly bestow, and

u,

h,

uc

he e-

fe

ng ?

de

3

be

3

2-

at ad

C-

18

if

d

n

y

1

S

and her Eyes had fomething in them that was extreamly moving, but moving with fo much Sweetness and Majesty together, that 'twas impossible to bear the Glances of them without being dazled. They inclin'd toward black, and her Hair was of the same Colour; her Neck, her Hand, her Stature left nothing to be defired for their Perfection, and the amazed Demetrius found fo many Caufes of Admiration in that lovely Object, that he lost part of his Confidence, and could not approach fo divine a Person, without extraordinary Fear and Respect. Yet did he draw near her with a very low Obeysance, and when she had returned, what the greatest Strangers thought due to his graceful Fashion; Madam, (said he) the Liberty Itake, would not be pardonable, if the Cause of it were not very lawful; nor bad I interrupted your Conversation, but to put you out of the Doubts you have of Alexander's Successors. My nearest and best Friends hold some Rank among ft them, and I shall not be difavow'd by the better part, when I protest to you, that they will receive the Occasions of doing you service, as the most glorious Fortunes that can befal them. Demetrius spake these Words with such a Grace, that the fair Stranger found little less Reason of Astonishment in him, than he had met in her, and knowing both by his Words, and by many Marks of Greatness which shone forth visibly in him, that he was no common Person, she received his Discourse, and answered him with much Civility; 'Whofoever you are, (faid fhe) that with such goodness offer your Assistance to afflicted Persons, your Countenance gives much Credit to your Words, and I shall never doubt but that such a Man as you are, must needs be one, and one of the most worthy Successors of Alexander. I am one of the ' least considerable amongst them, (replied Demetrius) but I have confidence enough in their Friendship, and in their Vertue, to offer you all the fuccour you can desire of them, and to interest them in your Quarrel, with c a Zeal which will make them forget their own to ferve c you. Their Affairs, (answered the Stranger) are so e great and so important, that the Interests of a miserable Woman ought not to withdraw them from them e neither is it my Intention to make them any unei il Require

your Miseries. The Gods do expresly command it you, and they have discovered their Intentions clearly enough, to leave your Disobedience no Excuse, and to free you

trom all new Caufe of Apprehension.

What would you have me hope, O Theogenes? (said the fair afflicted Lady, with a sigh) shall I hope for the Recovery of those Persons I have lost? and will those Gods, whose Pleasure ought to be a sacred Law to us, restore me the King my Father, of whose Death these Eyes were sad Spectators? Will they regain me that dear Prince, whom my Ingratitude sent unto his Grave? Ah! Theogenes, you know that that's the true Cause of all my Tears, and if you will have me hope for the end of my Wandrings, and for that Resuge which we seek against our Persecutors, how little able is that hope to comfort me; and besides, how little certainty is there in it! That great Man, at whose Feet we went to seek both Resuge and Revenge, is now no longer in this World, and his valiant Successors are imbroil d in Quarrels themselves, which will leave

them but little Sense of ours.

The Lady without Question would have said more, if Demetrius by chance had not shewed himself a little, and by that fight interrupted their Conversation. he faw he was discovered, he resolved to make his addreffes to that Stranger, and affure her that amongst Alexander's Successors she should still find that Generosity which made him protect the miserable, and the oppressed. At his coming toward them, the fair Stranger raifed up her Head, and observing something that was great and noble in Demetrius's Face, she believed him to be a Man of Quality, and thought her felf oblig'd to rife, to repay part of his Salutation. Demetrius had no sooner cast his Eyes upon her, but he was in a manner blinded with the Lustre of that marvellous Beauty, and calling to mind the Remembrance of the most accomplish'd one he knew, he was of Opinion, that he had feen nothing in the Faces of the Princess Berenice, or of Queen Statira, which might not be equall'd in that of this young Stranger. The whitest and smoothest things in the whole World, came nothing near the Delicacy of her Skin, all the Lineaments of her Face were form'd, as it were in Emulation, with the most exact Proportion Nature could possibly bestow,

and her Eyes had fomething in them that was extreamly moving, but moving with fo much Sweetness and Majesty together, that 'twas impossible to bear the Glances of them without being dazled. They inclin'd toward black, and her Hair was of the same Colour; her Neck, her Hand, her Stature left nothing to be defired for their Perfection, and the amazed Demetrius found fo many Caufes of Admiration in that lovely Object, that he lost part of his Confidence, and could not approach fo divine a Person, without extraordinary Fear and Respect. Yet did he draw near her with a very low Obeysance, and when she had returned, what the greatest Strangers thought due to his graceful Fashion; Madam, (said he) the Liberty Itake, would not be pardonable, if the Cause of it were not very lawful; nor bad I interrupted your Conversation, but to put you out of the Doubts you have of Alexander's Successors. My nearest and best Friends hold some Rank among ft them, and I shall not be disavow'd by the better part, when I protest to you, that they will receive the Occasions of doing you service, as the most glorious Fortunes that can befal them. Demetrius spake these Words with such a Grace, that the fair Stranger found little less Reason of Aftonishment in him, than he had met in her, and knowing both by his Words, and by many Marks of Greatness which shone forth visibly in him, that he was no common Person, she received his Discourse, and answered him with much Civility; 'Whofoever you are, (faid fhe) that with such goodness offer your Assistance to afflicted Persons, your Countenance gives much Credit to your Words, and I shall never doubt but that such a Man as you are, must needs be one, and one of the ' most worthy Successors of Alexander. I am one of the e least considerable amongst them, (replied Demetrius) but I have confidence enough in their Friendship, and in their Vertue, to offer you all the fuccour you can defire of them, and to interest them in your Quarrel, with a Zeal which will make them forget their own to ferve e you. Their Affairs, (answered the Stranger) are so great and so important, that the Interests of a miserable Woman ought not to withdraw them from them e neither is it my Intention to make them any unei il Requ fr

Request, but only to demand a Retreat against my cruel Enemies, who having destroyed an illustrious Fami-1y, allied many ways to that of Alexander the Great, do profecute the wretched Relicks of it with an unparale lel'd Inhumanity. You may obtain all that you can defire of them without demanding it, (faid Demetrius) and they that could refuse any thing to the very Look of a Person like your self, would be unworthy of the Memory of Alexander. The Alliance of your Family to that great King will be very considerable among them, who acknowledge all their Glory, and all their Fortune from him, but your Beauty will persuade them more powerfully than any other Argument what soever.' The fair Stranger, extreamly fatisfied with this first Encounter, which by Demetrius's Civility, made her judge favourably of that of his Companions, was already passionately desirous to know him; and her Desire, which the durst not express, was beginning to appear in her Face, when some Officers of the Army passing by, and seeing Demetrius, came towards him with much Respect; whereby she learned the Greatness of his Quality, but not being fully fatisfied with that, she made sign to the old Man, who accompanied her, to inform himself more particularly. Theogenes had no sooner heard from one of those Men, and the fair Stranger from Theogenes, that it was Demetrius the Son of Antigonus, whose Name was known thro' all Europe and Asia, but coming to him, Sir, (faid she) I by so many Marks of Greatness as appear in you, might certainly know you to be a Prince, and I was already confident of it, before I heard you were the Son of Prince Antigonus; his Name is not unknown in our Countries, neither was his Person to the King my Father: Your Youth hath not hindred your Reputation from extending it felf as far as the place of my Nativity, and I cannot but thank my Fate, for having fo happily given me this first Encounter. Demetrius anfwered with very low Submission, and reiterated the Offers he had made her, with fo much Affection and Respect, that she thought she was obliged to discover her felf to him, and to give him a perfect Knowledge of her Fortune.

1

a

h

h

t

fi

10

n

For which purpose, Sir, (replied she) if your Generosity incites you already to comfort my Missortunes, I kope when they are known to you, you will not lose those charitable Desires; and the Obligation I have to your Goodness, will not suffer me longer to conceal the Name, nor the Life of this unsortunate Woman, whom you have thought worthy of your Assistance. The recital of my sad Adventures may perhaps be tedious to you, but if you please to grant them an Hours time, I hope I shall interest you in my Fortune, and I shall make Confessions to you, which I cannot do without Shame, nor without shewing my Acknowledgment for your Civilities, and the confedence I have in your Vertue.

Demetrius confounded at so obliging a Discourse, could not find Words to express the Sense he had of it, and the Sight, and sweet Conversation of that divine Stranger, having in part suspended his Remembrance of Hermione, he prepared himself for Attention, with a respect suitable to the Favour he received; and having testified how considerable it was to him, he sat down with her, by her Command, and making Sign to the Officers to retire, he lent a greedy Ear to her Relation, which she began im-

mediately in these Words.



The History of Deidamia.

I Shall not injure Modesty, if I tell you, that there is I no Blood more illustrious, than that whereof I am descended, since indeed it draws its Original from the Gods, and that from Father to Son without any interruption, we fetch our Pedigree from the great Achilles: He was the Father of Pyrrbus, who after the Siege of Troy, being driven out of his Country, came to inhabit among the Molosses, where he established the Monarchy of the Epirotes. His Son succeeded him, and his Posterity has reigned after him in a right Male line to King Arimbas, the Father of Alexander my Uncle, King of Epirus, of Hacidas my Father who succeeded him in that Kingdom, and of Queen Olympias the Wife of Philip, and Mother of Alexander the Great. By this short touch of our Genealogy, I have let you fee the Kindred that was between the late King Alexander, and us; and moreover you without doubt have heard, how to augment that Alliance between our Families, King Philip gave his Daughter Cleepatra, whom he had by a former Wife, in Marriage to Alexander my Uncle, who by that double Affinity became both his Son-in-Law, and his Brother-in-Law.

After this Knowledge of my Quality, I will tell you, that I was born of Prince *Eacidas* and of the Princess Plotia his Wife, the Daughter of Menon the Thessalian, who acquired so great Reputation in the Lamaick War. I was bred up in the Court of King Alexander my Uncle, and he seeing himself Childless, and loving the Prince his Brother very dearly, caused great Care to be taken of my Education, the Princess my Mother contributing on her side, whatsoever could be expected from so tender an Affection, as that she bore me.

I

n

t

R

W

fo

ci

W

W

is

am

he

p-

He

oy,

ng

he

as

rs,

or

n,

of

2-

en

h-

ce

er

ze

e-

1,

fs

n,

I

2,

is

y

..

I

I will not entertain you with the particulars of my Infancy, among which there is nothing worthy to be told you, and 'twill be sufficient to let you know I passed it without any Trouble, and that was the only Time wherein I tasted any Sweetness or Tranquility. I was as much made of by the King my Uncle, and by the Queen his Wife, as if I had been their own Daughter, and the Marks of a reasonable good Nature which were observed in me, rather than the Appearances of a growing Beauty, wherewith some began to persecute me, gained me the Affections of the whole Court. I lived on this manner, (fince I must abridge the recital of matters of small importance) until my thirteenth Year, which was the last of the calm, and quietness of my Life. The King my Uncle, in whom the Fame of the other Alexander his Brother-in-Law, and his Nephew, begot an Emulation, and who was neither behind him in Ambition, nor in Courage, imagined himself to be born for great Enterprizes as well as he; and did not despair of obtaining as glorious Victories as his. With this Design, he raised a potent Army, and aiming at the Conquest of the West, he passed into Italy, after having put the Government of his Kingdom into the Hands of my Father, who took the Care of it upon him at his Delire, and bearing a great Affection to his Brother, used that Confidence he had in him with a perfect Fidelity, and acquitted himself without reproach of the Charge that had been given him. The Kingdom for a certain Time remained peaceable enough, but within a while after, some of the Moloffes, who naturally are a stirring feditious People, rose up in Arms by the secret Practices of Antipater, whom Alexander the Great had left in Macedonia, and who contrary to his Master's Intentions, strove to make himself great in Europe, at the cost of his Neighbours, and Allies: To foment the Rebellion of the Moloss, he underhand furnished them with Men and Money, and by his Assistance they grew so powerful, that at last they made War openly, fet a mighty Army on foot, and marched streight toward Aacidas, with an Intent to give him Battel. My Father, who at first had been a little negligent of that Revolt, was extreamly unprepared; yet having a very good Courage,

Bo

Cro

tair

any

cult

app.

gen

real four

Stat

offe at t

he l

that

only

who

fom

to .

that

Ave

of t

busy

und

but

in a

muc Adv

all I

and

Eve

for

too

(the

any

Hel

knev

of hi

Ord

our !

Side

the '

rage, he with all possible speed drew together those Forces he had, and giving Order for new Levies, had not the Patience to flay till they were in a readiness to serve him, but went to meet the Rebels with a handful of Men. He trusted to the Justice of his Cause, and believed that his Enemies, half conquered by their Guilt, would never have the boldness to stay his coming; but he found himself deceived in that Expectation, and having given them Battel very unfeafonably, his Army weaker by the half than theirs, was utterly defeated, and scarce was he able with a small remainder of his Men, to fave himself in Ambracia the Metropolis of the Kingdom, where the whole Court did still reside. Then it was that he faw the Fault he had committed, in fighting fo rashly; and that foreseeing the continuation of that War, and the Progress the Enemies might make if they knew how to lay hold of their Advantage, he fent Difpatches on all Sides to his Allies to demand their Assistance, and in the interim labour'd to fortify the Town. and gather'd together all the Forces he had caused to be levied. While he was thus employed, the Rebels made themselves Masters of the Field, under the Conduct of one Tharritas a valiant Commander, and finding no more refistance, came audaciously and laid Siege before Ambracia, where we were all retir'd: My Father had already put it in a Condition to make Defence, and to wait for the relief of his Allies, and 'twas that Knowledge that made him expect the Enemy without Fear. The Approaches of that Siege were very bloody, and the first Events thereof were doubtful; there were many Men flain on either Side, but our Losses were more considerable than theirs, and while our Numbers decreafed, theirs grew more potent every Day.

The little Understanding I have in War, hinders me from making you a long Discourse of it, and I the more willingly pass over the Relation, because 'tis of little consequence to the Knowledge of my Life. Among those that held out the Siege with us, was Neoptolemus, the cruel Author of our Missortunes, a Prince of the Blood of the Eacidas, as we were, and who next to the Royal Family, was the chief in all Epirus; tho' he wanted a

Crown,

Crown, he wanted not a Desire to have one, and to attain that sovereign Dignity, he would neither have left. any thing unattempted, nor have thought any thing difficult to his Ambition. He from my earliest Years had applied himself to serve me, and at that Time was diligent enough to let me fee, it, whether it were that he really was in Love with me, or that in our Alliance he found Advantages, and Means to Support himself in the State. Eacidas fuffer'd him to proceed without being offended at it, because of Neoptolemus's Quality, which at that Time was little disproportionate to ours; but yet he had no great Desire to that Match, whether it were that he lik'd not Neoptolemus's Person; or having but one only Daughter, with whom he flatter'd himfelf, and of whom he had conceiv'd too good an Opinion, he had fome higher aim for her; or that perhaps he was willing to comply with my Inclinations which were no way bent to love Neoptolemus: Indeed I saw nothing in his Person that was not unpleasing to me, and I had taken such an Aversion against him, as made me receive all the Proofs of his Affection as so many Injuries. He was extreamly bufy in the Siege to make himself considerable to us, and undertook sometimes to Sally forth upon the Enemies, but he was always beaten in again, and succeeded so ill in all his Enterprizes, that our Condition was thereby much impaired. In the mean Time our Enemies had great Advantages over us, they had taken our Out-works, stopt all Passages of Victuals and Relief that might come to us, and had shut us up in our Walls, with little Hope of the Event of that War. My Father was like to have died for Grief, and knowing that the King his Brother was too far off, and too deeply ingaged in his new Conquests (the Noise whereof had often come to our Ears) to expect any Assistance from him, and that he had no News of Help from his Allies, upon which he had depended, he knew not what to resolve upon, and for a cruel surcharge of his Afflictions, he heard that the Forces he had given Order to raise in his Provinces, were cut in pieces by our Enemies, who went to meet them, and that on every Side all Hope was forbidden him. This Knowledge put the whole Court in very great Perplexity, and began fo

to deject the Soldiers Hearts, that it was very hard to make them labour for their own Defence; our Provisions also began to fail us, and in short, we saw our selves re-

duc'd to very great Extremity.

Hacidas would not capitulate with his Enemies, whether it were that he refolv'd to be faithful to his Brother even to the utmost, or that he distrusted the Words of those Rebels. We no longer had any Hope but in the Assistance of Heaven, when Heaven gave us Proof that it had not forfaken us, and fent us Relief in a Time, when without its Arrival we were in no possibility of Safety. All the Passages, as I have said already, were so close block'd up, that no Intelligence of it could any way come to us; and 'twas from the tops of our Towers that we perceiv'd a Dust, and saw the Arms of our Allies glitter against the Sun; we waver'd between Hope and Fear, and could not discern whether those Forces were Friends or Enemies, when we from far discover'd them fighting with our Besiegers, and within a little after, we receiv'd a more perfect Assurance by some of their Horsemen, who having flipt aside during the Skirmish, had found means to get near our Walls, and to shoot Arrows into the City, at whose Heads there were Letters fastned, which were brought to my Father, containing Words to this Effect.

Agis King of the Lacedæmonians to Prince Æacides.

Come to your Relief with ten Thousand Grecians, able to subdue your Rebels; expect an infallible

· Victory over them, and to facilitate it, Sally you forth

e upon their Backs, while we are Fighting with them

on the other Side, this double Assault will without doubt put them in disorder, and I hope we shall in one

our Entineers, who were to meet

Day make an end of the War.

Sight Hope was fixeliated bins. This Knowledge pite

ra

de

th

th

to

an

qu

W

Ne

joi

ou

had

lie

and

del

Oll

fec

the

ral

of t

cer

the Co

Ho at

wei

Del

mee

us k

Cou

com

fron

nish

Perf

adm

been the

These Words caused such a joy in my Father, and in all the Besieged, as can very hardly be expressed, and raised their drooping Courages so suddenly, that they demanded nothing more but Arms, to make a Sally upon their Enemies. By my Father's Orders, Neoptolemus at the Head of two Thousand Men, went forth of the Gates to fall upon those that were left to guard the Trenches, and did it so successfully, that they were constrain'd to quit them, and retire to their Companions, who already were ingag'd in a sharp Encounter with the Grecians; Neoptolemus pursued them, and when all the Forces were join'd, they fought a cruel and a bloody Battel; they of our Party who came off, assur'd us afterward, that they had feen the valiant Agis do Actions that surpass all Belief, and all Imagination; that all the Deeds of Achilles, and of other the most renowned Heroes which Fame hath deliver'd to our Times, could hardly equal those prodigi-

ous ones he did that Day.

To fay Truth, he fought fo well, and was fo bravely seconded by his Men, that our Enemies, tho' more than they by a third part, were utterly Defeated, their General kill'd by the Hand of valiant Agis, and the Reliques of them that escaped the Slaughter, retired in disorder to certain Places that were at their Devotion. Never was there feen so gallant, nor so sudden an Execution; and when they brought us News of it, and we heard we were Conquerors, and freed from a Siege, which but Four Hours before threatned no less than our total Ruin, we at first could hardly give Credit to those Miracles; yet were they foon confirmed to us when we faw our valiant Deliverer approach our Walls. Eacidas went forth to meet him, and to honour him the more would needs have us keep him Company, attended by all the Ladies of the Court, who prepared themselves with Joy to shew their compliance to his Defires. We met him a few Furlongs from our Gates, and as the effects of his Valour had aftonished us, we found new Causes of admiration in his Person; and would it had pleased the Gods I had only admired him, and that Acknowledgment and Esteem had been the only Recompences I had given him, both for. the General, and my particular Safety. Ah! Remembrance.

to

th

al

W

A

yo

er,

his

tha

Re

the

of t

wh:

der

fom

hope

(crie

Agis

fhal]

lefs

been

the I

living

ceal 1

which

other

mia.

as mu

altoni

make

If

that I shall Blush, and Weep so long as I live, for Shame and for Grief that I lov'd you not enough. The next Day when he had waited upon the Queen, and the Princess my Mother, he came also to visit me in my Chamber; his Face and Cloaths were not then covered with Blood and Dust, but the' being in another Dress, he seem'd more handsom than the Day before, methought he was less confident; and as Bold and Eloquent as he was, he then was in fuch a Silence, and fuch a Confusion, that I could not chuse but partake with him in it; all his Difcourse was nothing but Civility, yet he accompanied it with Looks and Sighs, which strengthned those Suspicions that began to fettle themselves pleasingly in my He staid two Days longer with us, during which Mind. time he had not the Confidence to discover his Intentions; but when he could no more conceal them, he declar'd them in a very gallant and a very extraordinary manner.

He had already proposed to my Father, that it was necessary to prosecute the remainder of the Rebels, and that without giving them time to recruit, it was best to make our selves Masters of all the Country, and recover the Places they had taken from us, before they had

put themselves in a Condition to defend them.

For the execution of this Design, after having given only three Days to the refreshing of his Forces, he refolved to take the Field with eight Thousand of his Men that still were lest, and four Thousand Epirotes under the Command of Theogenes, this old Man you see here with me, whose Quality is considerable in Epirus, and whose experience in War has shewed it self in many Employments of that Nature. Agis would by no Means suffer Eacidas to stir out of the City, whether it were to prevent intestine Rebellions, or that he might have the Glory alone of having ended that War, and saved the Crown of Epirus from manifest Ruin.

The Army was already drawn up in the Field, and their valiant General was in the Palace-Hall, where he was taking his leave of my Father, and of the whole Court, which was there assembled, after he had loudly promised my Father, that within two Months he would

obliged to him than can be expressed, both for his past Actions, and for what he was going to undertake in Fayour of that Kingdom, knew not which way he should thank him sufficiently; but after having exalted his Praifes to the Clouds, By what means (faid he) O the most valiant, and the most generous of all Princes, by what means shall we be able to acknowledge our Engagements to you, and what worthy Recompence can we offer to the Defender of our Lives and Liberties? Certainly, the Gifts of this Crown you have preserved, and the Blood of all that are Subjects to it, would be too light a return for what you have done for them; and if in your gallant Actions, Glory were not your only Aim, you would leave a Country Peaceable and Triumphant, indeed, by your Valour, but generally afflicted for its want of Power, which will keep it for ever in a forced Ingratitude.

Agis taking occasion by this Encouragement to declare his Intentions; Do not think, Sir, (said he to his Father) that I am so perfectly generous as to quit the hope of Reward you promise to my Services; I began to do you them out of a Duty which binds us to our Allies, and out of that consideration of Glory which you alledg; but in what I have yet to do for you, suffer me a little to consider my own Interest, and since you judge me worthy of some Recompence give me leave to demand it, and to hope for it particularly from your self. By all the Gods (cried Aacidas, listing up his Hands to Heaven) King Agis shall never pretend to any thing from me, which shall not be granted him, and I shall not think my self less happy in requiting his great Obligations, than I have

been in receiving them.

If it be so (replied Agis with a contented Look) I am the most glorious, and the most fortunate of all Men living, and since it is not possible for me longer to conceal the favour I desire from you, I demand a Price, Sir, which is infinitely above my Services, and that is no other thing but the Permission to serve the Princess Deidamia. All the Company was surprized at this Discourse, as much as you can imagine; **Eacidas* was in a manner associated, and I was struck into a Consusion which I

I

a

C

y

0

e

b

q

th

fo

fe

ar

F

W

Fa

mi

the

1000

am not able to represent; yet he having already won the Affections of the whole Court, the whole Court interested it felf joyfully in his Demand, and testified their Sense of it by Cries, and clapping of Hands, which confirm'd my Father in the Knowledge of the Advantages he faw in that Proposition; and to say Truth, he received it very handsomly, and breaking the Silence, in which that Surprize had held him for a while, he turn'd toward Agis, and discovering his Intention by a Countenance more chearful than ordinary; Sir, (faid he) my Daughter hath no way merited the Honour you do her, but if you have found any thing in her worthy of your Esteem, I find no less Advantage to my felf by this last Obligation, than this whole Kingdom has to you for your former ones: If I could give her Empires for a Dowry, I should accept of your Alliance with greater Joy; but fince that, fuch as the is, you have not disdain'd her, I command her to receive this Honour with all that Respect and Acknowledgment which is due to a Prince like your felf.

And I (replied the Prince) do here declare, that I will not abuse your Goodness, nor the Command you impose upon her; for pretending to nothing from you, but the Permission of serving her, I leave her fully at Liberty, to make what Judgment the shall please of my Services: When the Kingdom is fettled in Peace, I will come to lav them at her Feet, and if by them I can obtain a confirmation of the Favour you shew me, I will beg the continuance of it, which I shall prefer both before all the Empires of the World, and before all the sublimest Fortunes. As he ended these Words, he bent one Knee to the Ground before me, and taking one of my Hands, which I could not refuse him in that Company, especially after my Father's Command; Madam, (faid he) let the violence of my Passion gain Pardon for my Insolence; Respect made me demand the consent of the Prince your Father, before its Declaration, but I'll draw no Advantage thence which can displease you, and will never ask that by his Authority, which I shall not be able to procure by my Services; grant me the Favour to second his approbation of them, and to accept the Gift I make you, of a Life which shall never be but the Princess Deidamia's When

he

ed

fe

d

W

it

cn

rd

ce

er

ou

I

n,

ier

ıld

at,

nd

ill

ofe,

he

to

es :

to

on-

the

all

eft

ds,

lly

the

Re-

our

an-

ask

ro-

his

ou,

hen

When he had ended these Words, he kissed my Hand, and both by that Action, and by what he had said, drew a blush into my Cheeks, and put me into a Confusion, which lest me not the power to answer him; neither was it necessary I should, and the Princess my Mother being willing to help me out of that trouble, spoke for me, and addressing her self to the King, who already was risen from his Knee; Sir, (said she) you will be pleased to spare Deidamia a Declaration, whereof her Age is uncapable, and give me leave to assure you for her, that she will ever be most ready to acknowledge the good Inclinations wherewith you honour her, both according to the merits of so great a King, and according to the command of the Prince her Father.

Agis appeared transported at this Reply, and having saluted the Princess my Mother in the same manner as he had done me, he received the endearments of *Eacidas*, and of the whole Court, with demonstrations of a perfect Contentment; and not making any longer stay, after he had taken his last Farewel, he went out of the Palace, and so out of the Town, and having hindred my Father's Intention, which was to wait upon him part of that day's March, he placed himself at the Head of his Army, and

advanced directly toward the Enemy.

It would be no easy matter for me to represent what my Thoughts were really at that time; but I may well confess to you that they inclin'd toward Joy, and that as young as I was, I found nothing in this Encounter but occasions of Satisfaction; the surprize of Agis's unexpected Proceeding, had put me a little out of Countenance, but my being already disposed to wish him very well. quickly obtained his Pardon for it, and reflecting upon the excellent qualities of his Person, I in that Conquest found all manner of Contentment and Advantage to my felf. I considered that the way he had gone was full of an exceeding great regard to me, and that in asking my Father's Approbation, before he made me acquainted with his Love, he had shew'd the respect he bore our Family, and had freed me from all the blame a Princess might receive, by giving way to a fecret Pretender. In short, both for all these Reasons, and the remembrance VOL. IV.

of his Merit, I began to love him in good earnest, and the will of my Friends affords excuse enough to my Affection, to give me liberty to own it to you. I faw nothing in his Person that was not lovely to the highest Degree; nay, I could not fo much as wish for any thing that was not to be found most advantageously in him. This Affection which I felt take birth, without making any Opposition to hinder it, began to cause disquiets in me, to which I had not been accustomed, and the effect absence uses to produce in the Hearts of those that love, entring insensibly into mine, Grief for his being away, and Fear for those Dangers whereinto he was going to cast himself, found place in it very quickly, and I made no Prayers to Heaven, without employing part of them for his Safety, and for his speedy Return. The Prince my Father, and the Princess my Mother, who saw real Advantages both to them and me in his Alliance, confirm'd me in those Thoughts themselves, and the whole Court to his united Interests, thro' the present remembrance of those important Obligations it had to him, rung his Praifes eternally in my Ears, and fortified me in my Affection by all manner of Reasons. Only Neoptolemus was discontented at it, but discontented even to Rage, and not being able to dissemble his Resentments, he murmur'd loudly at the Injustice that was done him, in preferring a strange Prince, whom they hardly knew, before a Prince of the Blood of Eacidas, and in suffering him in one Day to carry away the recompence of the Services of his whole Life. He made his complaint to my Father, but reap'd very little Satisfaction; nay, he complain'd of it to me my felf, but in such insolent Terms, that I was forced to tell him he had no reason to envy Agis his Fortune, for tho' my Father had not disposed of me in favour of that Prince, his Condition had been never a whit the better; and in fhort, that tho' there had never been such a Man as Agis in the World, Deidamia would never have been for Neoptolemus. He was not much contented with this Answer, but not being in a Condition to let his Resentments break out further, while Agis was busied for the fafety of Epiras, which was wholly indebted to him for it, he strove to diffemble them till another Season, that

A go th

fi

21

th

of fir

110

for from plea

ctory decli ditio Adv

in Tr

T Com di∂ta might be more proper for him to take Satisfaction. In the mean time our valiant Defender drew the War gloriously to a Conclusion; I understand it too little to enlarge my self in the particular Relation thereof, and 'twill suffice me to tell you, that within three Months be gain'd another Battel over the Rebels, perfected the Deseat of them in some other Encounters, which were all savourable to him, and either by Force, or by the Terror of his Arms, made himself Master of all the Places they had gotten to their Party. Still as we received News of these Successes, I receiv'd Letters from him also; I will not trouble you with relating what they contain'd, most of them I have forgotten, and only remember the very first, which was in these Words:

King Agis to the Princess Deidamia.

awrels, and laten with the Spoils of his Enemies,

WHAT will not the fortunate Agis, inspired with the remembrance of the Princess Deidamia, be able to do for the Tranquility of Epirus? And what may not be hoped for from a Heart animated with so glorious a Passion? I would it pleased the Gods I were as certain of the Victory over my Princess's Mind, as over the Enemies of this State; but what Victory can be kope for who begins by his own Defeat, and who declares himself conquered before he has Fought? In this Condition of my Fortune, the success of this War could not be to my Advantage; but that which others may find in Conquests, and in Triumphs, is sound by kappy Agis in the Glory of being vanquished by Deidamia.

This was the first Letter I receiv'd, and by my Father's Command I wrote him an Answer, which my Mother dictated, and which as I remember was in these Terms:

B 2

queror to demand a Recompense for

The

The Princess Deidamia to the King of the Lacedemonians.

BOTH to conquer the Enemies of Epitus, and to conquer the Mind of Deidamia, King Agis hath Arms which promise him an infallible Success; his Valour alone is sufficient to defeat the Rebels, and as touching the Victory he desires over my Mind, he ought to hope for it, not only from the Will of them that have Power to dispose of me, but from that they have left unto my self, which shall ever make me acknowledge as well what my Friends owe to his Generosity, as what I am indebted to his Merit and to his Affection.

I received many others, as I have already told you, but within a while after we receiv'd himself, Crown'd with Lawrels, and laden with the Spoils of his Enemies, whose remainders he had settled in an Obedience, which left not so much as any appearance of Trouble in the Kingdom. You may eafily judge how he was welcom'd, and can imagine without my telling it, that all the Magnificence the Epirots could possibly shew, was to be seen when he made his Entrance; we went a good way forth to meet him, and that Interview passed with demonstrations of Joy and Affection, which it would be very difficult to represent; but our particular Meeting stirr'd up more tender and more pressing motions in our Hearts than in the rest of the Company; and I confess, that in that fecond Encounter, I in the Person of Agis found a thousand new inducements to love him.

I

W

m

m

to

ha le

co

the

na ev

qu

his

That first Day was spent in Triumphs, and in Rejoycings for his return, and for the happy success of his Enterprizes. He came to visit me at my Lodging, and gave me a thousand confirmations of his Love, with a grace in which it was impossible, not only for the prepossessed Deidamia, but even for the most insensible Woman of the World to defend her self. I come not (said he) as a Conqueror to demand a Recompence for what I have done to secure

fecure this Kingdom, but as a guilty Person that waits at your Feet to expect what Punishment you will inflict upon his Presumption; and I acknowledge that I have less defended Epirus with my Forces, than I have offended Deidamia by my audacious Thoughts: But I was not Master of that noble Passion, which totally possessing my Soul with an absolute Empire, left me not the least power in the World over my felf; and I believ'd, that putting my felf into the hazard of dying for you, there was too much Glory in my Destiny to forbear to publish it; 'twas that that made me hasten a Declaration, which perhaps you have not forgiven me, and though I am not able to repent it, I accounted my Temerity fo worthy to be condemned, that I shall think what Sentence soever you pronounce against it, to be both Just and Merciful. As he made an end of these Words, he fix'd his Eyes on mine with fuch a passionate Action, that his Silence expressed his Thoughts more eloquently than they had done; and knowing that I should neither displease Eacidas, nor injure the Moderty of my Sex, by giving him civil Proofs of my Affection, I made no difficulty of taking a little liberty in Favour of him, and of following the Command of my Friends, the Wishes of the whole Court, and the Incitements of mine own Inclination; Sir, (faid I, after I had staid a while without reply) your Services are most important, and your Offences very light, and that Declaration, whereof you accuse your self as of a Crime, was made with too much Respect and Freedom, to leave me any matter of Complaint against you; I think it a most judicious Course for Persons of your Quality and mine, and my Father's approbation gives me the liberty to confider your good Will, upon which I should not have been able to have cast my Eyes, without the Knowledge of his; I will confess to you moreover, since this confession is due to the Merit of your Person, and to that of the great Obligation you have laid upon us, that in the order he gave me in Favour of you, I found no repugnance in my felf to obey him, nor while I live will I ever have any to acknowledge your Affection. Agis was quite transported with Joy at this reply, and lifting up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, O Fortune, (cryed ke) B 3 thou

1

e

0

n

h

i

1-

p

ts

in

2

y-

n-

ve

in

led

he

n-nc

to

ure

1

I

(

W

na

fu

pl

ce

in

ha

En

ba

thou dost but play with my Destiny, and these Favours are too great to be of any long continuance; thou, in the beginning of my Services, hast given me a Prize, which could not be due to the most obsequious endeavours of my whole Life; and without doubt thou wilt forsake me

when I have merited part of it by my Fidelity.

He spake these prophetick Words, and many others, with fuch raptures of Joy, as visibly expressed the greatness of his Passion; and afterwards made me a thousand Protestations of an inviolable Constancy, with such sweet and moving Language, that there are but few Hearts in which they would not have left a deep Impression. He continued frequently to make me the like Visits, but being desirous to stay in our Court, without being burdenfem to the People of Epirus, he sent back his Forces into Greece under the Conduct of one of his Commanders, and kept only with him his menial Servants. He protested publickly that he would not abuse Hacidas's Goodness, and that he pretended not to his Alliance, but when he should have merited it from me, and that I should know him fo well, as he might hope for that through my Inclination, which I as yet paid him out of Obedience.

This manner of Proceeding was extreamly civil and obliging to me, but it was very imprudent for him, and gave him Cause enough to repent it afterward. In the mean time he serv'd me with so great Assiduity, and with Marks of so true and so respectful a Passion, that all that the most ardent and most skilful Lovers ever practised to make themselves be lov'd, must yield to the proofs I receiv'd of his Assection; he comply'd so perfectly with my Desires, and resign'd himself so absolutely to my Inclinations, that he seem'd to be inspir'd only by my Thoughts, or rather to be enliven'd only by my Soul; and indeed he made as fair a Progress in his purpose as he could have wish'd; and I am oblig'd to confess to you, that never Man succeeded better than he in the Design of making himself belov'd by a Person of my Humour and

Condition

It is true that I lov'd him, but with fo strong and so real an Assection, that it hardly was Inserior to his. All the World approv'd it, and all those that knew of it thought

e

f

e

-

d

t

n

e

2-

1-

0

d

d

s,

ne

W

1-

br

nd

he

th

at

to

·e-

th

11-

ny

1;

he

u,

of

nd

fo

M

it

ht

thought it fo well grounded, that it never was condemn'd but by Neoptolemus alone; that Prince indeed, inrag'd that Agis was preferr'd before him, murmur'd publickly at it, and left nothing unattempted to cross our Affairs; he made use of a thousand Inventions to cause Differtion between us, and so exasperated Agis, that if I had not exprelly forbidden him, he would without doubt have punish'd him for the Plots he contriv'd against him: What, Sir? (faid he one Day to my Father) do you imagine that the Alliance of the King of Sparta can be advantageous to you, of a King of one City, and of a City whose Sovereigns are Slaves? Are you blinded with a little Valour, and a little handsomness in his Person? And will your Condition be e're the better for having a handfom Son-in-Law in Greece? If he have done any Service to this State, does it belong to you to recompence him? And is there not a King of Epirus who is wholly oblig'd to him for it? If the King your Brother, to whom I have the Honour to be nearly ally'd, were here, do you think he would prefer this petty Prince of Greece before a Prince of the Blood of Achilles, as he himself is; before a Prince whose Birth, whose Person and whose Fidelity are known to him? He used many Discourses of this Nature, which my Father pardon'd in regard of his Passion, and of his Birth, but which wrought no effect at all upon him. One Day he was in my Chamber, where he had talk'd a great while to me upon that Subject, whereby he got but little Satisfaction, when Agis came in, but Neoptolemus, who could not endure his Prefence, went out without giving him any falute, and before he departed, casting a furious Look at me, I leave the Place to the more fortunate, faid he aloud; rather to the more worthy, anfwered Agis briskly. Neoptolemus stung with that Reply, was going ro return Words which would have incenfed them more, if I had not prevented it by expresly injoining them Silence; and that very Day my Father having been advertised of it, pressed them with so earnest Entreaties to pass their Words to him, that neither of them could refuse to promise he would be quiet.

In short, Agis had obtain'd what he demanded, and having won my Heart according to his Desire, expected

B 4

nothing

t

ľ

I

W

fu

pl

ce

in

ha

Er

ba

thou dost but play with my Destiny, and these Favours are too great to be of any long continuance; thou, in the beginning of my Services, hast given me a Prize, which could not be due to the most obsequious endeavours of my whole Life; and without doubt thou wilt forsake me

when I have merited part of it by my Fidelity.

He spake these prophetick Words, and many others, with fuch raptures of Joy, as visibly expressed the greatness of his Passion; and afterwards made me a thousand Protestations of an inviolable Constancy, with such sweet and moving Language, that there are but few Hearts in which they would not have left a deep Impression. He continued frequently to make me the like Visits, but being desirous to stay in our Court, without being burdenfem to the People of Epirus, he fent back his Forces into Greece under the Conduct of one of his Commanders, and kept only with him his menial Servants. He protested publickly that he would not abuse Eacidas's Goodness, and that he pretended not to his Alliance, but when he should have merited it from me, and that I should know him so well, as he might hope for that through my Inclination, which I as yet paid him out of Obedience.

This manner of Proceeding was extreamly civil and obliging to me, but it was very imprudent for him, and gave him Cause enough to repent it afterward. In the mean time he serv'd me with so great Assiduity, and with Marks of so true and so respectful a Passion, that all that the most ardent and most skilful Lovers ever practised to make themselves be lov'd, must yield to the proofs I receiv'd of his Assection; he comply'd so perfectly with my Desires, and resign'd himself so absolutely to my Inclinations, that he seem'd to be inspir'd only by my Thoughts, or rather to be enliven'd only by my Soul; and indeed he made as fair a Progress in his purpose as he could have wish'd; and I am oblig'd to consess to you, that never Man succeeded better than he in the Design of making himself belov'd by a Person of my Humour and

Condition.

It is true that I lov'd him, but with fo strong and so real an Affection, that it hardly was Inserior to his. All the World approv'd it, and all those that knew of it thought

f

2

,

d

t

n

e

1-

0

d

d

s,

ne

W

i-

br

nd

he

th

at

to

re-

th

11-

ny

1;

he

u,

ot

nd

fo

AW

it

zht

thought it fo well grounded, that it never was condemn'd but by Neoptolemus alone; that Prince indeed, inrag'd that Agis was preferr'd before him, murmur'd publickly at it, and left nothing unattempted to cross our Affairs; he made use of a thousand Inventions to cause Differtion between us, and fo exasperated Agis, that if I had not exprelly forbidden him, he would without doubt have punish'd him for the Plots he contriv'd against him: What, Sir? (Said be one Day to my Father) do you imagine that the Alliance of the King of Sparta can be advantageous to you, of a King of one City, and of a City whose Sovereigns are Slaves? Are you blinded with a little Valour, and a little handsomness in his Person? And will your Condition be e're the better for having a handfom Son-in-Law in Greece? If he have done any Service to this State, does it belong to you to recompence him? And is there not a King of Epirus who is wholly oblig'd to him for it? If the King your Brother, to whom I have the Honour to be nearly ally'd, were here, do you think he would prefer this petty Prince of Greece before a Prince of the Blood of Achilles, as he himself is; before a Prince whose Birth, whose Person and whose Fidelity are known to him? He used many Discourses of this Nature, which my Father pardon'd in regard of his Pastion, and of his Birth, but which wrought no effect at all upon him. One Day he was in my Chamber, where he had talk'd a great while to me upon that Subject, whereby he got but little Satisfaction, when Agis came in, but Neoptolemus, who could not endure his Prefence, went out without giving him any falute, and before he departed, casting a furious Look at me, I leave the Place to the more fortunate, faid he aloud; rather to the more worthy, anfwered Agis briskly. Neoptolemus stung with that Reply, was going ro return Words which would have incenfed them more, if I had not prevented it by expresly injoining them Silence; and that very Day my Father having been advertised of it, pressed them with so earnest Entreaties to pass their Words to him, that neither of them could refuse to promise he would be quiet.

In short, Agis had obtain'd what he demanded, and having won my Heart according to his Desire, expected

B 4

nothing

t

h

a

h

te

E

0

0

W

W

al

tr

je

of

ty

an

W

W

fw

he

im

Ing

the

in

He

nothing for the Consummation of his Love, but the return of a Man whom *Eacidas*, oblig'd to that Respect by all manner of Reason, had sent to the King his Brother to demand his Permission for our Marriage; but while they were in this Expectation, and that I liv'd with my dear Agis as a Person who was upon the point of giving her self wholly to him, his Fortune suffer'd a very strange Revolution; News came, and but too true for our Repose, that King Alexander my Uncle, after having made such a Progress in Italy as promis'd him the total Conquest of it, was defeated in the Country of the Brusians, and slain upon the Place, with the greatest part of his Forces.

All Epirus was most sensibly concern'd in the Loss of that King, who was a Man of admirable Parts, and of a boundless Courage; but Eacidas was comforted by the Crown, which by that Death was set upon his Head. Alexander had no Issue, and there was no Body in Epirus that could dispute the Succession with my Father; neither was it disputed, but with a general Consent he was erown'd in our capital City; and of a Prince's Daughter which I was before, I became a King's, and the probable

inheritrix of the Crown.

The Gods are my Witnesses, that all the Joy I felt at that Augmentation of my Fortune was absolutely in regard of Agis, and that I had no other Satisfaction in seeing my felf exalted, than that I was more worthy of his Affection, and in a Condition one Day to add another Crown to his, if the Gods fent not Hacidas a Son. Agis look'd upon this Alteration of my Fortune with great Aquanimity, and never shew'd himself concern'd in it but for my fake. Many Days were spent as well in the Obsequies of the deceased King, as in the Crowning of my Father; and during that time, Agis continued in his usual Estate, without labouring for the Advacement of that Happiness he pretended to by my Possession: But when he had allow'd the time that was necessary for the Funeral Pomps, for the change of the Soveraign, and for those Affairs that happen at a new coming to the Crown, he then began to think of himself, and demanded of the King my Father, the utmost Testimonies of his good Will,

t

7

r

e

6

T

£

2

e

1.

15

i-

25

er

le

at

e-

e-

is

er

15

at

it

he

of

is

of

ut

he

or

n,

he

od II, Will, and the accomplishment of his Promise; he hoped that the King would receive his Proposition with the same Assection he had expressed ever since his arrival, and ever since his Declaration, but he found him colder than ordinary, and he sell into no little Astonishment when he heard the King demanded him a Month's Delay, alledging some poor Excuses to cover the Alteration of his Humour.

In effect, it was chang'd with the Change of his Condition, and not considering that Ingratitude is the blackest of all Vices, and the most unworthy of a Prince, he had given ear to Neo ptolemus, and a pack of other Flatters, to the prejudice of his Word, and of what he ow'd to the Services of valiant Agis. These wicked People had with Success perswaded him, that the King of Sparta was a good Match indeed for the Daughter of Prince Eacidas, but not for the Daughter of the King of Etirus, and the probable Heiress of the Kingdom; that in truth his Quality was equal to ours, but that great heed was to be taken of contracting an Alliance which submitted Epirus to the Jurisdiction of Sparta, and to the Tyranny of its Ephori; that it was the greatest Misfortune could befal that State, and that of Free-men which they were, or only Subjects to their lawful Sovereigns, the Epirots would become Slaves to that Grecian People, whose Yoke was insupportable to all Nations; that they should lose all their Privileges, and all their Wealth, and should betroth themselves to the Condition of certain People subject to the Athenians, who drained of their Money, and of their Forces, were even deprived also of their Liberty, and employed in nothing else amongst them but base and fervile Uses; they alledged many other Arguments which altogether wrought their Effect upon the Mind of weak unthankful Aacidas. By the Coldness of his Anfwer, Agis had some Apprehension of his Missortune, but he did not absolutely believe it, and could not at first imagine, that a King should be capable of Baseness and Ingratitude, which Titles he might justly give to my Father's Change; and I offend not the Respect I bear him, in repeating the very Terms of that poor unhappy Prince; He came to me with a Countenance in which his Grief

was naturally reprefented, and imprinting part of his Sadness in my Heart at his very coming in, made me presage a part of our Missortunes. What do you ail (said 1) my dearest Agis, and with what Disquiets will you afflift me ? I am tormented (answered he) with a mortal Apprehension, and if my Suspicions are true, I am upon the very brink of Ruin. These Words pierc'd me to the quick, and made me press him to let me know the Cause of

He with extraordinary Agitations of Mind told me the Conference he had newly had with my Father, which recital gave me Thoughts but little different from his, and brought many Particulars into my Head whereby I might have observed a Coldness in my Father towards him: the Reflection I made upon them began to trouble me exceedingly, and the knowledge I had of the King's Humour struck me into a very ominous Fear; yet did I strive to conceal it from him, and dissembling my Opinion as well as possibly I could, I endeavour'd to abate his Sorrows with some Consolation. Fear not, dear Agis, (faid I) fear not a Change which cannot enter into a Prince's Heart, and believe that the King my Father asked you this Delay, and received your Discourse more seriously than he was wont, only to render that Formality to his new Honour; there is no likelihood he should forget what he owes to you, and that he should lose the Remembrance of those Commands he has given me to love you; fuch a Lightness would be too odious, and of too ill an Example, to suffer me to believe he can be capable of it, nor can I have any such Apprehension, without receiving most express Testimonies thereof. I said many other Things, to which he lent sufficient Attention, but they were not able to withdraw him from his Sadness; I easily found it, when looking upon me with Eyes that had somewhat a fatal Aspect, Madam, (said he) I am undone, and this beginning of my Misery suits so directly with fome scurvy Dreams, and other ill-boding Presages which of late have disquieted me, that I cannot recover the Frights they have put me in; Fortune has hitherto used me but too favourably, and fuch a strange unshaken course of Prosperities threatned me with an infallible

n

CC

m

Ki

ma

tor

we

tha

Car

Wh

be y

you

Destruction. Well, (continued he a while after) I must lose Deidamia, but if I lose her, I'll lose my Life at the fame time, and perhaps will accompany it with fo many others, that that Lofs shall be made known thro' all parts of Europe. He brought forth these Words with Marks of fuch a violent Grief, that I was touched with it to the very Heart, and being willing to let him fee how much I was concerned in his Affliction; If you lose Deidamia (faid I) no other Man shall ever have the Advantage to have taken her from you, and I protest by all that we account most holy and sacred, that so long as Agis loves me, I never can be capable of a fecond Affection. If it be fo, (replied Agis) I'll out-brave all the Obstacles that threaten me, and all the Powers of the World are not able to do me any harm while Deidamia is on my fide. But, Madam, remember the Promise you make me, and believe, that in the Extremity I shall demand extream Proofs of your Affection. I was going to anfwer, when our Conversation was interrupted by certain Ladies who came to visit me. We had many other Difcourses upon that subject, and in the mean time, Agis every Day found new Confirmations of his Fears in the King's Countenance; I was little less afflicted at it than he, but I dissembled part of my Sadness, that I might not redouble his. We continued many Days in an Uncertainty, full of Apprehension, but at last our Misfortune was but too plainly discovered to me, and the King being one Day come into my Chamber, took me alone with him into my Closet, where he spoke to me on this manner; Deidamia, when I commanded you to love the King of the Lacedemonians, I was obliged to do fo by many Considerations, which rendred that Alliance advantageous to us; and truly our Obligations to that Prince, and the good Qualities of his Person disposed me towards it with Joy; but our Condition is changed, and we had not then more Reasons to approve that Match, than we have now to disapprove it. In short, for many Causes which are above your Age and Knowledge, and wherein my whole Kingdom is concerned, Agis cannot be your Husband, and you ought betimes to withdraw your felf from that Affection you bear him, to dispose of

I

b

d

to

tl

k

W

in

to

W

Oin

to

fo

fe

thall make Choice of for you. You know that the Daughters of Soveraign Princes marry for other Considerations than those of Love, and you also know too well what Resignation you owe your Father, to make any Dissiculty of being guided by his Will. I was half dead before the King had ended this Discourse, and he easily saw by my Face into what Perplexity I was reduced; I had neither Strength to speak, nor Considence to look upon him, and he had so much Patience as to wait till I was refettled, that he might receive my Answer: but when he had vainly continued a long time in that Expectation, and saw me still keep a Silence sull of Trouble and Consusion; Speak, Deidamia, (pursued he) and give me some Assurance of your Intention to obey me with-

out Repugnance. I was fo struck and cast down, that I knew not which way I should be able to reply; yet did I use my utmost Endeavours to recover a little Courage, and recollecting my Spirits to explain my felf, Sir, (faid I) what Qualities soever there are in the Person of the King of the Lasedemonians, and what Service soever he has done this State, I had not loved him if you had not enjoined me ; nor should I have licenced my felf to an Affection, which your Command alone can authorize; Twas out of Obedience only that I cast my Eyes on the Good-will he bore me, and I have fo religiously observed it, that your Majefly could not defire more Acknowledgment from me, nor more Affection to our Deliverer, than I have really given him: 'Tis true, Sir, that I have loved him, and I loved him still by your Orders by a most powerful Inclination, and by a just Knowledge both of his Worth, and of what he has done for us; but my Relignation to your Will has rooted these Thoughts too deeply in my Heart to be ever able to pluck them thence; and I was too ready to comply with your Defires; to love Agis with a light Affection, or with fuch a one as can be taken off, and placed upon another; that is a thing, Sir, whereof I feel my felf no way capable; and if in this Declaration your Majesty find any matter of Complaint against your Daughter, be pleased to consider, 'tis but

Book I.

C

C

3-

11

y

d

y

I

k

I

ut

K-

le

re

h-

ch

oft

ng

i-

a-

is

ed

n,

of

he

ur

m

VC

m,

ful

th,

10

ny

125

gis

ta-

ir,

his

int

one one for having been too obedient that I now am disobedient. The King hearkened impatiently to this Reply, and was exceeding ill fatisfied with it, yet fince he had not doubted but he should meet with some difficulty in my Mind. and that he found a great deal of Reason in my Words, he would not fall into Passion, but contented himself with faying, What, Deidamia, will you persist then whether I will or no in an Affection which is Difadvantageous to you, and which I disapprove? My Affection to Agis (answered I) shall never make me do any thing that can bring you Shame, or that can justly give you Sorrow, but it shall always be strong enough to keep me from forgetting him, and from giving that to another which he has fo well deferved, and which he holds only from your felf. You shall have a little Time (replied the King) to perswade your self to sollow my Commands, in which interim, fee that you resolve to do so, and let me find no more Relitance in you, upon pain of a Difpleasure which would not be to your Advantage. The King, after these bitter Words, staid not for an Answer, but going out of my Closet, left me in the faddest Condition I had ever been in all my Life. I loved Agis indeed equally to my felf, and this unjust forbidding me to love him appear'd so cruel to me, and so tyrannical, that it left me neither Sense nor Words, but to accuse the King of Injustice and of Ingratitude. My Tears lent me a great Relief in that Occasion, and 'twas by them I began to complain of the Violence that was used upon me; two of my Maids, to whom I trusted my most secret Thoughts, and which are these you now see with me, kept me Company in that fad Employment, and when I was the most deeply buried in it, unfortunate Agis came into my Chamber; The Entrance of it was always free to him, and notwithstanding the severe Resolution that was taken against him, they still remembered both his Quality, and what he had done for Epirus, and therefore in Appearance he received the same Usage he was wont to have. As foon as ever I faw him, my Griefs were sensibly redoubled, and I could not hinder my felf from fending forth a Cry, wherein he instantly found the cruel Confirmation of his Suspicions; he made a stop at my

Bo

no

of

tha

wh

if l

hin

me

wh

of

the

ne

to

hin

had

Ma

luf

mi

Re

he

for

hin

De

fpi

der

kil

and

his

Re

wi

a l

Af

be

the

mi

any

WE

wh

the

ha

ons

Chamber Door, with his Arms across, and feeing me all in Tears upon my Bed, and these two Maids busied in comforting me, he was like to have lost both his Strength and his Understanding, and all he could do in that Condition, was to lean against the Wall to keep him up, and cast Looks at me in that forrowful Posture, which made me almost die with Grief, and with Compassion. Madam, (cried he, after a long Silence) is it certain then that I am ruined? I had not the Power to answer him at first, but when he had repeated these Words two or three several Times, It is true, (faid I) my dearest Agis, I am forbidden to love you; but 'tis also true, that 'tis impossible for me to obey that Command. It you hold that Resolution (replied Agis) my Fortune is not desperate, but if you forfake me with your Friends, there is no kind of Death fo dreadful but is to be preferred before my Condition, and wherewith I would not facrifice a Life, which I will not keep one Moment after the loss of my Hopes. I am most firmly resolved (answered I) to love no other Man in the World but Agis, and if I be taken from him, they shall never give me any thing but my Grave. Agis found some consolation in this Discourse, and recovering a little Confidence by the hopes I gave him, he drew nearer, and befought me trembling to tell him the last Confirmations I had received of his Misfortune. I related all that the King had faid, with great Expressions of Sorrow, and thereby put him into the Condition that would have touch'd his most implacable Enemies with Pity; that great Courage which was wont to lead him on in Fight abandoned him for some Moments in this Encounter, and scarce had he enough remaining to keep him from finking under the weight of his Affliction; out of these Faintings he fell into such a Rage, as I never had believed him capable of, and which nothing but his Passion alone could be able to excuse. After he had vented all that the imperuousness of his first motions put into his Mouth, What, (continued be) shall it be true then that the Word of a Prince shall be unworthily revoked, and that my Services shall be so ungratefully requited? Will not this State which I have faved from manifest Ruin, cry loudly against the Injustice that is done me, and will not

11

n

h i-

d

e

11

t

,

S

not the Gods themselves, who are concerned in the Justice of my Quarrel, take my part against perjured and un-thankful Eacidas? Will he then so lightly forget by what Actions I had merited the Hopes he gave me? Or if he can remember out of what Extremities I have freed him, will he prefer the Vice-roy of Macedon's Son before me? These last Words made me interrupt him, to ask what preferring that was he spoke of about the Vice-roy of Macedon: Yes, Madam, (answered he) 'tis to Cassander the Son of Antipater that you are destin'd; and I have newly learnt that 'tis by his Alliance your Father intends to secure himself against Antipater's Practices, and to unite himself with him, who under the Authority of Alexander had made himself potent and considerable in Greece. Man who is not born a Prince, and who draws all his lustre but from the Glory of another, robs me of Deidamia; and the King your Father, out of some unequitable Reasons of State, prefers a particular Man, a Man whom he knows not, and a Man who ever was his Enemy, before a King, who fo liberally has exposed his Life to ferve him. But let him look for no Success of so wrongful a Defign, and let hin. believe, that the Gods have not infpired him with it in Favour of Cassander, but for Cassander's Destruction.

I'll kill him, that unjust Usurper of my Happiness, I'll kill him in the very Arms of Antipater; and though Alexander himself should come in his Defence, Agis despises his own Life enough to facrifice many other to his lawful Resentment. He said divers other Words transported with an excessive Fury, but when his first Violence was a little over, Dear Agis, (faid I) if the firmness of my Affection to you can give you any Hope or Confolation, be certain, that neither Caffander, nor any other Man in the World, shall ever be preferr'd before you by Deidamia, and that if she cannot be yours, she never will be any Body's; perhaps our Affairs are not fo desperate as we believe them, and if you put the King in Mind of what he owes unto his Promise, and of what he owes to the Actions you have done for us, I do not think he will have the Confidence to perfift in his unworthy Resolutions. I'll go and make that Trial, (replied the afflicted

E

0

D

al T

19

th

to

m

Va

N

01 ol

St

to

\$1

W

W

ty

R lig

re

W

ye

of

th

fh

1

fe.

an

W

D

do

th

W

ce W

Prince) but, O Gods, with how little Hope is it, and with how little Success (without doubt) will it be! At these Words he went out of the Chamber, being resolved to go to the King to know his last Determination from his own Mouth; the time he had demanded to give his Answer was already expired, and that poor Prince had not the Patience to defer it any longer; he ran directly to the King whom he found in his withdrawing Room, with certain Princes, and other Persons that were considerable in Epirus. Being blinded with his Passion, he could not diffemble his Thoughts before that Company, but having defired the King to grant him a particular Audience, he stept to him with a troubled Countenance, yet striving to keep his ill Humour from breaking out, he endeavour'd to compose himself to a moderation whereof he was not capable, and having by the manner of his coming in, and by his Action, suspended all that were present, Sir, (said he to the King) if your Majesty's Promifes had not been Publick, and if the Alliance wherewith you intend to Honour me were not known to this whole Kingdom, I would not have demanded the Accomplishment of them in so great a Company, nor firive in this Place to cure my self of the disquiets that Torment me. I do not doubt, Sir, but that you observe some Trouble in my Face, and I have not cunning enough to dissemble Thoughts, that are of the Nature of mine, but yet I know the King of Epirus well enough, not to let my Mind yield to the Impression which they would give me of my Misfortune; I know that he is of too Illustrious Blood to violate his Word, and that be has too royal and too grateful a Heart to forget my Services: How unworthy soever I am of the Possession of Deidamia, your Majesty has loudly and solemnly promised it me, and I stould think I did you a mortal Injury, if I could believe what they would persuade me to the prejudice of your Word, which I account inviolable between such Princes as the King of Epirus and the King of the Lacedemonians. King Agis held his Peace after he had faid thus, and the whole Company kept a quiet Silence to hearken to Eacidas's Answer, who when he had bethought himself a while, gave it in these Terms; I do not deny, Sir, but that Prince Zacidas highly oblig'd both for Epirus, and for his particular confideration, to the valiant King

V

nd

At

ed

om

his

ad

tly

m,

si-

he

y,

ar

e,

it,

e-

115

re

ıi-

ou

n,

of

at

ng

le,

ny

ny o-

4

of

71-

16-

e-

ch

0-

s,

n

11-

r,

s,

19

of the Lacedemonians, approv'd of his Affection to his Daughter, and desired his Alliance as much as Gratitude and the Merit of that Prince could oblige him to do. This Truth is known through all Epirus, but you are not ignorant also of the Revolution which hath happen'd in the Royal Family, and you know well enough, that the Confiderations of a whole State ought without Question to be valued above any particular ones. The Gods are my Witnesses, that if my Inclinations were followed, Deidamia should never be match'd to any Body but the valiant King of Sparta, and that I would prefer his Alliance before that of all the greatest Monarchs upon Earth; No, I have not lost the remembrance of the gallant Actions he did in favour of us, nor have I lost the Knowledge of the admirable Qualities of his Person. But my whole State opposes my Intention, and the Epirots, whose Crown as yet belongs in Reversion to Deidamia, cannot resolve to bear the Yoke of the Lacedemonians: They are frighted with the Example of many Nations, who are become Slaves unto the Greeks, and they protest aloud, that they will not exchange their free Condition for Servitude. would it pleased the Gods, that either I had more Liberty to dispose of my Family, or that you could find such Recompence amongst us, as might acquit part of our Obligations to you; dispose of our Estates which you have rescued out of the Rebels Hands, dispose of this Kingdom which you have delivered, and which by your Valour you have acquired unto your felf; but leave the disposing of Deidamia to the Epirots, fince it cannot be taken from them; they will needs facrifice her to their Security, and she is not happy enough to pretend to the Fortune which I had destin'd her, and whereof I was as desirous as your felf could be. Agis had hardly Patience to hear all this, and interrupting the King who would have spoken more, What, Sir, (faid he) is it true then that I shall not have Deidamia? And will you pay the real Services I have done you, with a few false Reasons, invented by those that envy me? Can you excuse the violation of your Word by the change of your Condition, and have you receiv'd any Dignity by becoming King of Epirus, which was not already in the Person of the King of Sparta? Is

E

cu

for

D

77

be

07

40

n

ne

tr

pr

P

ba

H

ti

an

to

M

A

20

th

L

it

A

to

W

al

fe

fr

p

A

y

C

it

k

'n

to

th

fe

this State, whose will you alledge, so ingrateful as to forget that I have sav'd it? And are not these Epirots, which would rob me of Deidamia, the same whose Blood I spared by shedding of mine own, and who yet upon their Fields may see so many Marks of what I have done to buy their Safety? If they fear the domination of Sparta, I freely quit all those Pretensions the marrying of Deidamia might give me to this Crown, and provided I may have her, let them make whom they will King of Epirus, and dispose of their Monarchy according to their own desires.

'Tis not by this Kingdom you offer me, that the loss of Deidamia can be recompensed: I too much despise the Authority over a rebellious unthankful People; and if I have a desire to inlarge my Territories, I wear a Sword well known to the Epirots, a Sword which has desended their Country well enough, to make them see 'tis capable to Conquer others; yea it can give me greater Empires than that of my fore Fathers, but it can much more easily preserve what it has lawfully acquired me; 'tis by it in part that I pretend to Deidamia, and 'tis with it I will desend my Right even to my latest Breath, and that with Rivers of Blood, I will dispute it against those that would

take her from me.

Agis pronounced these Words with a Tone that struck Terror into many of the By-standers, the King was extreamly nettled with them, and his Anger appear'd in the alterations of his Countenance, but knowing there was a great deal of Reason in what he said, and feeling some semorfe of his Ingratitude, he kept his Thoughts from breaking forth, and only answered with a very serious Face, They that take Deidamia from you are not in a Condition to fear your Threatnings, nor would be of an Humour to suffer them from any other but their valiant Defender; be may freely make use of these Privileges, which so many worthy Actions, and so many fresh Engagements have given him amongst us; and instead of returning his menaces in a Place where I might have some Power to do it, I'll confess there was a great deal of Justice in his Reproaches, if the Injury I do him were a voluntary Action; the contempt you flew of this our Kingdom is an effect of Generosity, which would not excu/e S to

rots

OOd

pon

One

rta,

ida-

may

rus,

de.

los

the

if 1

ord

ded

pa-

res

fily

in

ill

ith

ald

ck

X-

he

5 2

e-

m

us

li-

to

be

by

a-

ce

75

do

is

-1

e

cufe the Epirots from the Yoke they fear, and in what manner foever you renounce this Crown, after the Death of Hacidas.

Deidamia's Right to it were not to be disputed.

Believe it, Sir, 'tis with a most sensible Grief I declare this Truth, and this bard necessity of my Condition; that I might be in one to content you. I could wish this Crown were yet upon the Head of another Sovereign, and if for your Satisfaction you desire only what absolutely depends on me, I sall think nothing difficult to testify bow great a Sense I have of the General, and of my particular Obligations. O Gods! (cried out transported Agis) Gods that are Enemies to Injustice and Oppression! Gods that are Revengers of Perjury! Gods that are Protectors of the Persons of Kings! Can you suffer this bigh Abuse without darting your Thunders upon forsworn ingrateful Heads? And you, Hacidas, can you recal to Mind the Condition out of which I freed you, and not die with very Shame and Confusion? These Traitors to whose Counsels you give Ear, to the Prejudice of your Faith, and of your Honour; those base Men, whose Advice you prefer before the Safety of unfortunate Agis, did they ever refeue you from such Extremities as those you were reduced to when I came to your Relief? Nay, rather, are not they themselves indebted to me for that sameful Life which I preserved for the Destruction of mine own? Was it from Antipater, and his Son you received that Affiftance? And is the Price of my Services which you deprive me of, due to the Injuries which they have done? It should he smith her

The King, who did not think his Delign of an Alliance with Antipater had been known to Agis, appear'd much astonished at this Discourse; but as he had prepar'd himfelf against all the events he was probably to look for from his Change, he recollected himself presently, and replied without falling into Passion; I will never prefer Antipater, Caffander, or any other Prince in Europe, before your felf; but if my Kingdom has Designs for its own Quietness, and for the Establishment of that Tranquility it defires, I know not how to oppose them without making my felf unworthy of the Crown they have fet upon my Head, nor without making a People, most inclinable to revolt, take Arms once more against me. Let'em vather take Arms (interrupted furious Agis) for their own Defence, against an Enemy which they cannot, and which they oubge

B

th

in

th

ar

to

th

hi

m

ne

fo

hi

at

tr

to

th

th

in

270

He

lo

in

fie

ba

m

I.

Po

20

00

de

ros

(bo

20

th

W

ni

bu

W

pa

So.

ought not to despise; and since they undervalue me for Cassander, a private Man and a Man whose Name and Family are unknown, but by their perfidiousness, and by the Glory of their Master, let 'em take Arms for his Relief, as I have taken Arms for theirs. That audacious Fellow hall not quietly enjoy what he unjustly would ravis from me: and fince neither Compassion of an unfortunate Lover, whom your Ingratitude precipitates into utter Despair, nor the remembrance of this Crown, which is the cause of all my Misfortunes, and which you owe to none but me; nor the confideration of Honour which is interested in the violation of your Word, can dissuade you from the cruel Resolution you have taken against me, Remember, King of Epirus, remember that I shall be able to do as much for my own Quarrel, as I have done already for yours, and that this unjust Cassander stall either sink under my lawful Indignation, or make Agis fall with the better part of Greece. That's the first Expedition I'll prepare for, and if the Gods grant me the Success which is due to the justice if my Cause, you shall quickly see those Arms, Azcidas, glittering in Epirus, in a bostile manner, which once you look'd upon with fo much Joy, when they came to bring you Safety; they know already kow to conquer the Epirots, and hall overflow their Fields with that same Blood, which heretofore they unluckily have preferved. At these Words, the King could no longer contain himself within the limits of Moderation, and feeing all those that stood about him murmur at Agis's Declaration; Hitherto (said he) in regard of your Resentment, and in remembrance of what you have done for us, 1 have passed by all your Provocations; but since you openly declare War against me, I accept it, and charge you within three Days to depart this Country, where you cannot be look'd upon as other than an Enemy. 'Tis as an Enemy, (replied Agis hastily) 'tis as an Enemy you shall see me return into't, and all the most cruel and most berrible Effects that Fire and Sword can bring along with them, shall be the sure Rewards of Perjury and Ingratitude.

These Words were not well over-heard by the King, who already was retiring another way, and surious Agis going out of the Room at the same time, took his way

directly towards his Lodging.

7.

n-

re

77

en

77-

er

de

bis

ch

ch

OH:

71-

as

75,

w-

of

if

ng

bey

w

no

m,

56

nt-

le-

on

215

nd

r-

g,

ay

he

The Noise of this Disorder was immediately spread through the whole Court, and there was no other talk in all Ambracia, but of this unexpected Change, and of the Events it might produce. Opinions were divided. and if those that were concern'd, found, or endeavoured to make others find Reason in the King's proceeding, they that judg'd of it without Passion or Interest, condemn'd him of a high Ingratitude; but the number of the bafe minded Men, and Flatters, was greater than that of generous Persons, and the same Agis, who a few Days before was followed and adored by the whole Court, faw himself generally forsaken, forsaken in a moment, and attended only by those he had brought out of his Country. When this News was told me, I was like instantly to have died for Grief, and though the Queen my Mothey labour'd to give me some Consolation, and to cover the King's Action with some Pretences, I found nothing in her Discourses but new Occasions of Afflictions: Let not the King hope, (laid I) no, let bim never hope, that my Heart can be chang'd, and fince be would needs have me love King Agis, det him prepare himself to see me love him in the Grave; an Affection, which fuch express Commands, such important Obligations, and such admirable Qualities bave kindled, is not so easily to be quench'd, and the King my Father ought not to think it strange, though I owe my Life to him, that my Soul nevertheless is different from his. I must love Agis, Madan:, for ever, and although I have Power enough over that Paffion, to keep it within the Limits which my Birth bath prescribed, it will have Power enough over me, to make my Heart incapable of a fecond. Ab! my dear Agis, rather let Death, accompanied with the most rigorous Tortures, separate me from thee for ever, than that I bould afford room to a Successor in this Heart, which never was, nor ever shall be any Body's but thine. I accompanied these Words with such a flood of Tears, that the Queen was deeply touch'd with them; fhe esteem'd Agis infinitely, and did no way approve my Father's Maxims; but he govern'd not his Affairs by her Advice, and she was much to weak to oppose his Determinations. I passed the rest of that Day, and all the Night in sight, in fobs, and in half desperate Actions, and the next Morning

Be

ext

tre

Ex

coll

lore Ser

ven

ma

be o

it f

Ica

let

Fori

tha

Con

nee

mu

hen

WO

not

eno

and of

Den

eno

exce

my

nor

man

wou

to j

and

Ah

fuch

Unf

me.

1

Day, came to receive his last Farewel of me. The King, who could neither forbear to consider him, nor think upon him without Remorfe, denied him not that small Satisfaction; and his entrance into my Chamber was as free-

ly permitted as before, and it is also I built out to a lan of

He came in with a Countenance, which had almost nothing of his wonted Features, and whose Looks had something so fatal in them, that Death appear'd there most naturally painted; and I beheld him with Eyes, which fufficiently testified the Part I bore in his Misfortunes. For a long time he was not able to get our one Word, and for a long time I also was in no Condition to begin that fad Entertainment. Our Eyes talk'd a great while for us, and when fainting Agis thought himfelf ftrong enough, to help them to express his Mind, after having begun with many Sighs; Madam, (faid he) behold this diferac'd, behold this banifo'd Man, behold this Enemy of Epirus, and he suko in this Court has appear'd with such a Luftre, and with so high a Fortune, departs now from it without any other Consolation, than that of being able to take his Leave of you: 'tis the only Favour that's not refused me, and 'tis in it alone I have established my latest Hopes; you are too generous, my fair Princess, to square your Thoughts by those of the King your Father, and though I be bated by your Priends, I hope that you will not consider me as the Enemy of your House. I consider you, (faid I, interrupting him) and will consider you all my life, as that which I love most dearly in this World; and as that only which I can, and will love in. it. The Gods be praised (replied Agis, lifting up his Hands and Eves to Heaven) fince my Princefs is not chang'd, neither is my Fortune; and fince see fill with love me, I out-brave the tyrannical Power of a Father, and all the Oppositions of unthankful Epirus. Well then, my Princess, if you love me; if you love me -- faid he again within a little after, and made a stop at these Words, as not having the Confidence to proceed. I perceived his inward Disturbance, and being willing to ease him in it; Tes Agis, (added I) I love you, and I will give all the Proofs you can demand of my Affection. If it be for (replied he) I no longer have any Reajon to complain of my Destiny; but dearest Princess, how

Book I.

47

extreamly do I fear you'll change your Rejolution, and how I tremble at the Proposition I am going to make you? In a less. Extremity I sould not have attempted it, but since 'tis the only means of Safety I now have left, I must of Necessity follow it, and beg Proofs of your Affection which are above my Services, and above the Merit of my Person, but may peradventure be due unto my Paffion, and to the Promise you have made me. Since the King opposes my Fortune, or rather fince he opposes my Life, be pleased, fair Princess, that I may hold it from your felf alone, and that I may live only by you, fince I cannot live but for you. If the King refuse me Deidamia, let me receive her from Deidamia her felf, and to follow the Fortune of a Prince that adores her, let her fly from a Prince that would facrifice her to the Capricio's of his State. Tour Condition shall not be so miserable at Sparta, that you should need to bewail your leaving this unthankful Country, and as much forsaken as I am, I want not means to carry you from kence, if you will have the Goodness to quit it for me. Agis would have gone on with his Perswasions, but I would not suffer him to prosecute his Discourse; I found matter enough in it of Offence to me, but I lov'd him enough, and was enough obliged to him, to pardon it as an Effect of his Passion, and to content my self with refusing his Demand, without being angry with him for it. 'Tis enough, (said I) my dearest Agis, 'tis enough, and I am exceedingly afflicted, that you have defired no Proofs of my Affection, but such as neither are fit for me to grant, nor you to ask.

Would it had pleased the Gods, you had rather demanded the better part of my Blood, or that you had desired my Life it self, and they are my Witnesses, I would have given you them without any trouble; but to perswade me to Faults so unworthy of a Princess, and so contrary to my Duty, and to my Reputation; Ah! dearest Agis! if you lov'd me, could you suffer such a Thought? I make you Judge your self of the Unsitness of your Demand, and I conjure you to tell me truly, if your self could approve the thing you counsel

me.

What will you then do for me ? (cried that afflicted Prince) and what Fruit can I expect from that Affection wherewith you would have me flatter my felf in my Misfortune ? What Proofs then shall those be you offer me of it? and in this last Extremity, what Advantage can I draw from your latest Promises? All that you can hope for (replied I) from a Princess that loves you, but from a virtuous Princess, and one who like your felf, would prefer Death before any mean unworthy Action. I will testify my Assection to you, by preserving it to my very grave; I for your fake will disobey the King my Father, if he shall command me to forget you; I'll disobey him if he shall oblige me to a second Affection, for in the Obedience I owe him, I know no Rules that can compel the Inclination: but if he should forbid me to marry you, or if he should forbid me to see you, I cannot persist in that Design without doing an irreparable Injury to my Reputation. What Injury shall you do it (said Agis) by following a Husband of a Quality equal to your own, and a Husband whom you lov'd only by the Injunction of your Friends? When I shall receive him from them (answered I) I'll follow his Fortune to the utmost part of the World, and will prefer the Possession of him before that of the whole Earth together; but to take him, or go along with him without their Confent, is that I cannot do without making my felf unworthy both of my Birth, and of your Esteem, and 'tis in short, a thing, which if you love me, you ought not to propound. If this flight offend you, (replied he) suffer me at least to return arm'd into Epirus to demand the accomplishment of the King your Father's Word, and to labour with my Sword for my Satisfaction, or for my Revenge; and that in brief I may strive to win you by those Arms to whose Success you formerly were granted; perhaps by their means, Events may come to alter Resolutions, and when the Epirots shall see the Desolation of their Country, and that the King your Father shall be reduced to such Extremities, as those I saw him in before, they both may recede from those proud ingrateful Thoughts, which Prosperity has given them; I for such gallant Pretensions, will arm all the Men of Courage that Greece contains, and at

m

YC

th

ed

n_a

of

I

pe

ld

ill

ry

r,

m he

el

u,

in

ny

by

11,

nc

m

rt

e-

n,

1

ıy

e-

of

ıy

at

fe

ir

n

nd

e-

e-

e-

11

at

he

the Head of them the Epirots shall see an invincible Enemy, and an Enemy, who will requite their Breach of

Faith, with an universal Ruin and Desolution.

Agis made a stop when he had said these Words, and seeing he waited for my Answer; I hate Epirus enough (said I) to behold the Miseries of it without Sorrow, and my want of Power may have lest me too little Credit with you to disswade your Resolutions; but I am too much obliged to tell you, that no Sense of Virtue, nor Rule of Decency, will suffer me to love a Man in Arms against my Country, or to offer any Prayers in savour of him. Not that I will oppose your Indignation, nor that in the Condition our Assairs now stand, I would still keep a tyrannical Power over you, which might hinder you from sollowing its Incitements; do whatsoever your Passion shall think best for us; but remember that Eacidas, as ungrateful as he is, is yet my Father, and that all the Laws of Duty sorbid his Daughter to love his Enemy.

The Prince lost Patience at this Discourse, and looking upon me with Eyes as full of Anger as of Love; What, and you too Madam, (cried he) have you also forfaken me? Ah! this is my utmost Misfortune, this is the highest point of my Affliction, without which I could not have accounted my felf miserable; but since Deidamia holds Intelligence with her Father to destroy me, Deidamia shall infallibly be satisfied; no, Madam, I will no longer preserve any Resentment against Eacidas, and since in his Usage toward me, he follows but your Inclinations, I will no more accuse him of Ingratitude; let him die, this unfortunate Agis, who has not been able to meric your Affections, and that he may die with the greater Innocence, let him die without using any Reproaches against you. These, (replied I, being touch'd with those Words to the very Heart) these are the most cruel, and the most bloody ones you can invent, and if you really suspect me of that Baseness you upbraid me with, you are more ingrateful your felf, than those whom you complain of. I love you but too well for my Repose, and too well for my Duty, and I give you not so slight a Mark of it as you believe, in openly relisting the Pleasure of my Father, and of my King, and in passing, for your sake, the VOL. IV.

1

t

n

1

n

2

t]

C

P

tł

A

th

h

W

he

m

ti

St

W

th

Cı

th

pla

tuj

the

WI

Inc

Ing

Da

of

nee

end

De.

mu

plai

but

Wei

Bounds which Modesty and Obedience prescribe me. Let it suffice you, that you shall never see another Man in the place I have given you, and that if the King my Father will not suffer me to be yours, you shall have this Consolation to know I will never be another's. Content your self with this Assurance, if you can, since 'tis impossible for me to do more, and that I may protest to you, by all the things that are most facred, our Missortunes are equal, and my Grief is not at all inserior to your own.

Ah! vain and light Consolation! (cried the Prince, quite transported) Ah! false Hopes! ah! deceitful Appearances, how unworthily have you betrayed me! Well, Madam, (purfued he, casting himself at my Feet, and washing them with a stream of Tears) since neither the remembrance of your Promises, nor the deplorable Condition in which you fee me, are able to mollify you, and that you neglect the Conservation of my Life, out of light Confiderations, which serve only for a Pretence to cover your Hard-heartedness toward me, I must disengage you from your Promises, and by my Death set you at Liberty, to follow the Motions of the King your Father. I'll die, 'tis infallibly refolved, I'll die, but not alone, they that drag Agis to his Grave, shall perhaps go thither with him, and it shall be by their Blood, and by that of many Thousands, he'll make his Funerals renowned to all Eternity. At these Words he would have risen from before me, but I let my felf fink upon him with fo much Weakness, that I fell down on the Floor close by him, who as fainting as he was, took me into his Arms, where he faw me lose both my Senses and my Understanding; my Maids fetch'd me to my self again, by the help they gave me, and then, looking upon Agis, with as dying an Eye as his, Leave me Agis, (faid I) leave me, and fince you cannot content your felf with what I am able, and with what I do satisfy you, suffer me to undergo my wretched Destiny with Patience. Farewel-(purfued I, casting my Arms about his Neck, and drowning his Face in a Sea of Tears) farewel my dearest Agis, leave this ingrateful Country, which hath nothing left in it worthy of you, and without inquiring what Effect

Effect your Remembrance shall work upon me, use mine the best way you can for your own Repose. With these Words, not being longer able to bear his Presence, without breaking forth into Violences very contrary to Modesty, I embraced him once again for the last time of all, and turning my Eyes away from his Face, I retired into my Closet, where I shut my self up, with a Resolution not to see him any more. Alas! (continued Deidamia, melting into Tears) that was my last fight of him indeed, and 'twas but too truly that I bid him adieu for ever; the Pangs I felt at that cruel Separation, were but too certain Presages of our extreamest Missortunes; and that parting went too near my Heart, not to make me judge that it would be Eternal. I was not present at the last Actions of my poor afflicted Prince, but I heard fince, that after he had fallen into Swoonings, which brought him almost to his Grave, and that he had uttered Words which cleft the Hearts of my grieved Maids with pity, he went out of my Chamber, and refolving not to stay a minute longer in Ambracia, took Horse with all his Retinue to depart. They who faw him pass through the Streets in that Condition, and who could not forget they were indebted to him for their Safety, were not able at that Sight to forbear lamenting, and expressing by their Cries how much they disapprov'd that unjust Usage of their valiant Deliverer. When he was in the Marketplace, where he faw a Company of Men together, he turn'd toward them with an Action which sufficiently shew'd the trouble of his Mind, and looking upon them with a threatning Eye, and an Eve kindled with a just Indignation, People of Epirus, (said he) remember your Ingratitude, and when you fee your felves again in the Dangers from which I freed you, bewail at least the loss of your Defender; his help shall fail you in your time of need; nay, and perhaps you shall see those same Arms endeavour your Ruin, with the same Success they had for Deliverance. These Words were followed with a murmur amongst those that approved the Justice of his Complaint, and the valiant Agis had no sooner spoken them, but turning his Back upon that unthankful People, he went out of the City, and took his Journey toward Sparta, by the same ways he had cleared from Enemies, and which he still saw sull of the Marks of his unconquered Valour.

Which way, my Lord, shall I be able to relate the Extremity of my Affliction? certainly it is not in my Power; and in what Terms foever I should do it, 'twould be impossible for you to comprehend it. A Body divided from its Soul may have some Resemblance with the Condition I was in at that time, and forrowful Deidamia was the true Picture of Desolation. The last Words, and the last Actions of that poor Prince, had pierced my Heart fo deeply, that I was utterly uncapable of any Confideration, or of any other Remembrance but his; my Affection to him was fo increased by those unhappy Accidents, that it was rifen to the highest degree of Pasfion, and if before I lov'd him as I was oblig'd, I loved him then a Thousand times more dearly than my felf. Alas! with how many Tears did I lament that fatal Separation, and what Reproaches did not I utter against my Father's Ingratitude, whenfoever he open'd his Mouth to condemn my Grief? I lost part of the Respect I owed him, to take the liberty to tell him of his Injustice; and as often as he went about to perswade me to accommodate my Thoughts to his, and to receive Impressions for Casfander, to whom he destined me indeed, I shewed so little compliance to his Will, that he gave over all hope of being able to bend my Mind to it. Let your Majesty be contented (faid I) with having fwaid my Heart once to your Desires, and with having introduced an Affection, whose Birth I should have opposed, had I not feared to disobey and to displease you; I know not how to change so lightly, and I testify my Resignation to your Will sufficiently, in taking my felf away from him to whom your Command had given me, without your forcing my Inclinations a fecond time, for a Man whom I neither know, nor ever will; I confess I went beyond Respect, in saying thus to the King my Father, but 'twas the least I owed to my poor Agis, and he well deferv'd that for his fake I should do something more than Modesty in strictness would allow. Wherefore at such times as I was alone, or only in the Company of those whom I suspected

potent

not, I suffered my Resentments to break forth in such a manner, that I forgot not any Word a lawful Passion could put into my Mouth. In the interim Antipater fent Commissioners to my Father, to press the Proposition of our Marriage, but notwithstanding all the King's Attempts, by Gentleness, and by Violence, it was imposfible for him to shake my Resolution, and when he went to terrify me with his Threats, Let your Majesty cause me to be put to Death (faid I) and I shall be cured of a Remembrance more cruel than all the Pains you can in-The King was extremely moved at these flict upon me. Words, and was fometimes upon the very point of letting loofe his Anger; but he loved me very tenderly, and his Knowledge of the Unjustness of what he demanded, wrought something upon him, and did a little moderate his Indignation. Antipater's Commissioners thinking themselves mock'd, return'd very much discontented, after they had publickly complain'd of their Mafter's being ill dealt withal, and having at their Departure expressed that he would not be insensible of it. I was also persecuted by Neoptolemus, who taking his Advantage upon the Ruin of Agis's Pretentions, and upon my Averseness to the Marriage of Cassander, left nothing unattempted, either with my Father, or with my felf, to advance his old Designs; but the King answered him with my Obstinacy, and I with such strange kind of Usage, that the very spite he conceived, made him leave the Court, with an Intention to stir up some Trouble in the Kingdom, and for that Purpose to make use of the Peoples ill Opinion of Æacidas.

About that time, the News came to us, that my valiant Agis with an Army more powerful through the Courage, than the Number of Men it consisted of, was entered into the Countries that were subject to Antipater; where by the beginning of his Exploits, he shewed Marks both of his Valour, and of the Animosity that guided him. We heard that in many Encounters he had gained all manner of Advantages, that he had taken many Places by storm, and that after having made himself Master of the Field, he had laid siege to Megalopolis, whither Antipater was marching toward him with an Army much more

n

r

t

r

d

potent than his, because it was made up, not only of his own Forces, but of many of his Allies, and where Agis staid for him, contrary to the Advice of all his Commanders, being less desirous of Victory than of Death, but most firmly resolved, to sell his Life at the dearest Rate, and to make his Despair remarkable by Actions which Po-

flerity never should forget.

This News made me fend forth continual Wishes in his Favour, and all the Prayers I made unto the Gods were only for his Safety; yet was I tormented with extraordinary Fears, and those mortal Apprehensions were the true Presages of my Missortune. Alas! they were but too true indeed, and fince I must abridge a Relation which has nothing now in it, but forrowful and unpleafing Events, in spite of all my Prayers, and in spite of all my Wishes, I heard shortly after with all Fpirus, that in a bloody Battle, whose issue had been disputed by almost all the Blood of either Party, my beloved, my valiant Agis had lost his Life upon thousands of Men whom he had facrificed to his lawful Rage. Although this Report was confusedly brought us, you may judge nevertheless what Effect it wrought upon my Heart, and you imagine by the Knowledge this fatal Story has given you of my Love, that I was little less dead than he himself. Indeed all figns of Life forfook me, and Complaints not being capable to express the smallest part of my Affliction, they left that office to Faintings and Swoonings. which carried me almost into the very Bowels of the Grave.

I had continued many Days in a Condition, which made my Life to be much doubted of, when that I might be utterly overwhelm'd, they brought a Man to me, whom I inftantly knew to have belonged to that poor Prince, and to have been the most beloved of all the Servants he had; as soon as ever I saw him, though it was in the Presence of the Queen my Mother, I sent forth a cry of a despairing Person, and presently after fell into a swoon, in the Arms of those that were about me. When with several Remedies they had setched me to my self again, as I open'd my Eyes I cast them upon that Man, and forcing the Sighs which stopped the Passage of

5

t

my Words; Agis is dead, (cried I) Agis is dead, Archidamus. Yes, Madam, (answered he) the greatest, and the most generous of all Princes, is dead indeed, but he shall never die in the Memory of Mankind; at his Death he has raised himself a Monument, which would render his Condition worthy to be envied, if he were not dead in your Remembrance. In my Remembrance (replied I, quite transported) Ah! Archidamus, Agis shall never die in my Remembrance, and 'tis only by the Remembrance of him that Deidamia now lives her self. He commanded me (continued Archidamus, very sadly) to bring you the latest Marks of his, and if you be so pleased, I will acquit my self of the last Commission he ever gave me.

My Grief made me unable to reply, and all I could do, feeing him put forth his Arm to give me a Letter, was to lift up my Hand to receive it, and to imploy the rest of my little Strength to open it. There were but very few Words in it, but they were written with his Blood, and that fight struck such a chilness into mine, that I was hardly able to speak or stir. Ah! my dear Agis (cried I, kissing that Blood before I read the Words) with what difmal Characters have you ingraven these last Expressions of your Love? and why have you been so prodigal of this noble Blood, fo dear to Deidamia, and which fustain'd my Life more than your own? Saying thus, I cast mine Eyes once more upon it, but they were fo drown'd in Tears, that for a long time I was not able to fee, and 'twas with much ado that in the end I read thefe Words:

Agis to the Princess Deidamia.

Your Empire over me; I die yours, Deidamia, and it is to assure you of it, that I imploy the remainder of my Blood, and of my Strength.

And I'll die thine, (cried I, kissing those Words again) yes, die thine, my too too faithful Prince; and I'll confefs at the Extremity of my Life, I was as unworthy of these last Marks of thy Affection, as thou wert worthy of a more fortunate Destiny. These Words were followed with a Sea of Tears, whose flowing whole Hours could not affwage; and if I had not been withheld by those that were about me, I should without doubt have made these Hands of mine to act some Violence against my Life. After having been a good part of the Day in this Condition, I defired to know the Particulars of his Death, and though I was certain that relation would furcharge my Grief, the Resolution I had taken to bury my felf absolutely in it, made me seek that new Occasion to afflict my felf; and therefore turning towards Archidamus, Tell me, I pray you, (faid I, with a Voice interrupted by my Sighs) tell me, Archidamus, in what manner your valiant Prince lost his Life; but do not spare my Sorrow, nor conceal the most deplorable Accidents of it from her, whose Despair is uncapable of receiving any Addition. Archidamus with much ado refraining Tears, fatisfied the Request I made him, on this man-

In the Condition I now fee you, Madam, I will not make you a long recital of the Life my Master led after your Separation; and fince 'tis only an Account of his Death that you demand, I shall deliver it to you in a very few Words. I will not repeat what his Despair made him fay during our Expedition; the knowledge you have of his Passion, may make you easily judge; he uttered whatsoever a violent Affection, and a just Sense of his Misfortune could put into his Mouth. He would never hearken to one Word of Comfort, and having nothing in his Mind but the Ruin of Cassander, he never talk'd to us of any thing, but the Revenge he intended to prepare against him. When we were come to Sparta, hardly would he tarry there three Days, either to take a little Rest, or to put those Forces he found there in a readiness to March. He would not stay for any Recruits, and his Impatience was fo great, that it made him run headlong

Ground

long upon an Enterprize, under which, being so weak in Men as he was, he in all Probability was like to sink. Yet did he march with as much Boldness, as if he had been followed by a Million of Men, and being entered into the Territories that obey'd Antipater, he left most bloody Marks there of his lawful Fury; the Forces that defended the Frontier were all cut in pieces, and whatsoever opposed his Passage met the self same De-

ftiny.

I will not trouble you with the Particularities of that War at length, but only tell you, that after having defeated what soever came in our Way, ta'n divers Places by Assault, and made such progress in few Days, as might bave demanded whole Years to equal it, we faw our felves forced to beliege Megalopolis, which was an obstacle to our Passage. 'Twas not the intention of our valiant King to fix us upon Sieges, but his Design was to march directly to Cassander, and make him lay down his Pretenfions to you, together with his Life; being ingag'd before that Place, we heard that Antipater and his Son were coming towards us with Colours flying, and an Army half as strong again as ours. This Intelligence could not terrify the King; who contrary to the Advice of his Commanders, who counfel'd him either to retire or intrench himself, raised his Siege, and went to meet the Enemy with a Resolution to give him Battel. Why should I hold you longer? The two Armies fac'd one another, and having shew'd an equal desire to Fight, the chief Officers drew them up according to their wonted Order, and according to the fituation of the Places, and the numbers of their Men; which done, they presently began the Battel.

There was a great deal of Blood shed on both Sides very quickly, and our Prince incourag'd us by so admirable an Example of Valour, that we should certainly have conquered with him, if he had not rather sought for Death than Victory; but he abandon'd all Care of his Men, to think of his particular Satisfaction, and seeking Cassander in the thickest of his Squadrons, he brake thro'all of them to get to him, and charging him in the midst of a thousand Swords and Javelins, he laid him on the

(round together with his Horse; immediately after he dismounted Antipater, and if his Fury had not been stopt by a valiant Stranger, whose Strength was little different from his, without Question he would have perfected his Revenge. He did not all these prodigious Actions without receiving a great number of Wounds, and in the end he was so weaken'd by them, that he no longer was able to fit upon his Horse, but had fallen off among the Dead, if we had not broke in to him, and rescu'd him from among a multitude of Swords which he despised, and into the midst of which, he with the fierceness of a Lion had precipitated himself. Having drawn him out of the Throng whether he would or no, I put him into a Litter, and carried him a little out of the heat of the Fight; but his Litter was presently full of Blood, which ran down from an infinite number of Wounds, and my magnanimous Prince, knowing he was near his End, would not fuffer me to ftir from him any more, but drawing Paper from some Place about him, where I believe he carried it for that purpose, he pull'd out the head of a Javelin that stuck in his Body, and with the bloody Point of it, he with great Difficulty writ those Words whereof I have been the fatal Bearer. 'As foon as he had done, Archidamas (said he, giving them to me) carry these last Assurances of my Assection to Deidamia, and make her the Relation of my Death. Scarce had he imposed that Command upon me, when he faw our Forces retire; defeated more by the absence of their General, than by the courage of our Enemies, who mingled Pall-mall amongst them, and were eager in the Profecution of their Victory. Our valiant King who would not dye without refistance, nor fall alive into his Enemies Power, with the remainder of his Strength got out of the Litter, and with his Sword in his Hand, went to meet Death with a miraculous Boldness. In that conclusion of his Life, Madam, he did things which Posterity never will believe, and though even at first he was not able to stir out of his Place, and that within a while after he fought but upon his Knees, I may protest to you with Truth, that his very Presence alone stopt whole Squadrons, as it had routed them in the beginning of the Battel,

Battel, and that the most daring of them, assaulted him only with Darts and Arrows, which the valiant Prince tore out of his Body with an invincible Courage, and threw them back at those by whom he had been wounded. 'Twas in this manner of Combate that he spent the remnant of his Strength; which being no longer able to keep him up, he let himself sink gently upon his Shield, over which he lean'd, yielding up the Ghost, rather like a Man that was weary, or falling into a Sleep, than one

that was Dying.

I scarcely heard the last Words of Archidamus, for I fell into so deep a Swoon at the end of his Recital, that all the Company believ'd I had breath'd out my Soul to follow Agis. All Remedies seem'd helpless for my Recovery, and notwithstanding all the Care they could take to fetch me again to my Senses, I continued all the rest of the Day with so little sign of Life, that many Persons fear'd I had really loft it; the King my Father faw me in that Condition, and the Affection he bore me made him in that Encounter find occasion enough to repent of his Ingratitude; he already felt a remorfe for it that tormented him, nor could he remember what he owed to the Memory of Agis, without being troubled in his Conscience; the Queen my Mother, as much as she respected him, could not forbear to reproach him with it, and all the honestest People in Epirus had taken such an Aversion against him, fince the Usage he had given their brave Deliverer, that the least occasion in the World would have stirr'd them up to Revolt. It was a good while within Night when I came to my felf again, and I no sooner open'd my Eyes, but my Mouth also was open to pour forth such Lamentations, as were due from me to so dear, so precious a Memory. I ask'd for Agis's Letter, and as foon as it was given me, I fix'd my Lips upon those Relicks of his Blood with Transports that came from nothing but Despair, and faid Words that were not to be excused, but by such a Loss as that I had suffer'd. 'Twould be impossible, my Lord Demetrius, to represent the excess of my Affliction, yet I should be to blame to talk to you any longer of the greatness of my Sorrow, fince it was not strong enough to carry me to my Grave.

It is true, I died not; whether it were by Reason of the Care that was taken to keepme from it, or of the Anger of the Gods, who would not let me expiate so great a Fault, with the Pain of so short continuance; no, I died not, but the Life I have led since then, has differ'd from Death in nothing else but the sensibility it has left me of

the Miseries I have undergone.

When the Queen's Tears, and the King's Importunities, had obtain'd a Promise from me that I would not make my felf away, I shut my felf up in a Chamber hung with Black, where all the Objects were mournful, and fuitable to the Condition of my Mind, and where I hardly receiv'd the Visits of the King and Queen; the Sight of all other Persons was troublesom to me, and I may protest to you with Truth, that during the space of a whole Year, I scarce saw Day-light twice; and when the King persuaded me, or got the Queen to do so, that I ought to change my manner of Life, and dispose my felf for a Husband, I broke into fuch Violence at that Proposal, that the King, fearing that Persecution would drive me to my Grave, was constrain'd to give it over, and to lose both the Hope of winning me to it, and the Delign of tormenting me any further.

n

n

T

b

ſ

C

T

Let the King content himself, (said I) with having by my Obedience to him, made me the most unfortunate Princess in the World; I sacrificed my Liberty to his first Commands, and to his last I sacrific'd my poor Agis, and with him all that had Power to make me love my Life; for all they were so unjust, for all they were so cruel to me, I blindly obey'd them, and if I had been less obedient, I should have been less guilty, and less

ingrateful.

Ah! my dearest Agis, (continued I with a Torrent of Tears, wherewith my Words were usually attended) thou whose Image never parts from my Remembrance, should I be able to give thee a Successor in this Heart which was so lawfully thine own, and should I be as capable of this baseness, as I have been of this Ingratitude thou upbraid'st me with? I will not justify my self of it before thee, and tho' thro' the considerations of my Duty,

Duty, it might find some Excuses, it has produc'd too dismal Effects to 'scape the censure of being criminal.

I will never be but thine, Dear Prince, and if my Tears are light Reparations for the Fault I have committed, I will accompany them with that ardent Affection, and that inviolable Fidelity which I will keep to thee till my latest Breath. These were my ordinary Discourses, but while I liv'd on this manner, the Queen my Mother, contrary to the hope of all Epirus, of the King, and even

also of her felf, became with Child.

This News was no fooner publish'd, but the Epirots made Bon-fires, and in the expectation of having a Successor of the Blood of Achilles, which yet that Monarchy had never fail'd of, they made their Joy appear by all forts of Expressions; but they gave themselves over to it a great deal more, when within a few Months after, according to their wish, they saw her safely deliver'd of a Son, in whose Person they found that Prince they had so much desir'd. The King and the whole Court was transported with Joy, and I my self was fain to leave my solitary Retirement, to bear a part in that so general Gladness. The Gods are my Witnesses, I was so far from being troubled for losing the hopes of a Crown, that I receiv'd a great deal of Confolation by it, as well by reason of the Condition I was in, which render'd me incapable of any other Defire fave that of Death, as of the belief I had, that I should be freer in my Design of preferving my felf intirely for the Thoughts of Agis, and that being no more tormented to provide Aacidas a Succeffor, to whom the Gods had given one, I should pass the rest of my miserable Life at quiet. That Child being come into the World, brought with him, by the report of all those that understand Physiognomy, all the Tokens of an extraordinary Greatness. He was called Pyrrbus after the Name of his illustrious Predecessor; and the famous Oracle of Dodona, which is in our Country, having been consulted at his Birth, spoke prodigious Things to his advantage, and promifed to those Eacidas had fent, that that Prince should be the greatest Man that had been feen for many Ages, that his Valour should not be parallel'd in the whole World, and that if he

were but as fortunate as Alexander, he should obscure the same af all his gallant Actions. These Promises of the Gods raised Eacidas to marvellous Hopes, and they began to breed up young Pyrrbus with so great Care, as shewed the Interest of the whole Kingdom in him.

Epirus continued a Year in Joy, and in Tranquility enough; but the Ingratitude of Eacidas had too highly incenfed the Gods to expect any long continuance of Profperity, nor could their Justice chuse but break forth in the end upon his miferable Family. The first Blow of Fortune he received was the Death of the Queen my Mother, whom a violent Fever took away from us in a very few Days, and whose Vertue left a most honourable Memory among the Epirots. Æacidas was as sensible of that lofs as was possible for him to be, the whole Court put on Mourning with him for fo good a Princes; and notwithstanding I was prepossessed with so violent a Grief, as feemed to have made me incapable of Sorrow for any other Loss, this Cause found room still in my Heart for a new Affliction, and I was as deeply touched with it as it was fit for me to be: The Tears I shed for my Mother mingled themselves with those which yet fell daily from mine Eyes, for the Remembrance of my poor Agis; but the King had fcarcely dried up his, when he received new matter of Grief, and faw his utmost Losses through the Anger of the Gods, whom the violation of his Faith had made his Enemies. Pardon me, Eacidas, if I cannot forbear to reproach thy Memory, and believe however that the Remembrance of my Misfortunes never hindred me from loving thee, and lamenting thee as I am obliged. Neoptolemus defeated of all his pretentions to the Crown, first by my refusal to Marry him, and afterward by the Birth of Pyrrhus, had chang'd his Ways, though he had still the same Design, and making use of the Contempt which the greatest part of the Epirots had of their King, he turned his Thoughts to usurp that Crown, which he no longer lawfully could hope for. With that Intent he was retired to the Molosses, whom he found exceeding ready to Revolt, and being inform'd of Antipater's Discontents, and of his Hatred to Eacidas, he had made him acquainted with this Purpose, and the means

ft

m

CI

tr

A

fo

th

A

H

he had to Revenge him. Antipater, who conceived himfelf ill dealt withal, and mocked by Æacidas, lent an Ear to Neoptolemus's Solicitations, and joyfully offered to give him his Assistance; yet durst he neither bring nor fend him any Macedonian Forces, knowing he should not be favoured by Alexander, who considered our Family by Reason of the near Alliance that was between us; but he furnished him with Mercenary Strangers, whom he levied upon the Frontiers, and supplied him under-hand with great Sums of Money to support the Charges of his Enterprize. Negligent Acidas slighted the first Notice that was given him of this Commotion, but when he went to try some Remedy, the Misfortune was gone so far, that all his Endeavours were unprofitable to hinder it. Neoptolemus did not only raise the Molosses, but sowed Rebellion through all parts of Epirus, and made a Party even in Ambracia it felf, which quickly became stronger

than the King's.

21

y

n

ρŧ

)-

y

e λſ

rt d

1 V

y d

r 11

1

C

S

,

ľ

I

0

f

,

t

-

I never could comprehend which way Neoptolemus met with fo much facility in his Delign, for tho' I know the Epirots are the most inconstant and the most wicked People of all Europe, I cannot imagine what Advantage they could find in basely forsaking their natural King, to cast 'Tis certain themselves into the Hands of an Usurper. that in any other Country, Neoptolemus could not so easily have effected his Design; but how faithless soever ours is, I could never attribute the Ruin of our Family to any thing, but a manifest Judgment of Heaven upon it. fidious Neoptolemus declared himself, as soon as he was strong enough, and coming before our Towns with a mighty Army, he in a short space brought them under his Obedience without striking a Blow: his Forces encreafed daily, and when he was Master of all the Country, he marched directly to Ambracia, where he knew he was waited for by the greater part of the Inhabitants. Aacidas then made some attempts to remedy his last Misfortunes, but he found the Courage of the Epirots fo cold, that after having unfuccessfully tried to make them take Arms for his Defence, he began to lose both Heart and Hope together. Then it was that he vainly called for Agis's Assistance, and that he bewailed his Ingratitude with

B

N

th

F

E

pr

W

te

of

if

K

th

A

fo

ar

ro

ut

M

pi

W

us

far

an gr

Py

his

his Fa

Hy

Ho

of en

W

my

lat

of

the

Hi

with Tears of Blood; he in his own Destruction faw the Truth of that poor Prince's Predictions, and after his unworthy Usage of him, had not the Confidence to demand Relief from his Allies. For mine own part, I can affure you, there were but two Reasons that augmented my Affliction in this Misfortune; I was troubled for my Father's Difasters, though he had drawn them on his own Head, and I was afraid of falling into the Hands of Neoptolemus, whom I mortally hated. Yet did I refign my felf to the Will of the Gods, and being as it were dead to all manner of Contentment in the World, 'tis certain I was less touch'd with our Disasters than I should have been in another Season. My Father seeing himself reduced, by the Fickleness of his Subjects, to one only Town, resolved to defend it, and there to expect Succour from some of his Neighbours, or to lay his Bones in the Ruins of it. But when Neoptolemus was come within two Days March of us, those that took part with him in Ambracia being the stronger, and knowing that they were fo, declared themselves publickly; and taking Arms began to march up and down the Streets, crying, Long live King Neoptolemus. In this utmost Extremity the King summoned up all the remainder of his Courage, and did all he possibly could to animate those to his Defence, in whom he believed there was yet any Fidelity; but their Number was so small, that he was able to do nothing with them, and faw himself compel'd to yield to his Destiny, and to follow the Counsel of those few Friends he yet had left. They all perfuaded him to get out of the City, with his Family, before Neoptolemus's Arrival, and take Refuge to some one of his Neighbours, where his Person and Family might be secur'd from the Perfecutions of his Enemy, who would do all that he possibly could to destroy him, and that after he had put himself in some friendly Sanctuary, he might go and ask Relief from his Nephew Alexander the Great, who in Consideration of their Nearness of Blood, and of the Injustice that had been done him, would withdout doubt give him his Assistance, and establish him in his Throne again. The fad King hearken'd to this Proposition, and taking Gold and Jewels with him, he caused certain Chariots

he

n-

nd

re

ny

a-

vn

p-

y

ad

in

ve

e-

ly

C-

es

ne

h

at

2-

1-

2-

1-

is

2-

e

0

(e

0

-

-

d

1

0

0

e

t

e

d

n s

Chariots to be made ready, and being guarded by a fmall Number of trufty Friends, he in the Night got out of the Palace, by a Gate which had free passage into the Field, without going thro' any part of the City. Escape was not so secret, but that the Epirots might have prevented it if they had defired our Ruin; but those that were less exasperated against Aacidas, withheld the rest, telling them they might be fatisfied with depriving him of his Kingdom, and not hinder him from faving his Life if he could possibly. Our Company consisted of the King my Father, young Pyrrhus my Brother (who was then but two Years old) my felf, two Maids, Theogenes, Androclides, Angelus, Hyppias, Meander, Androclion, and some others, whose Names were not so known in Epirus, and who would not abandon us in our Difasters rowful Hacidas quitted not his Town and Kingdom without Tears, and detesting the Infidelity of his People, uttered Imprecations against them, and Complaints of his Misfortunes, able to have touch'd his very Enemies with The Sun was hardly risen when our small Train was increased by a few Men, who coming up to us, gave us Notice that we were purfued, and that we must hasten our Flight with greater Diligence, if we intended to fave our felves. Æacidas grew pale at this Intelligence, and not being able to forfake me, nor to fly himself with greater speed, he was extreamly defirous to save little Fyrrhus, whom he believed to be the principal Aim of his Enemies Pursuit; and therefore having taken him in his Arms, and killed him a great many times, bathing his Face in Tears, he put him into the Hands of Androclion, Hyppias, and Meander, who were mounted upon fleet Horses, commanding them to carry him to Glaucus King of the Illyrians, his ancient Friend, to whom he would entrust that which was most precious to him in all the World. These three faithful Servants took charge of my little Brother, and promised the King that to their latest Breath they would with Fidelity acquit themselves of the Commission he gave them. When he had seen them depart, we profecuted our Journey, but left the Highways, and under the Conduct of trufty Guides, travelled

B

hi

mof

M

m

fo

E

Co

Co Jo

lie

an

no lit

pa tol

Doth

fed

C

Su

ab

m in

th

fte

po fe

ni

th

al

ta

an

ha

th

th

th

I

travelled thro' the most unknown Places toward Byzantium, where the King determined to pass over into Asia,

and to go to Alexander.

I will not entertain you, Sir, with the frivolous particulars of our Journey; it pleased the Gods we were not overtaken by our Enemies, and that after a tedious wandring we in the end arrived at Byzantium: There we remained unknown, the King resolving to stay for Meander, who, by the Order he had received, was to bring him an account thither of the Child that had been trusted to him.

Meander came and eased the King of part of his Difcontents, by giving a Relation of the Success of his Embassy: He told him, King Glaucus had taken the Child into his Protection, that he had given Charge he should be bred up with as much Care and as much Affection as his own; that he had publickly fworn he would affift him with all his Forces towards the Recovery of his Kingdom; and that he complained, that the King himself had taken Sanctuary any where elfe but with him. Aacidas was joy'd at this recital, but he was come to the conclusion of his Miseries, and as the Gods would have it, to o'er-whelm the unfortunate Deidamia, he fell ill the next Day after, and felt himself so weaken'd with his Griefs, that he had not Strength enough to relift his Sickness; upon the fixth Day he died, and I remained in the most sad and lamentable Condition that ever Princels was reduced to. I make you judge of it, my Lord, without going about to make a Description of it, and you may eafily imagine in what Perplexities a Maid might be, who, after having loft what was dearest to her in all the World, saw her self deprived of her Parents, despoiled of all she had, without Refuge and without Support, under the Conduct of a few helpless Men. Certainly 'tis very hard to fancy a more miserable Estate than mine, and all the Tears in the World were not sufficient to deplore a part of my Difasters. I will not tell you what Torrents I poured forth, but content my felf with letting you know, that after the King my Father's Obsequies, when once the Condition we were in would fuffer us, we consulted the Oracle of Mars, who by the Mouth of V.

na,

ır-

re

us

re

or

to

en

if-

nld

ld

as

nis elf

ahe

ve ill

th

is ed

n-d,

ou

e,

he

ed t,

:15

e,

e-

at

19

es,

IS,

of nis

his Priest gave us order to proceed according to our former Resolution, and promised me, that upon the Banks of Euphrates I should find Repose, and an end of my Misfortunes. I received little Confolation by that Promise the Gods had given me, knowing I could not hope for the Performance of it any other way, than by the End of my Life; yet was I determined to obey their Commands, and by the Advice of Theogenes (to whose Conduct I had refign'd my felf) we continued on our Journey toward Alexander, who was then at Susa, believing that the Queens would afford me a fafe Retreat and an honourable Sanctuary. The Gods can tell, 'twas not any defire to fave my Life, nor to return to the Quality whence I was fallen, that made me undertake fo painful a Journey, but only the fear of falling into Neoptolemus's Hands, and my willingness to comply with the Defires of those faithful Persons, who had abandoned all they had to serve me, and who express'd so great an Affection to the miserable Relicks of our Family; 'tis under their Protection that I have travelled thro' fo many Countries; but a long and dangerous Sickness I had at Susa (whence the King was gone ere we arrived) hindred the effecting of our Resolutions, and before I was able to leave my Bed, we heard the fatal News of the much lamented Death of the greatest Man that ever came into the World. By this last Mistortune I was persuaded that the Gods aimed absolutely at my Destruction, since they over-whelm'd me daily with new Afflictions, and stopped up all the Passages to that Safety and to that Repose I wish'd for; whereupon I would have given my felf over to Despair, if Theogenes and his faithful Companions had not kept me from it; and being defirous in the Extremity to which I was reduced, to have me try all manner of ways, they were of Opinion I might obtain the same Relief and the same Protection from Alexander's Successors, and from his Family, which I before had hoped for from himself. This was the Reason, Sir, that brought us to this Place, where the ill Chance of this War you are all ingaged in began to make me lose the Hopes which your Goodness has reviv'd, and which I now will cherish, since I have had the Happiness in my

t

b

L

t

t

h

te

I

0

ir

ir

first Encounter to light upon so generous a Man as Prince Demetrius.

Thus did the fair Princess Deidamia finish her Narra. tion, wherein Demetrius was so concerned, that his Tears for a great while kept company with those she shed at the End of her Disourse; but when her Silence invited him to speak, looking upon her with Eyes which testified a Sensibility in him that went something beyond Compasfion; Madam, (faid he) the Causes of our Affliction are fo great, that they cannot justly be disapprov'd; but in the Loss you have sustain'd by the Death of the valiant King of the Lacedemonians, the Destiny of this unfortunate Man that speaks to you has no small Conformity with yours. I weep, as you do, for a Person who is no longer in the World, and tho' my Passion were neither so long fettled, nor upon so reasonable Grounds as yours, it has fortified it felf by Circumstances, which have something in them most strange and more unusual. I'll weep with you whensoever you please to let me bear you Company in that fad Employment, and in this Encounter of our Fates, perhaps we may find fome Confolation: In the mean time give me leave to wait upon you to the Retreat you have demanded, and bring you to a great many Princesses, who know how to pay what's due unto your Birth and Person: You shall not fail of the Protection you hoped to receive from Alexander; no, nor of Revenge for the Wrongs that have been done you; for here are many Princes that will embrace your Interests with more affection than their own; and our War shall be no sooner ended, but you shall find us ready to begin it again for your Quarrel. Demetrius, whose sad Remembrances were a little moderated by the fight of that admirable Princess, pronounced these Words with such a Grace, and his Handsomness did so powerfully second his Persuasions, that the Princess and all her Followers, charmed with the marvellous Advantages of his Person and Language, could not resist his Desires, but answered his Offers with the like Civilities. Demetrius, after some obliging Words, entreated her to get up into her Chariot; and having placed himself by her, Theogenes and her Maids came in after them, and the rest followed the Chariot

ce

ra-

ars

he

im

a

af-

re

in

int

u-

ty

no

fo

it

e-

ep

m-

of

In he at to o- of

or distinction a distriction d

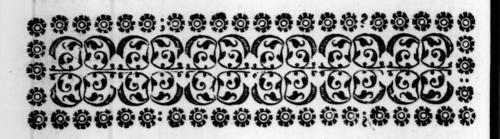
10

Chariot on Horse-back, they went to Polemon's House, being guided thither by Demetrius. When they were at the Gate, he alighted first, and being desirous to prepare those Persons that were within to receive Deidamia according to her Quality, he pray'd her to expect his return but a tew moments, and in the interim ran to advertise Apamia, Arsinoe, and the other Ladies that were with them, of her arrival; and having in a few Words told them her Name, her Quality, and fomething of her last Adventures, they all went down to meet and to receive her with all manner of Respect and Civility. This Interview caused a mutual Admiration in them; and as Deidamia found fomething that was charming in the Faces of those Princesses, they on the other side believ'd that they had never yet feen any thing that excelled hers. Their Conversation was in very submissive Terms, and when the Ladies had confirm'd those Promises to Deidamia which Demetrius had made her, they entered together into the House, where they obliged her to take a Lodging with them.

The End of the First BOOK.







and

Fr

lity

of (cr Pri

In

hai fac ble fay

Cr. my

wł

Fai if aln sta

Re

cor

he wi

gro

wh

pai

W

fan

bec

Co

joi

CASSANDRA.

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK II.

then with him to Orondates's Tent, whither all the Princes flock'd to take their Share in his Joy, and to inform them were come to pass there. Indeed, the Face of all Things was wonderfully chang'd; for Hatred, Rage, and Jealousy, which had so absolutely reigned there some few Hours before, had now yielded their Place to gentler, and quite contrary Passions. Orondates was even lost in the Transports of his Joy, both for the Life of his dear Brother, for whom he had shed so many Tears, and for the Innocency of his before suspected Princes; he testified

testified those sweet Raptures by such moaning Words, and that pleasing trouble of his Mind broke forth fo extremely in all his Actions, that fo fudden a Change had made him hardly to be known by his most particular Friends: With how great Repentance did he reflect upon all the Complaints he had made of Cassandra's Infidelity, and with what Remorfe did he recal into his Memory, those cruel Designs he had fram'd against the Life of his most loved Arfaces? Which way, dear Brother, (cried he before all the Company) which way, dear Princess, shall I be able to repair what I have said, and what I have attempted against you? and what Blood do I not owe to the Expiation of those bloody Injuries, and of those cruel Intentions? Thou guilty Mouth, which hast so often blasphemed my adored Princess, and thou facrilegious Hand, which hast so inhumanly shed the noble Blood of my most worthy Brother, what will you fay? what will you do to give Satisfaction for your Crimes? That admirable Virtue I fo much wrong'd by my unjust Suspicions, and those deep Wounds which my ungrateful Sword has made in the Body of a Brother, to whom I stood indebted for all my Happiness, do they not cry aloud for Vengeance against me? Ah! no (said he again, after a little pause) fear nothing for innocent Faults; those between my Brother and me are mutual; if I have drawn part of his Blood, he hath poured forth almost all mine; and fince Artaxerxes is revived, and Statira is not inconstant, we ought to cast away all fatal Remembrances, and banish all matters of Affliction. taxerxes will pardon the Fury that transported me, if he consider the Violence of that Passion, whose beginnings he favour'd with so much Goodness; and my Queen will without doubt be so indulgent, as to excuse a Jealousy grounded upon fuch strong Probabilities, and a Jealoufy which has been violent enough to precipitate me into Defpair, but not to lessen my Assection. If Oroundates's Words were these, Arsaces's Thoughts were the very same, but he could not express them with his Tongue, because Oroondates's Entreaty, and Berenice's absolute Command, made him observe the silence that was enjoin'd him: Yet did he by a beseeching Gesture, and by

h

d

t,

e

n

S

11

2,

re

0

n

is

d

e

by Looks which spoke sufficiently for him, beg Pardon of Berenice for the Injuries he had done her; and that fair Princess, who at her Brother's desire was set down by his Bed's-head, shew'd plainly enough by hers, that he hod obtain'd the Pardon he demanded, and that her former Affection was augmented by those Offences whereof he accused himself. This Assurance caused Motions in joy'd Arsaces, which raised him above himself, and which made him consider that sudden Revolution of For-

tune with an inconceivable Extafy.

While he contented himself with expressing it in that mute Language, his Recovery was endeavour'd with extraordinary Care; and Prince Lysimachus, who next Oro. ondates was more concern'd in it than all the rest, employed so many to seek that sovereign Herb, which had lately been so favourable to him, that after a great deal of Difficulty, some few Roots of it were found upon the neighbouring Mountain. They were so sooner applied but they wrought their usual Effect, and gave the Chirurgeons certain hope of a speedy Cure. The next Day he was visibly amended, but tho' the Physicians allowed him to discourse a little with his Friends, they would not fuffer him to engage himself in the long Narration which was defired of him, and only ordained that he should defer it till the Day following. Oroundates, who knew not Arfaces's Intentions, and believ'd that perhaps he might be unwilling to make himself known to so many Persons who had been Enemies to his Father, who had labour'd for the Destruction of his Family, and who had made themselves great, only by those Territories which ought to have been his, took fuch a course by the means of Lysimachus and Araxes, that his true Name was not published so soon, and he only discovered it to Thalestris, Ptolomeus, and some of those in whom he had a more special Confidence. Arfaces prayed Oroundates to make him the relation of that part of his Adventures which was unknown to him, and the Prince gave him an exact Account of them, which caused him often to fall into fuch Admirations, and Praises of his Virtue, as the Prince's Modesty could not suffer. Part of the Day was bestowed in this recital, and the remainder passed in a delightful

t

th

th

Si

21

th

ne

CO

fel

ask

tha

my

cha

the

t

r

15

d

r.

X-

0-

n-

ad

al

he

ed

Ir-

he

ed

ild

on he

ho

aps

na-

ho

ies

the

was ba-

da

to

ires

fall

the

was n a ntful delightful Conversation, wherein the Princess Deidamin, who, with the other Ladies, was come to visit the Princes, appear'd like a fair Star, and made some of the Company doubt whether Berenice had any Advantage over That lovely Princess had already given her a large place in her Affection; Thalestris had not been sparing to her of hers, and all the Princes (charmed with her Beauty, and with her admirable Qualities, and touch'd with the fad Events of her Fortune, and with the Ruin of her House) had with much Joy and Civility promised her that Protection and Assistance she demanded of them. Demetrius interested himself more in that Business than all the rest, and his Father began already to observe, that he beheld that Princess with Eyes less drown'd in Tears than ordinary, and that he was not altogether fo much fix'd upon the forrowful Remembrance of his Hermione. This was the last Day of the Truce, which obliged the Princes to spend the remnant of it carefully in putting the Army in order; either to Assault, if they faw Occasion; or to Defend it felf, if it should be assaulted. Those great Soldiers were too skilful in their Trade, to be ignorant of any thing that could ferve for their Advantage; but after having visited the Camp, they thought themselves not in a Condition to attempt any thing for some Days, and the Knowledge they had that their Enemies were altogether as unfit for Action, made them only prepare for their Defence, or to avoid those Surprizes which too great a Negligence might occasion; and in the mean time they were extremely diligent in haltning the Cure of their wounded Men, and in caufing those that were well to work at their Trenches. next Day Arfaces was so much better, that he himself could hardly believe the fudden return of Strength he felt; and Oroondates, as foon as he was awake, having ask'd him how he did; I am so well, (said he) Brother, that I find my self able to satisfy the desire you have to learn my Adventures; you have more Interest in the recital of them than any Body in the World, and our two Lives are jo chain'd to one another, that 'tis almost impossible to separate them.

B

my

to 1

I fi

felf

dur

my

can

fom

that

bafe

bur

you

fron

brai

ing

now

here

for

conf

neit

for t

the

Don

this pitc

I lost one half of mine (replied Orondates) when I thought I had lost you, and the other substited only by the love I bore my Princess. I ow'd that part of Oroondates to her, and but for that, I should have sacrificed it all to my sorrow, for the Death of Artaxerxes. But, O Gods! is it possible you should have lived ever since, without giving this afflicted Brother any knowledge that you were alive? These Words drew some Sighs from Arsaces, and when he was going to answer him, they saw the fair Thalestris come into the Chamber, and with her, Prince Lysimachus, Oxyartes, and Artabasus.

As foon as they had bidden the two Princes good-morrow, and that they with Joy had heard from them the State of their Health, Orondates, turning towards Arfaces, Brother, (faid he) these Persons are not to be sufpected in the Relation I have demanded of you, and I believe 'tis partly that desire that brought them hither.

If I am suspected (added Lysimachus) I shall not take it ill, if you think fit I should retire, and leave you in a more absolute Liberty. No; Lysimachus, (replied the Prince) you shall never be suspected by me, and I shall be extremely afflicted, if you preserve not that Friendship to Parifatis's Brother, which you have already promifed to Arfaces. He detained Queen Thalestris with the same Civility; but Oroondates defired their Entertainment should be limited to that number of Persons, and Lysimachus gave Order at the Tent door, that the Princes should not be disturbed that Morning. Arfaces was going to begin his Story, when Oroundates, fearing he should be oblig'd to speak too loud by reason of the distance between their Beds, had a mind to go into his, but the Presence of Thalestris hindred him; which Lysimachus perceiving, led her for a while into the next Camber, and at their return they found the two Princes in Arfaces's Bed, link'd in a very different Embrace from those they had given one another not many Days before. Thefe illustrious Persons took their Places close by the Bed, and Arfaces, having held his Peace a while, broke Silence in these Terms.

The History of ARSACES.

Gods! with what Face can I own my having been alive, while Alexander over-ran my Country, destroy'd my Family, and triumph'd over my Father's Life and Empire? Which way shall I be able to make this shameful Confession, and what Excuses can I find in my Love, and in my Misfortunes, to justify my felf of fuch a feeming Cowardise? 'Tis true I lived during all the Losses of my Friends, and the Miseries of my Country, but I lived in a Condition, which if it cannot make me absolutely Innocent, may perhaps obtain some Pardon amongst you, and leave you still in a Belief, that if Arfaces had been free, he would not have been fo base as to see the Desolation of his Country, without burying himself in its fatal Ruins. I speak this before you, Lysimachus, whom I shall ever be able to discern from the Enemies of our House, and I call this Remembrance into my Mind, without keeping any Heart-burning against many of our generous Friends, who have now taken Arms for the remnant of our Blood, and who heretofore, while they ferv'd their King, and laboured for their own Glory, oblig'd Darius's Family by most considerable Services, and have now left in his Son neither any Animosity against them, nor any Discontent for feeing them Posselfors of those Countries which were the King my Father's, and which ought to have been my Dominions at this present, if by the Anger of the Gods this Empire had not been overthrown from the highest pitch that ever Human Greatness attained to

I cannot think of this fad Remembrance (continued Arfaces, with a figh or two) without shewing some Tokens that I am sensible of the Ruin of our House; but for all I am an Exile, for all I am divested of an Empire, whose scattered Pieces make so many Soveraigns, the Gods are my Witnesses, that I shall never bewail that Loss, if I may but keep Berenice, and if with those Scepters which Heaven's Wrath has put into other Hands, I lose not also that worthily adored Princess, for whom I treely did forsake them all. These Words drew Tears from the Eyes of all the Hearers, and Arsaces having wip'd away his, prosecuted his Discourse on this manner:

I died not, Brother, in that bloody Battle, wherein you thought you had lost a Brother, to whom you were a thousand times more dear than his own Life, and three Days ago I should have faid, that I lived to my Misfortune, but my recovering of Berenice, and of your felf, banishes all those ingrateful Thoughts out of my Heart, and cannot fuffer me to complain of my Destiny without Blasphemy, and without Injustice. 'Tis true, I died not, but I remained in a Condition that was but little different from Death, and if you believed I was fo, 'twas upon fuch apparent Grounds as might have deceived all the World. Night was already thut in when the Ierfians quitted the Field, and the Scythians were so weak, that they contented themselves with keeping it, without attempting to pursue their Enemies in the dark. I lay in a fwoon all that Night, which was one of the shortest in the Year, and during which the Soldiers were not suffered to pillage nor to strip the Dead. As soon as Day appear'd, that Liberty was granted them, and then they began to pull off all our Arms and Cloaths. Arms, if you remember, were as fair and rich as ever had been worn, and the Lustre of the Stones they were fer withal, which sparkled in some places, in spite of the Blood that covered them, drew many Scythians to pillage me; presently one among them took off my Cask, and while he amused himself in considering the Beauty of it, another stooping to me would have unbuckled my Cuirais, but his Companion, who knew the Frize was wholV

d

0-

ut

1-

S,

)-

I

I

rs

S

n

e

e

,

d

S

1

٧

V

e

e

ly his, because he had seiz'd upon me first, opposed his Intention, and tho' they fay the Scythians despise Riches, it is true nevertheless, that then they were powerful enough to fet a Quarrel between those two Soldiers, and to make them dispute their Booty with their Swords: Some of their Friends, drawn thither by that Noise, took part on either Side, according to their Affections; and then there began a little Scuttle about me, in which Blood would have been drawn but for the arrival of Theodates Prince of the Sarmates, who commanded part of the Army. As foon as he made himself known to the Soldiers, they retired with Respect, and Theodates being willing to be judge of their Differences, they began to dispute the Matter before him. He had no sooner feen my Cask which a Scythian shew'd him, and then my Cuirafs, and the rest of my Arms, but he presently believed the Person that wore them must needs be of a considerable Quality among the Persians. This Opinion made him cast his Eyes the more heedfully upon me; my Face was pale, and my Hair (all matted with Blood) hung confusedly upon the Ground, which was red all round about me. I know not whether it was my Youth, or some Belief of the Greatness of my Birth, which at first moved Compassion in Theodates; but in effect, as I have learn'd fince, he began too look upon me with fome Sense of Pity, and after having bestow'd a Sigh or two on my Misfortune, he was going to appoint me Burial, and was beginning to decide the Quarrel among the Soldiers, and to command them to carry me from amidst the dead, when he perceived me stir and open my Eyes a little, shewing many signs that I was alive. Theodates at that fight felt fome kind Joy, and drawing nearer to my Face to find whether I breathed or no; This young Man is not dead, (said he) and without doubt he deserves Assistance; the Gods forbid I should neglect the Occafion to give it him; carry him into my Tent with his Arms; if he die, they shall be yours; and if he recover, I'll pay you for them as much as you can desire. Theodates was highly respected among the Soldiers, and (the Scythians being religious Observers of the Commands of their superior Officers) they obey'd without murmuring,

and going after him, carried me to his Tent, which was not very far from thence : He immediately gave order that I should be put to Bed, that my Wounds should be fearched, and that all those Remedies should be applied to me which could have been used in the like Extremity to his own Person. The Chirurgions who searched my Wounds found them very deep, and a great many, but they were all in fuch favourable Places, that only my loss of Blood gave them any Apprehensions, and they told Theodates, that it alone was enough to make them despair of my Recovery. Yet did they endeavour it. with great Care and Skill, and labour'd with fuch foveraign Remedies to draw me out of my Swoon, that I came perfectly to my Senses again, and opening my Eyes wide, I began to discern some of the Objects that were before me.

I was a long time nevertheless before I was capable. of Reason; and they dressed all my Wounds, I stirring but very little all the while, and having but a very imperfect Knowledge of what was done to me; not many Hours after, I grew fomething better, and had Strength enough to turn my Head a little, to roul my Eyes on every side, to call Things past into my Memory, and to question my self touching my present Condition. I had a confused Remembrance of the Battel, and of part of what I had done there, but I could not imagine in what Place I was, nor which way I came thither. I began to be desirous to know, when Theodates came to my Bedfide, and feeing that I looked attentively upon him; Whosoever you are (faid he) fear nothing, but believe you are fallen into the Hands of a Man that will not consider you as an Enemy, and who will labour as much for your Safety as for his own. He went away not staying for an Answer, and shutting the Curtain of my Bed, left me at liberty to digest his Words, and to think of the State I was in. I was not so weak, nor so little come to my felf, but that I understood what he had faid, and after I had reflected upon it, I conjectured something of the Truth. I knew I was a Prisoner; but tho' that Condition feem'd hard to me, I had Courage enough to fupport it, and by the first Usage I received from this Enemy,

as

er

oe

d

y

y

it

y

n

t,

Enemy, I began to hope for all manner of Courtely from him. This Knowledge fweeten'd my Discontent, and as at that time I was void of any Passion that could make me hate my Life, I joyfully receiv'd the Assistance that was given me for the Conservation of it. The second Day I was a little stronger, and the next after that, the Physicians assured Theodates, that by the Favour of the Gods, there was hope of my Recovery. The third Day, when they had fir'd the Camp to burn that great number of dead Bodies which the Scythians left upon our Fields, they repassed the Araxis, to march back toward Wedon; and Theodates, who did already interest himself very much in my Safety, not being able to oppose that Necesfity, would have me brought along in the most commodious manner he possibly could, and for that purpose caused a close Hand-Litter to be made, and to be carried by a great many Men appointed for that Office, who eafing one another by turns, removed me very gently, and eafily kept pace with the Army, which by reason of the number of the wounded Men, moved leifurely, and made but very short Marches. We came on this fashion into Scythia, and arrived at Iffedon; but Theodates, who for particular Reasons desired to keep me conceal'd. would not let me be carried into that City, but to a House of his which was not above five or fix hundred Furlongs from thence. I was already in a Condition which gave the Chirurgions certain hopes of my Recovery, but my Wounds were so great, that long Time, and much Patience were necessary for my Cure; nor did they fail to labour in it with fuch extraordinary Care, that I could not then imagine any other thing, but that Theodates, having had some Knowledge of my Quality; was so industrious to procure my Health, out of hope to get a mighty Ransom for me. I wrong'd his Virtue in that false Opinion, and I have fince had very good Reafon to know, that nothing but mere Generality inspired him with all those favourable Inclinations to me. He had visited me often during our March, and he faw me divers times at that House of his, where he forgot no kind of Civility or good Usage, to sweeten the Discontent I might have either for my Wounds, or for my D 4 Captivity

Captivity. I had learn'd his Name and Quality of them that waited upon me, andthat Knowledge obliged me to pay him what I thought due to a Prince, to whom I was so highly indebted. He never had asked me any thing concerning my Name or Birth, and I judg'd it not convenient to discover that I was Darius's Son, knowing what a mortal Hatred the King of Scythia bore our Family. But one Day when he was by my Bed-fide, he with a great deal of Civility entreated me to tell him fomething of them, affuring me, that let me disguise it as much as I would, I could not put him out of the Opii ion he had conceived of the Greatness of my Quality. I all my Life had a great Aversion against Lying, and befices, esteeming Theodates extremely, I desired to tell him Truth without discovering my felf; and remembring the former Names our Family had born before my Father attain'd the Crown, I am called Arfaces, (faid I) n.v Father's Name was Codoman, and you were not decrived, when you believed me to be fomething above the common Rank of Men; for indeed I am born a Prince, in one of those Countries that obey Darius, and I have the Honour to belong to him by fome Alliances which are not very remote; I make this Confession to you, upon the Knowledge I have of your Virtue, and tho' Captivity be hard to Princes, I shall bear mine with Patience, and not think my Condition miserable, because I am fallen into the Hands of fo generous a Prince as Theodates. When you are once in such an Estate (replied Theodates) that you can make use of the Esteem I have of you, you will find I have no Intentions you can complain of, nor shall the Knowledge you give me of your Quality, be any way to your Disadvantage. Yet is it recellary it should be unknown to the Scythians; for if the King should know I had a Prisoner of such Imporrance, it would be hard for you to recover your Liberty before the end of our Wars. You may lie here conceal'd till you are well, and when you have recovered your Health and Strength, I will certainly give you Caufe to continue your good Opinion of me.

We had some other Discourse upon this Subject, and during all the time my Wounds kept me in Bed, I had a thousand new Occasions to acknowledge his Civility. While I led that kind of Life, (very tedious to a Person of my Humour) my Thoughts travell'd as far as Persia; and I may truly protest to you, Brother, that nothing in my Captivity troubled me so much as our Separation. I was uncertain whether you had escaped the Battel in which I fell, and into which I had feen you rush headlong with fo little regard of Danger; and really that Apprehension was the greatest of my Discontents. Yet did I receive some Consolation, in that among so many Bodies as were stript, yours, whereof the whole Court of Scythia had the Idea most present to their Memory, had not been found, which made me hope with a great deal of likelihood, that you were not flain in that Day's Service. Your Consideration also gave me a desire to make fome stay among the Scythians, tho' I had had Liberty to return; and my dear Oroundates was too high in my Esteem to leave his Country without seeing the King his Father, and that Sister, whose admirable Beauty was fo loudly fam'd, and whereof I had heard Araxes, and many other Persons in Scythia, speak with some of those Praises which are her due. I heartily wish'd for some Occasion, wherein I might pay your House some small part of what you had done for ours, and the Gods know I would have purchased it with the better part of my Blood. In fine, not to hold you longer in this redious part of my Life, I recover'd my Health, but I was not able to stir out of my Chamber for above three Months after our arrival in Scythia; I saw my self at Liberty as foon as cur'd, there were no Guards to hinder me from going away, and generous Theodates did not fo much as demand my Promise for Assurance. I rather would have loft my Life, than abused that Goodness, nor would I have taken so much Liberty, as to have walked into the Garden, if he had not earnestly entreated me himself, and if within a few Days after, he had not told me that I was a free Man, and that if I had a mind to retire into my Country, he would furnish me with means to get out of Scythia. This great Civility of Theodates, put me. into

into a Confusion which I cannot represent, but I would by no means accept his Offers, and I let him fee I knew too well how the Rights of War engaged me towards him, to make fo ill a Use of his noble Favours; I told him that I knew the Obligations I had to him were invaluable, but also that with what Wealth the Gods had left to my disposing, I had a Life, which I held from none but him, and which I with a perfect Satisfaction would bestow on him that had so generously preserved it. Theodates judging by my Discourse that I was not of an Humour to continue engaged in fo great Obligations, redoubled his Affection to me, and protested, that he never would receive any thing but my Friendship for the Price of my Liberty, and of what he had done to fave my Life. And I (replied I) will never receive my Liberty upon fuch Conditions, and if it be an Offence to Prince Theodates to offer him Riches for a Reward of his Generosity, he cannot at the least refuse Arfaces himself, who gives himself absolutely to him, and who will not leave his Preserver, and his Master. Our Conversation ended with a great many Embraces, and Theodates told me I should oblige him infinitely, by the desire I had to make a longer stay with him, and that he had already conceiv'd fuch an Affection towards me, as would not fuffer him, to let me depart from him without Discontent. He promised me afterwards that he would carry me to fee the King, the Princess, and the whole Court, in such a way that I should run no hazard of being known, and that if my Face were taken Notice of, he would easily make me pass for a Stranger, whom desire of Glory had brought into those Places where it was to be gotten; and the same Day, after he had instructed his People how they should behave themselves towards me, and what they should answer if they were question'd about me, he took me along with him to Isedon; when we were alone he used me as a Prince, and as a Man of Quality equal to his own; but before these who might observe our Actions, he, at my request, carried himself towards me as an inferior Person, and one that had Dependence on him; otherwise it would have been very hard for me to have staid long at Court without being suspected. The fecond

fecond Day after our arrival, I faw the King in the Temple, and tho' he was my Father's Enemy, and without doubt mine also, I could not look upon the Father of Oroundates without some touches of Affection. Garb methought was extreme warlike, and extreme amorous both together, and there was Arfacomes, and many other Princes attending on him; but the next Day, going with Theodates into a Wood, where the Princess Berenice used to walk every Evening, I saw her, that admirable Lady; I faw her, and in that I think I have faid all, fince to fee her, and to lose that Liberty for her which I had fo long preserved, was but one and the same Thing; neither indeed is Berenice's Beauty one of those that Itand in need of long time to make a Conquest; for, to support her very first Looks without yielding, is wilfully to hold out in a guilty, and in an unfeemly Resistance. I saw her with Arms against which it was not possible to defend one's felf, and they amongst you, whose Passion gives them advantageous Opinions of those they love, must pardon me if I say, that all I had seen till then was but ill-favoured in my Conceit, compar'd to Berenice. Scarce had I cast mine Eyes upon her, but I. was already in a Flame; and in short, Brother, no longer time was requisite for Berenice to make her self Mistress of Artaxerxes's Heart, than, according to your Report, Statira had to win the Affections of Oroundates. This Resemblance of our Destinies came presently into my Mind; nay, and I think, that tho' its Assistance was utterly unnecessary, yet did it help toward my first Engagement: O Gods! how fatal was that moment to my Repose! how many Sufferings has it cost me, but withal how happy was it to me! fince in spite of all my Pains, in spite of all my Losses, and in spite of all my Missortunes, it hath made me taste a Bliss, the least part whereof was not to be purchased with all my Pains, Losses, and Misfortunes put together. The divine Berenice was alighted from her Chariot, to walk under the Trees with Princess Theomiris her Cousin, and some other Ladies of her Attendance; and tho' I only kept along with the Train at a good distance, I observed such Beauties in her

as far furpassed my Imagination. You know this marvellous Princess so well already, that I shall not need to make any Description of her, and I will only tell you, that I fix'd my felf so deeply in that Contemplation, that I lost all Knowledge of what I did; and in my Walk I was guided merely by the Throng of People that waited on the Princess. O Gods ! (faid I to my felf) is it possible you sould have thus advantageously display'd all your Powers in one mortal Beauty, or rather, is it possible that all your Powers sould have been able to form so marvellous a Workmanship? Fly, Artaxerxes, (faid I within a little after) fly from so fatal a Sight, and suffer not thy self to fall into a Precipice from whence thou never canst be able to retire; this Beauty is not destined unto Men; nor can Men, without a Crime, raise their audacious Thoughts unto it. I was so carried away in these Discourses, that I had hardly so much as a small glimpse of Knowledge remaining, and I should have continued long in that Employment, if the Princess had not given over walking, and if Theodates had not taken me back with him, after he with much ado had raised me out of the deep Meditation wherein I was buried. All the rest of the Day he could not draw a reafonable Word from me; and when I was in my Bed, I began a War with my own Thoughts, of a quite different Nature from all those I had even been in before that time. All Berenice's Beauties came presently into my Remembrance, and with them all the Sweetness, and all the Advantages that might be found in the Glory of ferving her; but this Knowledge was quickly accompanied with that of the Difficulties that were in that Defign, and in that birth of my Love. I made Reflections little different from those you made in the beginnings of yours: 'Tis true, (faid I) that Berenice is the most accomplished Creature in the World, and that all which Men have feen till now, has nothing that in any degree comes near her admira-He Beauty: She is but too Fair, he is but too Perfect: That is not the Thing that makes thee waver, O Artaxerxes, nor dost theu at all doubt whether she be worthy of thy Love, and of that Liberty, which hitherto thou hast preserved intire; but se is the King of Scythia's Daughter, and thou art the Son of Darius.

I staid a while upon this Consideration, but presently after I passed over that first Difficulty by your Example. Was not Statira (faid I) Darius's Daughter, and was not Orondates the King of Scythia's Son? Hast not thou a Heart as well as he? And canst not thou attempt that for his Sister, which he so courageously hazarded for thine? Thou without doubt hast Facilities in thy Design, which he found not in his; his Example may encourage thee, his Proceeding may instruct thee, and his Assistance may make thee the most fortunate above all Men living. He will not refuse to give it thee; and I assure my felf he will do the same Offices for thee to his Sister, which he receiv'd of thee to thine. The Gods will mollify our Fathers Hearts in time, and in the interim, thou wilt be too happy, and too contented in having a like Destiny with thy Oroondates. But what dost thou say, (replied I presently after to my self) a like Destiny? Oroondates possesses thy Sister's Affections already, and perhaps his will never approve of thine. Thou oughtest not to hope for the same Success in thy Love, which thy Brother's admirable Qualities gave him in his. He is the most deferving of all the Men in the whole World, and Statira, without being the most infensible of all Women, could not have defended her felf against him. Peradventure Berenice's Inclinations may be different from thy Sister's and she with Justice will find out the odds there is between Artaxerxes, and Prince Oroondates. Besides, Oroondates before he engag'd himfelf in that Enterprize, had already gain'd Statira, and the whole House of Persia, by Obligations which gave him the Confidence to attempt what he undertook; but Artaxerxes has yet done nothing, (fave Actions of an Enemy) either for Berenice, or for the King of Scythia. Do something therefore, Artaxerxes, that may render thee confiderable to King Mattheus, and that may give thee some Advantage in thy pretending to Berenice. If thou canst not make thy felf so remarkable as Oroundates did, at least seek some Occasion to testify that thou hast not the Thoughts of an Enemy, and either perish for them, or do them some Service that may procure thee a place in their Esteem. All Things are favourable to thee, if thou knowest how to use thy Fortune :

Fortune; and in this glorious Design which keeps thee in Scythia, Theodates's Friendship will not be unprofitable to thee. I reason'd thus a long time, sometimes flattering my felf with Hopes, and fometimes afflicting my felt with Difficulties; but in the End, I overcame them all to take my final Refolution. Why dost thou stand wavering (purfued I) in a Thing thou canst not possibly avoid? 'Tis a Decree of the Destinies, from which all the Contestations in the World can never free thee. Deliberate no more whether thou fhould'st love Berenice; but deliberate of the Means thou should'st use to make her suffer thy Affection. It it please the Gods, it may but one Day be acceptable to her, all the most happy Persons that ever were, never knew Felicity in any degree comparable unto thine; and if thou diest in serving her, thy Death will be a thousand times more glorious

than thy Life.

Here it was I fix'd, and no longer doubting whether I should love or no, I thought only what course I should take to make my felf be lov'd. I refolv'd to use Theodates's Friendship for my stay in Scythia; but I settled a firm Determination not to prefent my felf to the King, nor to the Princess his Daughter, till I had done some Action for their Service, which might introduce me handfomly to their Knowledge. In the interim I often faw my adored Princefs, bur 'twas in Temples, or in fuch Places where she could not take Notice of my Face, and every time I discovered new Beauties in her, and felt inconceivable increases in my Passion. In short, (Brother) I lov'd her with all the Violence that can be found in the strongest Affections; and I lov'd her with so absolute a Respect, and so perfect a Knowledge of her Excellencies, that I never cherish'd any Hope of making my self worthy to ferve her. I learn'd with much Discontent, that audacious Arsacomes had raised his Thoughts to her, and that abusing the King's Love to his Sister, he was so impudent as to own his to the whole World, and to give the Princess publick Demonstrations of it. The Infolence of that indifcreet Subject, animated we with a just Wrath, and with a lawful Indignation against him; and if I had been in a Condition to have shewn them, I fhould

y

VO

Tb

ob

par

par

fen

if]

form

Wei

Ene

should not have suffered a Presumption that displeased my Princess. That was it wherein I found some Consolation, for I no sooner knew that Arsacomes was in love with Berenice, but I heard that Berenice detested Arsacomes. I staid some few Months at Isedon on this manner, and in the end, the Gods made me depart from thence upon those Occasions I had so ardently desir'd, and so impatiently waited for.

The Nomades and the Hyleans rose up in Arms, and making themselves Masters of all that lies near the Lake of Buges, drew a potent Army into the Field, and began to make fuch Havock, that the Noise of it came presently to the King's Ear. He was defirous to apply some speedy Remedy to those Troubles, and fetting an Army on foot, worthily made Choice of Theodates to Command it. bleffed that favourable Occasion a thousand times, and prepared my felf with an incredible Joy to march along with that generous Friend, upon an Expedition, wherein I possibly might find Opportunity to make my felf appear with some Reputation to the King of Scythia, and perhaps some Occasion, wherein I might repay some part of what I ow'd to Theodates. I expressed to him the Contentment I receiv'd by that Employment, and told him the Resolution I had taken, either to lose that Life he had fav'd, in fighting by his fide, or elfe to do fomething for his Service, that might hinder him from repenting the Affection he had so blindly given me. I love you (answered Theodates) with so perfect a Knowledge of your Merit, that I cannot be accused of Blindness in my Friendship; and in performing marvellous Exploits, you will do nothing beyond the Opinion I have of you. Theodates accompanied these favourable Words with many obliging Endearments; and we made ready for a departing, which by reason of the pressing Necessity of Affairs, was very fudden and precipitate. I in that Separation should have felt all the Discontents a cruel Abfence can throw upon a Person that most ardently loves, if I had not found my Confolation in the Hope I had of some Advantages that Expedition might procure me. We went from Iffedon, and took long Marches toward the Enemies. At first I would by no means accept of any Command,

Command, but contented my self with fighting near Theodates's Person; but in the first Battel that was given, I was so happy as to do him some Services, which obliged him to bestow Employments on me that were above

the reach of my Capacity.

Arfaces's Modesty caused him to pass lightly over the Occasions wherein he had made himself remarkable; but Oroundates perceiving it, and being desirous to spare him the pains of telling them some of those Things they had heard already from Berenice; Brother, (said he) we have learn'd part of those gallant Actions you did in that first Battel; we know you fav'd Theodates's Life two feveral times, and that feeing your Squadrons waver, you feiz'd upon the formost Standard, re-animated your frighted Troops by your Words, and by your Example, and by your only Valour turn'd the Victory to your side, which was already declaring it felt for your Enemies. We know, that after all these Wonders, Theodates gave you the Command of part of the Army, that with it you took Places of great Importance by Assault, and that with eight thousand Horse, you perfected the Defeat of the Rebels near the Lake of Buges, with fuch marvellous Effects of Valour, and good Conduct, that the Memory of them will never be lost among the Scythians. You have been told a great deal more than what I did (replied Arfaces modestly) and 'tis with much Injustice they would rob Theodates of part of that Glory, which was totally due to him. We have heard moreover, (continued Oroondates) how you were presented to the King, by Theodates, the Reception you had from him, the beginnings of your Favour, and of the Reputation you acquir'd among the Scythians, the progress of your Credit with the King, your generous and affable Carriage, which gain'd you the Heart of all the Court, the first Discourses you had with Berenice, and Stratonice's Marriage to the King; and in short, the Adventure which made my Sister discover your Passion for her. She was relating these Passages to me when you came into our Camp, and we were interrupted just as she began to tell the Conversation you had with her in an Arbour of the Garden, where by Cyllenia's Mediation you obtain'd the Audience

n

re

D

an

th

m

dr

en

ou

m

fee

In

you had demanded. These Princes that hear you, learn'd them not from Berenice, but I made them the Recital yesterday, and they know enough of all to ease you of a Trouble, which in your present Condition would be no small one.

Since you are so well instructed in these Particulars, (purfued Arfaces) I will not repeat what you have heard already from my Princess; but before I come to the Place where her Narration was interrupted, I'll tell you fome Things in a few Words, which at that time were not come to her Knowledge. She might be able to tell you the Discourses I had with her, but she could not represent to you what I felt inwardly for her, and tho' in that I am more knowing than any other Body, even I my felf shall find the expressing of it to be a very difficult Matter. After the time that I had the Honour to have access to her, and that together with her outward Beauties, I was permitted to contemplate part of those which adorn'd her Mind, when her transcendent Virtue, her charming Conversation, and her excellent Goodness, were as well known to me as her Face, of a passionate Man that I was before, I became an Idolater, and grew quite transported, having scarce Power enough left me over my felf, to keep that violent Passion from breaking forth, which had made it felf Mistress of my Soul with a most absolute Empire. That perfect Knowledge I had of her admirable Qualities, check'd my aspiring Hopes, and I could not consider Berenice, in that sublime degree of Perfection to which the Gods had raised her, without remembring my felf to be but a Man, and therefore utterly unworthy to serve her. This Reflection caufed Disquiets in me, which often were observed in my Face, and tho' I was loaden with Honours, and favour'd by the King beyond my defert, that inward Discontent made me but little sensible of any outward Happiness, and hindred me from tafting those Advantages, which the most eminent Persons in all Scythia could not look upon without Envy. Theodates's Friendship toward me was so augmented after those light Services I had done him, that he feem'd to live only for my fake; and he took fo great an Interest in those Favours I receiv'd from the King, that

P

(1

W

I

OL

ar

ha

th

fel

th

ing

gre

pai

my

OW

my Fortune feem'd really to be his own; and to fay the Truth, I made use of it as much as possibly I could to his Advantage, and imploy'd a great part of the Confidence the King had in me, to recommend the Person of Theodates to him; but these Marks of my Affection seem'd light in me, in respect of what I ow'd to his, and I believ'd that after the Proofs he had given me of it, I not only might tell him who I was, but that I could not without Ingratitude conceal my felf from him any longer. Besides, in the Condition I then was, I stood in need of a Person to whom I might communicate my Thoughts, and amongst all those that were most discreet, and most affectionate to me, I could not have chosen one more worthy than he of fo important a Trust. Theodates loves me too well (faid I) and Theodates is too generous to betray me, and besides the Shame his Treachery would be to him, he could reap no manner of Advantage by my Destruction. I ended these Words with Repentance for having distrusted Theodates's Virtue, and following the Resolution I had taken, one Day when I had shut my felf with him into a Closet, I discovered my true Quality to him, and the true Cause of my abode in Scythia. I made him acquainted with my Love as well as with my Birth, and shew'd him how by that Declaration I put that Life into his Hands, over which he had a great deal of Power before.

I should have much ado to represent the Greatness of Theodates's Astonishment; after this Discovery, he hadso good Opinion of me, as not to doubt the Truth of my Words, and both my Face and Actions, as he faid to flatter me, persuaded him sufficiently that my Birth was higher than ordinary; but he thought this Adventure fo little common, that upon the Report of another Body, he could hardly have given Credit to it. Tho' he appear'd amaz'd, he appear'd not chang'd, and he believ'd that by that Testimony of my Friendship, he was deeply oblig'd to persevere in his. I opposed those Submissions which that Knowledge of my Quality would have obliged him to render me, and after I had most expresly intreated him to live in the same Freedom with me as he was wont, he made fuch Protestations to me, and promifed

mised me his Assistance in my Design with so great Affection that I did not think I had any Reason to repent me of the Confidence I had in him. From that time forward he comforted me in my Discontents as much as possibly he could, fought means to let me fee my Princess often, and procured me that little Picture which gave her the Knowledge of my Love. While I liv'd at Issedon, in a very languishing manner, and that I could not obtain Permifsion of my Respect to declare my Passion, the Truce was proposed and concluded between the King of Scythia, and the King my Father; but the Cause of it was sad to poor Darius, and 'twas about that time we heard that the Lieutenants were defeated at the Passage of the Granicus, that part of his Dominions had follow'd the Fortune of conquering Alexander, and that afterward Darius himfelf had lost the Battle of Iss, and with it a great many of his Provinces, and all his Family, who were taken Prifoners. You may easily judge, that (for all I was fo prepossessed with a Passion, which made me insensible of all Things else) I could not receive this News without a most deep Discontent, and a great deal of Shame. It wrought a strange Alteration in my Hopes, nor had Love so totally seiz'd upon my Heart, but that it had left some Place in it for the Considerations of Honour. (said I) shall I languish then at the Feet of a Person, to whom my Sufferings are not so much as known, and shall I live in Scythia, as a Man to whom the Misfortune of Persia were Things indifferent, while Alexander lays our Country desolate, usurps our Territories, and persecutes our House? Ah! Arsaces, Arsaces, remember that thou art still Artaxerxes; cast off this Personage which Love has disguised thee with, to take up that again to which thine Honour recalls thee, and consider that Berenice her felf would not esteem thee, if thou couldst linger out thy Life so shamefully at her Feet. I never stood wavering about what Resolution I ought to take, and how great Violence foever my Love made me feel at that Separation, to which I was to dispose my felf, the care of my Reputation, and the tender Affection I bore to my own Blood, made me Master of that Passion which fought against my Duty with its utmost Power. When once my Honour

Honour is fatisfied (faid I) we'll fuffer Love to work, and I may better ferve Berenice, when I shall have freed my felf from a Shame that would render me unworthy of her; when we have repel'd that Enemy, who equally destroys my Father's Kingdoms, and my Hopes, we'll return into Scythia, and with a freer Confidence demand that of Berenice, which we should not dare to aspire to, being depressed with Infamy. This was my final Determination, and I imparted it to Theodates, who was most fenfibly concerned in my Afflictions, and who refolv'd to keep me Company in that Journey, and to follow my Fortune over all the World. Tho' he comply'd exceedingly with my Passion, he could not disapprove my Resolution, and he confessed that in the Extremity our House was reduced to, I could not give my felf over to my Love, without blafting my Memory for ever with an irreparable want of Spirit. My Departure therefore was concluded in spite of all the Oppositions of my Love; but yet I was not a little troubled to leave Scythia, without giving my Princess some Knowledge of it. I contrived feveral ways in my Imagination, but my Fortune took care of it, and 'twas about that time my little Picture spoke for me, and discovered that unto my Princess, which my Respect had forc'd me to conceal. I am not able to describe at length, with what a Grief I was afflicted, when I received the Sentence of my Condemnation by the Mouth of Cyllenia; notwithstanding the Astonishment that appeared in my Face, I did not think it very strange, and I had ever believed that the Princess would not without Displeasure receive a Declaration of Love from a Man unknown as Arfaces, who passed in the Court of Scythia but for a private Person; but I was extremely grieved I had offended her by my Prefumption, and that at my Departure I should carry away with me the Sorrow of having incurred her Anger. I had a defire she should believe I knew Berenice's Merit too well, to permit her to be ferv'd by a Man of obscure Birth, and I judg'd that peradventure she would find less Ground of Offence in the Passion of the Prince of Persia, than in that of an unknown Arsaces; this was the Reason that made me demand that Audience by Cyllenia, which I had

fo much ado to obtain, and which I covered with other Pretences than those of my Love, knowing very well, that without entertaining the Princess with it, I (by the Discourse I had to make) might blot out part of the Injury I had done her. I'll not speak a Word to her of my Love, (said I to my self,) nor is it necessary, since she is well enough instructed in that already; that perhaps I may get her to approve it, by the Example, and by the Remembrance of Oroondates; and when I shall join the Intercession of that Friend to the Knowledge of my Quality, I may perhaps feem less faulty in my Princes's Opinion. 'Twas upon this Hope I pressed the demand I had made unto Cyllenia, and when I had obtain'd the Favour I desir'd, I came into the Garden, after I had premeditated what I would fay, and how I would behave my felf. Here Arfaces making a little pause, Oroondates told him where his Sifter's Recital had been interrupted, and then Arfaces went on with it on this manner: Since my Princess has told you the first Words of our Conversation, it will fuffice me to let you know the rest: After that by her Command I was rifen from my Knee, I fixt my Eyes upon her Face, and tho' she, out of Resentment, turn'd away hers from me, I forbore not to speak to her in these Terms:

I should hot have deferr'd to obey you, Madam, but should have left a Country, in which you no longer behold me but with Indonation, if I could have done it without deceiving a Person, who heretofore was worthy of your Friendship, and who honour'd me particularly with his; I have taken the Charge upon me, to let you know what is become of him, and to draw you by the relation of his Adventures, out of a great many Discontents, wherein the Ignorance of them may have retain'd you. But before I tell you the Name of that illustrious Person, be pleased, Madam, to behold a Pledge he gave me of his Friendship, and perhaps the fight of it will prepare you to lend more Credit to my Discourse. At these Words, Brother, I shew'd her a Ring which you had bestow'd upon me, and which you had received from her felf. It was a Stone of very great Price, and Lustre, mon which two Hearts were ingraven, tied together

la

th

fi

VE

T

h

F

ab

ru

fc:

Bi

Sei

ou

or

mi

for

Arj

WI

Oro

in h

all

him

abo

his

the

the

shev

with

paffi

crue

for a

the (

part

my]

him.

many several ways with certain Bands, and in the Greek Tongue this Word, Inseparable. The Princess struggled with her Anger, to cast her Eyes upon that Ring, and the no fooner faw it, but the knew it immediately. Ah! Arfaces, (faid she') this Ring was the Prince my Brother's. Yes, Madam, (replied I) and 'twas from him that I receiv'd it. O Gods! (cried the Princess) in what part of the World was it you knew him ? and what News do you bring me of him? I can give you a very particular Account (pursued I) if you will allow me a favourable hearing. I shall hearken diligently to you without doubt (faid Berenice) and you cannot ingage my Attention by a more pleasing Entertainment, nor by any wherein I can have a greater Interest. O my dearest Brother! (continued she with a transport of Affection) what Province can retain you now, and how great is your Inhumanity in absenting your felf fo long from those, to whom your Absence is a Death? After this short Exclamation, she disposed her felf to hear me; and to fatisfy her Expectation I began

Before I tell you, Madam, in what Place I had the Honour to be known to Prince Oroundates, you will give me leave (omitting what concerns my felf till the End of my Narration) to entertain you with his most important Adventures, and to make you acquainted with Passages, whose recital, without doubt, will not be unpleafing to you. Then I began to relate your first Rencounter with the Queens, and Princesses of Persia, in that Tent where you sav'd them from the Violence of the Scythians; I told her the Birth of our Affection, the Rencounter you had with Prince Artaxerxes in the same Occasion, your generous Usage of him, and the Discourse that passed between you, your parting, and your particular Thoughts till you decamped, and re-passed the Araxis. Having instructed her in the Cause of your Departure, which till then she had been ignorant of, I related your Journey into Persia, your gallant entry into the Court, how you made your felf remarkable in the Courses, by difmounting so many of the most noted Persians, and how under the Name of Orontes, you were known again by

all

all Darius's Family for their valiant Deliverer; but I inlarg'd my felf more particularly than in all the rest, upon the Passages between you and Prince Artaxerxes, and defiring to work fome Esteem, and some Assection in Bevenice toward that Prince, I forgot Modesty to speak Things to his Advantage, the recital whereof would have been very unfeemly in my Youth, if Love had not excused me. I heighten'd the Proofs he gave you of his Friendship in Terms that might make him far more amiable than he is, and which caused the Princess to interrupt me, faying, What, Arfaces, was he whom you describe to be so obliging, and so perfect a Friend to my Brother, the same Prince that was slain in the Battel of selena? Even he himself, (replied I) but make no reckoning of these his first Actions, fince in his last, you, without doubt, will have more Caufe to think well of him, or at least to abate part of that Hatred you bear his Family. Ah! (faid the Princess) how much am I afflicted for him, and how much you would have obliged me, Arfaces, if you had spared me the Grief I feel for his untimely Death! After these Words, I prosecuted my Narration, but I did so exaggerate the Affection wherewith Artaxerxes received the Discovery of Orontes to be Oroendates, the Passion wherewith he sollicited his Sister in his behalf, the care he took to favour him in his Love all manner of ways, and in short, the last Proofs he gave him of his Affection, as well in contesting with him about chusing Sides, as in what he did, and suffer'd for his Consideration at the Battel, that when I came to make the Relation of his Death, the Princess, prepossessed with the Impressions I had given her, could not forbear to shew how sensible she was of it, and looking upon me with Eyes all drown'd in Tears, which a generous Compassion made her shed; Ah! Arsaces, (said she) how cruel you are in having given me so great an Affection for a Prince whom you meant to kill! I would it pleased the Gods he were alive, and that Oroundates, by a good part of his Dominions, and even by a good part of my Blood, were able to requite his Obligations to him.

He was resolved, Madam, (replied I coldly) to give him a more glorious Recompence; and if you will give me leave, I'll tell you, Madam, 'twas by the Glory of serving the Princess Berenice, he intended to repay Artaxerxes for the good Offices he had done him to Statira, 'Twas Artaxerxes, Madam, whom Orcondates had destined for you, and if that poor Prince had been so happy to make himself worthy of you, 'twas by the hope of that double Alliance, he aim'd to fettle Peace between your Fathers. How often did that Prince (flatter'd by the Hopes he gave him, and in Love with you already by the Description Araxes made) press Oroendates to seek some way with him for the obtaining of that Happiness he had propounded? and would have refolved to come difguifed into your Country, if he could have forfaken Oroondates in Affairs wherein he believ'd himself necessary to him. Croondates is now with Darius, belov'd of his Princes, and in a Condition which would not be miserable, if he were not mortally afflicted for the Loss of his dear Friend and Brother. He was flain, poor Prince, but his Fate is too happy, and too glorious, fince the recital of his Death has drawn Tears from your fair Eyes, in spite of the Hatred between your Families; he was slain because the Gods knew that perhaps he was not worthy to live for you; and that you would have condemn'd both the Intention of the Prince your Brother, and the Presumption of Artaxerxes. His Estate is a thousand times more fortunate by being dead in fuch a Condition as makes you to esteem his Memory, and to bestow those Tears out of your Compassion for his Loss, than if he had died guilty in your Opinion, or if he had died for the Expiation of fuch a Fault as that of Arfaces. Let's not talk of the Fault of Arfaces, (faid the Princess, interrupting me) it has nothing to do with the Fortune of Artaxerxes: for if that lovely Prince had had those Thoughts for me which my Brother would have infused into him, he had been guilty of no other Faults but of having had too great a compliance for a Friend, and of having blindly given his Affections to a Princess that had not deserved them, If I believ'd, Madam, (replied I, very glad to fee her brought to the Point I defired) that you really had those Indinger es

Inclinations toward Artaxerxes which you express, without doubt I should comfort you in the Trouble his Death hath caused, and should make his Destiny so fortunate, that the most happy Persons in the World should have

Reason to envy it.

.

i

e

e

e.

u

10

e

it

if

h

en

2

is

If

er

fe

...5

What Confolation can you give (faid the Princess) for Losses that are irreparable? and if you should tell me that my Brother's Fortune is at the highest point he ever could have hoped, what will that alter this poor Prince's Condition? since in fine he is dead, and that our Wishes cannot call him back into the World again. At these Words I took Courage, and raising the Tone of my Voice, which my Passion did extremely animate; Fut if Artaxerxes should be alive, (said I) if he should be in Scythia, if he should have seen you, if he should have adored you, and did adore you still with Passions a thoufand times more violent than those the Prince your Brother endeavoured to inspire him with; to what Punishment would you condemn his Prefumption? Beremice aftonished at this Discourse, looked upon me without being able to reply; but I had not the Power to conceal my felf any longer, and taking my time to fall at her Feet while she was in that Trouble; Behold him, Madam, (continued I) behold him, that happy, and that miserable Prince, whose Death has touch'd you, and whose Life has displeased you; either cease to hate Arfaces, or else cease to love Artaxerxes; the one connot be innocent, fo long as the other is guilty, and fure the Gods did not fave an innocent Artaxerxes, to make of him a guilty Arfaces. If Arfaces's Passion has offended you, that of Artaxerxes is supported with the Friendship, with the Assistance, and with the Inspirations of Oroondates; repay me some part of what I did for him, and fince the Gods will not let me call him now to my Relief, suffer me to make use of your Friendship to him, and of his to me, to obtain your Pardon for the Offence I have committed. I am criminal, fince I have displeafed you, but my Crime is excusable by the Cause of it, nor have I any Thing considerable in me, whereby I can merit of you in the least degree except my Crime; if you look upon me as Darius's Son, remember that Oro. n-Vol. IV. dates

dates was the King of Scythia's; and moreover remember, that if I be the Son of Darius, I for your sake abandon Darius, I abandon my desolate Country, my captive Parents, nay, and I abandon even my Honour it felf. Be not more obdurate in your Hatred than Statira; and if, to conquer your Inclinations, Artaxerxes be not so worthy to be belov'd as Oroondates, let that Defect be supplied by the Greatness of his Passion. I brought forth these Words without having the Boldness to lift up my Eyes unto my Princess's Face, but when I had ended them, I took that liberty, and faw hers fixt upon the Ground, with all the Symptoms of the greatest Astonishment a Mind can possibly fall into. I waited in vain for an An-Iwer from her, for a long time she was not able to give me one, and when I had remained filent a great while expecting it, I see, Madam, (pursued I of a sudden) that my Temerity will have the Success I ever look'd for from it, and that Artaxerxes had done well to die as Arfaces, fince the Knowledge of his true Quality, is not any way able to leffen his Fault.

No, Madam, it is not just that the King of Persia's Son (who has yet done nothing for the Princes's Berenice, that can make her lose the Inveterateness of Paternal Hatred) should hope for any Mercy from her, and if Oroondates had better Fortune in his Affection to my Sister, he was worthy of it, both in regard of his Services, and of the Merit of his Person. I will no more alledge his Example to establish mine, but will only make use of his Friendship to me, to obtain your Pardon for my Offence. I for the Expiation of it, will, if you think fit, go and expose the Son of the King of Scythia's Enemy, to his Resentment, and by his order I joyfully will lose a Life which the Gods have miraculously prolonged, only to make me spend the remainder of it so gloriously for your Satisfaction; if you disapprove this kind of Punishment, my Hand shall execute your Will without Repugnance, and if fuch Objects are not pleasing to you, I'll go and feek your Reparation, and that I owe to mine own Honour, in falling by the Sword of conquering Alexander. Do but let me part from you, Madam, with fome Tokens of Compassion, and if you think Compassion too advantageous

advantageous for me, let me part from you at least with this Consolation, that 'tis rather the War between our Fathers, than the Knowledge of Artaxerxes's Passion, that

makes you hate him.

During this fecond Discourse, the Princess had time to fettle her felf again, yet not so persectly, but that in her Face one might still see all the Marks of a strong Amazement. At last she raised her Eyes from off the Earth, where she long had kept them fixt, and turning them upon me with a very bashful Action, but such an one as shew'd not so much Anger as Confusion; O Artaxerxes! (faid she) to what Extremity do you reduce me, and how will you have me to explain my felf in the Astonishment you have put me in? Which way can a Princess of my Condition receive Declarations of Love, without her Father's Approbation? Which way can I receive the Son of Darius, whose Name is so odious to my Family? But also what do I not owe to your Birth, and to the Qualities of your Person; what do I not owe to your Affection, whereof you give me fuch dangerous Proofs, and what do I not owe to the Remembrance of all you did for Oroondates? She made a stop at these Words, as extremely pensive, and unresolved, and the Joy I felt in seeing her fo shaken, held me in a silence as great as hers. I with most passionate Motions observed the Alterations of her Countenance, which by little and little became more gentle; in the end, letting her felf fink upon Cyllenia's Shoulder, O Gods! (cried she) how hard it is to refife fo many Powers, and how little is Berenice capable of Ingratitude! Methinks (continued flie, having paufed a while) this Confession should be enough to satisfy you; and that affuring you, I will consider, as I ought, the Merit of your Person, and that of your Affection, together with that of your high Friendship to my Brother, you should have nothing more to desire of me. No, (replied I, quite transported with Joy) No, though I were the greatest among all the Gods; and my Fortune, by a prodigious Effect of your Goodness, is far above all the Hopes I had conceived. Rife, Sir, I beseech you, (added the Princess) and pardon our Ignorance in those Faults it has made us to commit against you.

I was fo firmly linked unto her Knees, that I was fain to be commanded many times before I could refolve to yield Obedience; at last I was constrain'd, and by the same Power I was forced to sit down by her, to relate which way my Life was fav'd at the Battel of Selena, and to tell her those of my Adventures that were unknown to her. I obey'd her with a Satisfaction that can hardly be imagined, and filled my Discourse with so many Marks, and with fo many Circumstances of my Passion, that before I ended it, I found my Prince's was not utterly insensible. Her Inclinations naturally are mild, and pitiful, and without doubt 'twas Pity, and her Frinedship to the Prince her Brother, that introduced an Affection into her Heart, which was not due to the Merit of Artaxerxes. It was to that alone (interrupted Oroundates) that Berenice gave what will never be refused you by any Body, nor could she, I will not say without Ingratitude, and Insensibility, but even without Stupidity, defend her felf against so many admirable Qualities; she lov'd you before as Arfaces; but her Ignorance of your Condition made her conceal from one unknown, what she avowed with Honour to the greatest Prince in all the World. This is not the Discourse I expected from my dear Brother, (replied Arsaces, out of Countenance at Oroondates's Words) but all Things must be suffered from his Friendship, and I may truly protest to him, that I should make less account of the Title of the greatest Prince in the World, than of that of Oroondates's Friend. The Company opposed the Answer Oroundates would have returned to these Words, and Arsaces went on thus with his Narration.

I will not repeat all the Passages of our Conversation, and it shall suffice me to tell you, that before we parted, my fair Princess made me know that my Passion had not offended her, and permitted me to hope she would not be insensible of it. I went away with Raptures of Contentment, which cannot be comprehended but by those that have felt the like; and my Disquiets for the Miseries of our House were so swallow'd up by such an extraordinary Happiness, that I had scarce so much as a Remembrance of them left. As soon as I saw Theodates, I made

him acquainted with my Fortune, and he was touch'd with it in such a manner, that he could hardly have appeared more joyful at what had most nearly concern'd his own. He strengthened me in my Hopes by Discourses upon that Subject, and in Conclusion he pleasingly perfuaded me, that by my Princess's Goodness, and your Assistance, my Fortune might become like yours, tho our Persons were very different. O Gods! with what Contentment did I cherish those sweet Hopes, and what Thanks did I not return to my Wounds and to my Captivity! Ah Liberty gloriously lost! (faid I) Ah Blood of Artaxerxes most fortunately spilt, how shall I grudge your Loss, fince it has brought me so great Advantages! O Empires of Darius, how little considerable is the Possesfion of you, in respect of the Possession of my Princess; and how light is the Glory of commanding Nations, in respect of the Glory of obeying Berenice! I spoke these Words, and many others, being transported with a Joy which was observed in me by my Friends, and they who a few Days before had feen me with a languishing dejected Face, wondered to find so great, so sudden an Alteration.

The next time that I saw my Princess, she appear'd out of Countenance for the Favour she had granted me; yet did she not express that she intended to repent, but by most charming Confirmations, settled me in the Hope of my Felicity, and promised me in the Presence of Cyllenia, that none of those that pretended to her Affection, should ever obtain any Thing to my Prejudice, and that she would contribute towards my Happiness, whatsoever I could hope for from a virtuous Princess. I desir'd no more, and well might fay, I then had been in a Condition, that deferv'd the Envy of the most fortunate Perfons, if my Felicity had not been troubled by the fad Thoughts of the Mifery of my Country, and by the Fear of those Reproaches I might apprehend. Thy Father (said I to my lelf) has already lost two Battels, the better part of his Dominions is in the Power of his Enemy, thy Mother and thy Sisters are Captives to a young Conqueror, who carries them shamefully along in Triumph, and perhaps thou art upon the very point of losing the E 3 greates

greatest Empire of the World; and canst thou lie buried. here in Love, and canst thou have other Thoughts than those of serving thy Father, in this wretched Condition to which Fortune has reduced him, of delivering thy fo near Friends from Slavery, of faving thy Country, and of faving thy Reputation? But (faid I again prefently after) can I be able to leave Berenice in the beginning of my Happiness, and of my gallant Hopes, and can I quit a Fortune, which perhaps my Absence may make me lose for ever? 'Tis no matter (added I, asham'd of that last Reflection) let us fave our Reputation, tho' with the lost of all the rest; we would prefer Berenice before the Conservation of our Dominions, before the Love we bear our Friends; but we must prefer our Honour before Berenice, or rather we will preserve our Honour, that we may not be unworthy of Berenice. This indeed was my Resolution, but I could not bring my self to it without most violent Conflicts. My Princess, who knew the State of Persia, and that of our Family, did out of her Goodness suffer with me in my Affliction, and took an Interest in our Missortunes, with Inclinations very different from those of the King her Father, and all the rest of Scythia.

She judg'd very well that I could not flay in Scythia without Shame; and tho' she then exprest, that my abode there was not unpleasing to her, and my departure not indifferent, yet was she too full of Reason to oppose a Determination, which fo pressing a Necessity made me take, or to desire Proofs from my Affection, which might redound to my Dishonour. After I had her Consent for my Departure, and by the Assistance of Theodates, had taken such Order as was necessary about it, I represented to the King the Necessity that forc'd me from his Service for a little time, and begg'd leave of him to spend a few Months in visiting my Country, in those Miseries wherewith it was oppressed. The King gave Ear unto my Suit with Trouble, and testified his Affection to me by the Difficulties he made in granting me the Liberty I demanded; he did all he possibly could to stay me, offered me the most important Offices of the State, and promised to exalt me to fuch a Height, that my Condition should be · look'd

look'd upon with Envy by the chiefest Persons of the Kingdom; but these Considerations were too weak to hold me, since that of Berenice had not been strong enough. Sir, (said I) the least I owe unto my miserable Country, is to visit it in its extreme Calamities; I have Friends and Kindred there, to whom I am bound in Duty to lend my Assistance, and I here am useless for your Majesty's Service; I would not leave you, if there were any Occasion to imploy me in it, and I'll come back again before this Year be at an end, if Death or Imprisonment detain me not. I used many other Reasons, which at last won his Consent unto my Journey, after he had made me reiterate my Promise of returning as soon as possibly I could.

When I had obtained his Permission, and had taken my leave of a great many Friends, whom my good Fortune had gained me in the Court of Scythia, I paid my Respects unto my Princess. Only Theodates and Cyllenia were admitted to our Entertainment, and we wanted no Pretences to cover that secret Conversation. O Gods ! how were my Sorrows fweetned, when I faw Tears in the Eyes of my fair Princess, and how great Consolation did I receive from her charming Words, which affured me that I was not indifferent to her, and that I was not afflicted alone for our Separations! I depart from you, Madam, (faid I to her) because my cruel Destiny ordains it so, and you would have a just Occasion to repent the Favour you have shewn me, if I could indure to live with Infamy; but this hard Necessity, which drags my Body out of Scythia, cannot pull away my Heart from thence, so much as for a moment; and in the remotest Places of all Persia, Arfaces can never be far from you. I go full of Resentment against the Usurper of our Dominions, the Murderer of our Subjects, and the Persecutor of our Family, but I am more incenfed against the Enemy of my Repose, and against the Enemy that separates me from my Princess; this Effect of his Hatred is more bitter to me than all the rest, and arms me against him with a more lawful Anger; if it please the Gods I fall under his victorious Arms, I shall at least have this Glory before my Death, that I was owned by Berenice; and if E 4 they

they suffer me to return hither a Conqueror, or devested of Empire, I'll bring back the Remnant of my Life, be it what it may, and lay it at her Feet, as a Tribute due to her alone; each moment of this cruel Absence will be an Age to me, and an Age of most rigorous Torments; but if you bestow any of them upon the Remembrance of Arfaces, his Sorrows (which might bring him to his Grave) will lose part of their Force, and that Knowledge will comfort me in my Difasters with a most powerful Consolation. I shall receive no small one by the fight of my dear Brother, and if the God's be pleafed that I yet may find him with Darius, the Miseries of my Condition will be abated, and I shall give him an Account of your Friendship toward him, and of what you have done for me, out of his Confideration. Then if the Heavens permit, we'll return together into Saythia, and I by his Intercession will beg the continuance of this Felicity, which mine Enemies have interrupted.

In the mean time, O most lovely Princess, give me but an Assurance from your fair Mouth, whereby I may pretend to the Glory of your Remembrance, and hope by your Command, that this tyrannous Absence, tho' it banish me out of Scythia, banishes me not out of your Memory. I will remember you for ever, (said the Princess, wiping away some obliging Tears) and what distance soever separates us, you shall never be absent from Berenice's Mind; Ideas that are not easily settled in it, are not easily to be blotted out of it; and in short, you are too considerable to me all manner of ways, to fear that I can forget you, so long as you remember

me.

Go Arfaces, since whether you will or no, there is a necessity of it; go where you are call'd by Reasons which cannot oppose; but how great soever your Resentment is against Alexander, forget not that I desire your Return, that I enjoin it you by all the Power you have given me over you, and that you cannot thrust your self into unnecessary Dangers, without putting your self in hazard of disobeying me, of displeasing me, and since (in spite of Modesty I confess it to you) of making me extreme-

extremely unfortunate. O Arfaces! (cried I) O Artaxerxes! how happy is thy Fate, and how few Enemies will there be that can oppose thy Return, while thou art animated by these glorious Hopes! Well, Madam, (continued I, kneeling down before her, and taking one of her fair Hands, upon which, by the Indulgence she had toward me in that Occasion, I held my Lips fast cemented a good while) fince you do me Favours which are above the lawful Hope of all Men living, I should be much too blame if I could defire more, and if I could tear that the Perfecutions of Arsacomes, and the Credit of Stratonice, could shake the Courage of my Princess. Her Promifes put me into Security, and tis to her Goodness that I abandon a Life, which shall never depend but upon her alone. I faid many other Things which Time has razed out of my Memory, and after I had received all the modest Testimonies of Assection I could demand, I took my leave; yet not with fo much Constancy, but that my Grief broke forth into feveral Actions, which upon another Occasion, and for another Subject than Berenice, would have passed for very great Weaknesses. This Confolation I had, that my Princefs did not appear infenfible, and that she accompanied the Sorrow that transported me, with many Tears, and many figns of her Compassion. I parted from her on this manner, and being retired from Theodates, I prepar'd my felf to go from Ifedon the next Morning by break of Day. Generous Theodates, whose Virtue truly is one of the highest, and most considerable of this Age, persisted in the Design of accompanying me in my Voyage, but I would not confent to it; and knowing how useful he might be to me by being near Berenice, during my Absence, I pray'd him to continue in the Court: He was the only Man to whom I was known in Scythia, the only Man that knew the Love I bore the Princefs, the only Man whom Berenice could trust, and the only Man by whose means I could hear from her. Thefe Reasons which I represented to him, oblig'd him to flay behind, knowing he might do me a great deal more Service there than by going with Yet would he not leave me until I was come to the Haven of Hypoleon, where I intended to imbarque upon E & the

I

the Euxine Sea, to enter into Persia by the way of Byzantium. We departed therefore from Isedon, taking our way toward those Provinces of Scythia which are wash'd by the Borifthenes, and after many Days Journeys, without any considerable Encounter, we arriv'd at the Haven where we were to part. We could not do it without many Tears on both fides, and I was fo fensible of the Obligations I had to that noble Prince, that I could not leave him without an excessive Trouble. Dear Theodates. (faid I) your Prisoner is going away upon his Parole; but he will return if the Gods permit, and for his Ranfom will offer you all the Dominions of the King his Father, and this Life which you fo generously have acquired your self. Sir, (replied Theodates) I value not Empires in respect of the Friendship wherewith you Honour me, and whereof you have given me fuch real Proofs by mine own Safety, and what Command foever you should lay upon me, I could never be able to leave you, if I were not useful to your Service in this Country. These Words were mutually accompanied with Endearments, which at last our parting forc'd us to break off.

I took but a very small Train along with me, compofed of fuch Servants as I had received from Theodates who had made Trial of their Fidelity, and believ'd that I might fafely trust them. I imbarqued aboard a Vessel which had been got ready by Theodates's Orders, and which was to make the shortest and securest cut into Asia. Having hoifed Sail, we began our Voyage very quietly; the Sea had never been more calm than at that time, but my Mind was far from enjoying fuch Tranquility, and our Ship was much less tossed with Waves, than my Heart was by my reftless, cruel Thoughts; the Absence of Berenice, and the Desolation of our Family, came both at once into my Mind, yet neither could find a Room there, without giving me equal matter of Affliczion. Alas, (faid I) perhaps at this very moment, Beremice, by the cruel Command of the King her Father, is compell'd to receive the Affection of Arfacomes. Alas, (continued I) perhaps this very Day Darius fights his latest Battel, and with it loses the remainder of his Dominions.

Dominions. O Gods, (cried I) must I leave Berenice, and abandon her to the Mercy of the Enemies of our House, and of my particular Enemies? O Gods, (faid I again) must Darius fall, with all that belong to him, without receiving Assistance from his own Son? I spent fome Days in this Agitation of my Thoughts; but in the end I was withdrawn from it by a cruel Encounter which hindred the Effect of all my Refolutions, and caused part of that Shame, which I am not able to blot 'Twas very unadvifely done of us to go by the way of Byzantium, and we were not informed that the Byzantians with the Governour Zopirio, and they of Pontus with their Governour Arimbas, had of late begun to make Excursions at Sea, and to use the Scythians that fell into their Hands with all manner of Acts of Hostility. In effect, there was no War declared between the Soythians and them, and 'twas only Covetousness that inspir'd Zopirio and his Brother Arimbas, with a Design of Piracy, robbing Passengers, taking Prisoners, and seeking means to inrich themselves by such shameful barbarous ways. I had the ill Fortune to be encountred by them, and when we had least thought of any such matter, we faw our felves affaulted by eight great Ships which furrounded us on every fide, and depriv'd us of all means to defend our felves; yet did I do as much as possibly I could, and both my Words and Example would have incourag'd those that were with me to make Resistance, but their Weakness dishearten'd them so, that 'twas impossible for me to make them take Arms against for great a number of Enemies. The Thracians came aboard us on every fide, and though I defended my felf with Courage enough, and laid some of the boldest of them at my Feet, I was so inviron'd, and so oppressed with multitude, that all my Resistance was to no purpose. They feiz'd upon me behind, threw me down and difarm'd me, and I think those savage Enemies, exasperated by the Death of their Companions, would have taken away my Life, but that they fear'd to displease him that commanded them, who believ'd he should get a considerable Booty by taking me. I was bound and carried before Arimbas, who commanded those Ships; he found some-

thing in my Face that oblig'd him to use me a little less cruelly than he intended, or than his custom was, and having look'd upon me with fome shew of Wonder; Either (faid he) thou lov'st thy Life but little, or else thou art the boldest of all Men living, in having dared to stand upon thy Defence alone against so great a number of Enemies. I never was thine Enemy that I know of, (answered I, without being daunted at his Words) and I am call'd by fuch pressing Commands of Honour, to Places whither thou stopp'st my Passage, that if thou art generous, thou without doubt wilt restore me to my Liberty. 'Tis not from Barbarians (replied Arimbas) that the Greeks need to learn Generosity; never hope for the Liberty thou demand'st, but believe 'tis no small Favour to let thee live, after thou hast so well deserv'd to die, for having kill'd my Men, and for having fo rashly made Opposition. I faw very well there was no thought of working upon him by a Sense of Honour, and fool prefently tried another way; I am not thy Prisoner in a fair War, (said I) but if my Liberty can be bought with Treasure, I promise thee so much, that thou hardly canst defire more, and I ingage my Honour with my Word, that if thou wilt free me, I'll fend thee a Ranfom that would be confiderable enough for one of the greatest Princes in the World. These Words which I spoke very imprudently, wrought a very different Effect from what I hoped, and were in part the Cause of my long Captivi-Arimbas believ'd either by my Words, or by fome other Tokens, that I was no ordinary Person, and upon that Belief proposing excessive Recompences to himself, he was gladder of his Prize, and more careful to keep me than before. These Treasures thou promisest me, (anfwered he) may regain thy Liberty, but hope not to obtain it upon thy Word, for thou shalt stay with us till thou procure thy Ranfom thou hast proposed. At these Words he commands them to unbind me, but he made me be carried into a Cabbin with Guards that suffer'd me not to stir out of it. The next Day we put into a Harbour of the Province whereof he was Governour for Alexander, and near unto a Town called Synopa, I was imprison'd in a Castle under a very strict Guard; they

left me fome of those Servants I had receiv'd from Theodates; the rest, and all they that were taken with us, were kept as Slaves. Do but judge, dear Brother, and you dear Friends, in what a Condition I was by a Captivity fo unseasonable, and so contrary to the Resolutions I had taken; truly I was even like to have died with Grief; and when I had in vain attempted many feveral ways to recover my Liberty, I was upon the very point of killing my felf with my own Hand. What, (faid I) shall I neither succour Darius, nor see the Princess Berenice? O Gods! if you would not suffer me to assist my Father, why did you not let me enjoy the sight of my Princess? and if you needs would have me to leave Berenice, why do you not permit me to serve Darius to the last drop of that Blood I owe him? Since I must not have both those Happinesses together, why will you not at least afford me the Consolation of one of them? Ah no, I fee you mean to overwhelm me equally with Grief and Shame, and not being fatisfied that I die with Sorrow for parting with my Princess, you will have to die also with, the Reproach of having feen our Empire loft, and our Family destroy'd without ever drawing Sword in their Defence. These were my ordinary Meditations, and in these cruel Thoughts I could find no manner of Consolatian. Either let Arimbas kill me (faid I to my Keepers) or let him fet me at Liberty; in the Condition of my Fortune, Captivity is worse to me than Death it felf, and I shall be less his Enemy, if he dispatch me out of the way, than if he keep me any longer. All these Words were to no purpose, and Arimbas fent me no other Answer, but that when he saw those Treasures for my Ransom, which I had made him hope for at my being taken, he would give me my Liberty, and not before. This cruel Obstinacy of Arimbas drove me into defpair; I had none about me but Scythian Servants, who could do me no Service with Darius, where they were not at all acquainted, and to whom also I was unwilling o Declare the Truth of my Birth. To difcover it to Arimbas was a great deal more unfit; he was both a Subject, and a Creature of Alexander's, and if he had known me to be Darius his Son, my Captivity

would certainly have been as long as my Life. In thefe Considerations, all I could do was to employ all my Courage to take a little Patience, and hope that the Gods, who had then declar'd themselves Enemies to our House, would mitigate their Anger, and lessen the Hatred they expressed against Darius his miserable Family. 'Twas in that Place, dear Friends, I lingred out my tedious Days, while you were fighting for my Interests, and 'twas in that Prison I saw a whole Year run out, which feem'd longer to me than all the rest of my Life.

O Darius, (cried I often) by what a strange Difafter art thou abandon'd by thy Son in thy cruel Misfortunes? Wretched Man that he is, he can give thee no manner of Assistance, but is reduced to serve thee only with his Wishes, while Oroundates fights without question by thy Side, and ingages himself in thy Miseries, with more Affection than he could in what most nearly concerned himself. O my dearest Brother, (continued I) why am I not with you now? and why can I not at least keep you Company in those Dangers you so nobly run into for my fake? From these Thoughts which my Duty inspired me with, I fell into those my Love fuggested, and out of the Grief which was caused in me by the former, into the Rage occasion'd by the latter.

But shall I never see you again, Berenice, (cried I, quite transported), and will not the Gods, (who for some Offences are exasperated against the House of Persia) be contented that I lose my Inheritance, that I lose my nearest Friends, that I lose the King my Father, and that I lose mine Honour with them, unless I lose Berenice also? I liv'd on this manner, buried in the Depth of my Sorrows, when by the Report of them that kept me, I receiv'd a most intolerable surcharge; They told me News of poor Darius, but alas, the saddest that yet had come unto mine Ear; I heard, that having march'd from Babylon with three hundred thousand fighting Men, he had given Alexander Battel near Arbella, with the same Success as in the two former ones, that he had lost the greatest part of his Men, and with them the Hope of maintaining

W

m

fh

tr

Si

maintaining his Dominions, being reduc'd to feek his Safety in a fad Retreat, with a very small Remnant of his Forces; that it was believ'd he had taken the way toward Media, but in so weak a Condition, that no Body thought he ever could be able to raise a sufficient Power to dispute the Empire of Asia any longer against Alexander. Oh, Brother, how infinitely did this woful News torment me, and how great need had I of all my Courage, to keep me from finking under so heavy an Affliction! O Darius, (cried I) why can I not be with thee in thy Flight at least, fince I could not accompany thee in the Battel? I would strive to comfort thee in thy Misfortunes, and not having been able to fight for the Confervation of thy Empire, I would fight at least for the Safety of thy Person. Then Brother, as all fatal Objects represented themselves to my Remembrance, I was afraid lest you should be in the Number of those whom Alexander's happy Destiny had caused to fall under the Macedonian Armies; and in this Thought, after having given you a Flood of Tears, I wished with all my Heart to have been in your Place, to have receiv'd your Wounds, and to have contributed to the Preservation of your Life, with the loss of mine own. I should never have done, if I should relate all my Discontents at large, but I'll shorten the Recital of them as much as possibly I can. A whole Year was already run out from the Day that I was taken, when both in the Face, and Actions of the Captain of the Castle, who was the chief Commander of those that had me in Custody, I perceiv'd an extraordinary Affection, and a very great Compassion of my Misfortunes. He naturally had a love to Virtue, and had relisted those Inclinations out of a Sense of his Duty to Arimbas; but in the end, having feen how unjustly he detain'd me, and having found fomething in my Person, which he thought worthy of his Affection, he refolv'd to make use of his Power for my Deliverance, believing he should not be very faulty in giving a Man his Liberty, from whom it had not been taken by any Right of War. With this Defign coming to me one Day when I was extremely dejected by the Remembrance of our last Losses, Sir, (said he to me) comfort your felf, your Captivity shall

shall not be much longer, and your Virtue has found a Person amongst us, who both can discern it, and will hazard himself to serve it. Tho's I was exceedingly surprized at this Discourse, I could not suspect that Man of any ill Design, and judging that my Condition could not be worse than it was already, I believ'd I ought not to neglect any way that might be for the recovering of my Liberty. O Criton, (answered I) how merciful you will be, if you use your Endeavours to help me, both Gods and Men will recompence your Goodness, and I am of such Quality, that I dare say your Condition will be better with me than with Arimbas.

Depend upon the Affurance I give you, (replied Criton) that you shall not be long a Prisoner, and trust me for the Management of the Business. I will trust you always (faid I) both with my Life and Liberty, and I protest to you, that I would not expose you to any Danger for their Preservation, if in the present State of my Affairs, my eternal Shame were not link'd to my Captivity. Criton would hold no longer Discourse with me at that time, for fear of giving some Suspicion of his Delign; but within a few Days after he effected it very happily, and having made those of my Guard drunk, whom he had least Confidence in, when they were fast alleep, he came with the rest into my Chamber in the dead of Night, and bringing Arms for me, and for the two Scythians that ferv'd me, he took the Keys of the Castle, and let us out without any Difficulty, then getting upon good Horses which he had caused to be held in a readiness about a hundred Paces from the Gate, he refolv'd to follow my Fortune, having by that Action lost all hope of Favour from Arinibas.

When I saw my self at Liberty, I selt all the Joy my sad Condition could be capable of, and receiv'd a sweet Consolation by the Hope I had that I should give my Father the last Assistance he could hope for from his Son in the downsal of his House. I promised Criton that I would not be ingrateful for the good Office he had done me, and that I would reward him so well for it, that he never should have Occasion to repent. We took our Journey toward Media, whither they said Darius was retreated,

and

D

II

W

is

n

y e

m

be

ga

110

for

St

cu

do

VO

ha

and

ror

Wil

Stif

Wit

and travelled all the remainder af that first Night with so much speed, that before break of Day, we were gotten far enough, not to fear falling any more into the Power of Arimbas; yet did we avoid the great Highways fo long as we were in the Province he commanded, but when once we were out of it, we rode with less Apprehension, and I for my part with some Hopes of seeing the Relicks of our defolated House again, and with an ardent Defire, either to dispute the Empire yet with Alexander, or to give up my Life to his prevailing Fortune. He shall die, (said I to my self) that unjust Conqueror, that wrongful Ufurper of our Dominions shall either fall, or kill Artaxerxes with that Hand, which has been the Destruction of all our Family. Perhaps he is not Immortal, tho' hitherto he have been Invincible, nor are we perhaps so utterly forsaken by the Gods, but that we may force a Victory out of his Hands, which the cowardly, effeminate Persians have so faintly disputed with him; doubtless thou wert valiant enough, poor Darius, to trample down that Enemy, if thou hadst commanded more generous Forces, and nothing but their want of Courage has made thee lose an Empire, which is not much to be lamented, fince it extended it felf over none but fuch mean spirited People. Perhaps there are yet some Corners of thy vast Territories, where thou mayst find Men that will shew themselves more truly to be Men, and 'tis with them Artaxerxes may possibly regain part of thy Losses, and blot out part of thy dishonour. This thought had hardly given me a little Comfort, when presently I fell into a Consideration of the State I then was in, and to my Confusion faw those ridiculous Hopes all vanish in a moment. Ah weak, abused Artaxerxes, (faid I again) with what fond Imaginations dost thou flatter thy felf? Thou thinkest not of the Revolution of thy Fortune, thou consider'st not that thou halt lost all, that thou hast no Country left to defend, and that thou hast no Men left to oppose that Conquefor, whom thy Father with innumerable Thousands, and with his whole Forces united was not able to refift; Stiffe, ah stiffe these vain Hopes, and limit them all within the Defign of either making Alexander's Person to

run some Hazard, or of burying thy felf in the Ruins of These were the Thoughts wherewith I was thy Family. tormented; but, O Gods! O Gods! they quickly yielded place to far more cruel ones, and scarce had I travelled three Days Journey, when I faw both my Expedition bounded, and my Defigns overthrown by the doleful News of poor Darius's Death; I heard that lamentable End, alas, and 'tis with Shame that I confess I heard it without dying. They told me, how that great and much to be deplored Prince was fall'n by the horrible Perfidioufness of his own Subjects, and had given up both Life and Empire to his Enemy. Altho' this fad Relation did not absolutely kill me, yet certainly it put me into a Condition little different from Death, and Criton with the rest that accompanied me saw me in such a Case, as made them believe they had unprofitably hazarded them-The Recital of those Swoonings I felves to ferve me. fell into at this fatal Narration, of my Sighs, of my Tears, and of my mournful Complaints, would but weary you, and be very difficult for me to make; all that Sorrow for the loss of a Father, who had most dearly lov'd me, whose Person was exceeding great and amiable; for that of a Mother who went a while before him, and who ended her Life in her Captivity; for that of an Empire, which might almost be call'd the Empire of the World, added to my Shame of having done nothing for them, of not having shed one drop of Blood for their Conservation, and of not having given them any of those Assistances which they received from the meanest of their Allies, can produce in the most tender Soul imprinted it felf so violently in mine, that it was like to have separated it from my Body; and I may well protest to you before all the Gods, that nothing but the Remembrance of Berenice kept me from my Grave, and hindred me from going then to feek them after their Death, whom I had so ignominiously abandoned during their Life. Thou now art free (faid I) glorious Arfaces, now thou art free, thou no longer hast any Father to assist, thou no longer hast any Country to defend, or to say better, thou no longer hast any Honour to preserve; all Things contribute now to thy Repose: But, O Gods! how much

were

ł

f

fi

u

B

sh

A

€a

m

So

tre

Da

mo

fpe.

Ιſ

I) :

For

Ang

Mer

my

and

at th

by t

by tl

shall

that

after

thro'

with

ful ar

King

Father

are ali

Punish

were the most cruel Deaths to be preferr'd before this Repose! and how much better had it been for thee to have been really flain in the Battle of Selena, than to have shamefully out-liv'd Darius, and to have seen the Ruin of thy House with so much Indisterency? What a horrible Reproach to thee is the Blood of fo many thoufand Men as lost their Lives in thy Quarrel? thou wert fighting against the Nomades, while the Persians fell under the Macedonian Arms, and thou wert fighting at Berenice's Feet, while thy Mother, thy Sisters, and all thy Family, lay fighing under the Chains of fortunate Alexander! O Shame, which all the Blood of Arfaces can never be able to wash out! O Baseness, which all my Love to Berenice can never be able to excuse! I tormented my felf on this manner in my Bed, whither my Sorrow had confin'd me, and where my Grief was fo extremely violent, that it had put me into a Fever for many

Days.

1

e

d

S

1-

I

y

it

11

e

at

re

)-

d

ly

ft

n-

to

:ft

n-

ed

m

fe.

ou

ou

er,

gs

ich

ere

After I had deplored my Misfortunes in the most mournful Terms my Mifery could fuggest, and that I had fpent some Days in Lamentations, I began to think what I should resolve to do with my self: Shall I not go (said I) and find out Alexander in the midst of his victorious Forces, which triumph over our Difasters? and since the Anger of the Gods has fo decreed that I no longer have Men to give him Battel, shall I not go and execute with my Hand alone, what the Weakness of my Condition, and the Loss of our Dominions will not suffer me to do at the Head of an Army! Since I cannot revenge Darius by the Blood of the Macedonians, shall I not revenge him by the Blood of Alexander? and if I die in the Attempt, shall I not bear my Friends Company with the least Shame that I can possibly undergo? Shall I not run (faid I again) after that Parricide Bessus? and shall I not make my way thro' the midst of those faithless Monsters that take part with him, to pierce with a thousand Wounds the ingrateful and disloyal Heart of that horrible Murderer of his King; Is not that the first Satisfaction I owe unto my Father's Ghost? and can I, while Bessus and Narbazanes are alive, have other Thoughts than those of the rigorous Punishments that are due to their perfidious Treason?

I

t

I

t

K

0

h

tl

m

ag

tr

th

M

no

ha

ry

Ro

de

Scy

Br

wi

wh

Sor

Th

mài

and

'tw

lear

tem

ver

labo

cant

to d

Loff

fay

pires

But, O Gods! (concluded I) shall I never see Berenice more? and if (as it is very probable) I fall in one of these Enterprizes, shall I die without giving my Princess the last Assurances of my Fidelity? Shall I have lost my nearest Friends, my Country, my Reputation, shall I have lost all for her unprofitably? Having proposed no other Fruit, no other Consolation to my felf for so many Misfortunes but that alone, shall I lose it also with the rest? and shall I have oblig'd that lovely Princess to give me Marks of an Affection, which ought to be more dear to me than the Possession of all Asia, only to abandon her for ever? This last Thought put me into a Perplexity, which for a long time made me incapable of taking any Refolutions, and represented Motives to me which were powerful enough to withdraw me from those I had proposed before. Alexander (said I) is a generous Enemy, who has profecuted the Ruin of thy House only by glorious Ways, and dost thou think of murdering him shamefully, who openly, and at the Sword's point, makes himself Master of the whole Eearth by his Valour alone? Yes, of murdering him, for unless thou march against him by an open War, thou canst not procure any Satisfaction from his fingle Person but by an Assassination; thou canst not hope for an equal Combate with him, for though he should be so generous as to grant it to thy Quality, and to thy just Resentments, he never will be able to make those that are about him confent to it, amongst whom there are many thousands that would fave him from that Danger by hazarding themselves. Thou canst not therefore execute thy Vengeance by any Means but such as are most ignominious, and perhaps that without effecting it, thou shalt die in a Design which will be most unworthy of the Memory of Darius's Son, and which will blast it with a perpetual Infamy.

If thou run after those Parricides, 'tis true, that against them all ways of Revenge are justifiable, but they are Things too mean for Artaxerxes, and the Destiny of Bessus, and of Nabarzanes, would be too glorious, if they should end their reproachful Days by the Hand of their King's Son. Those Monsters ought to end their Lives in Tor-

ments,

7

I

0

y

e.

e

lr

er

ly

re

0-

y,

0-

m

nt,

2-

ou

ot

by

m-

as

ts,

im

ids

ing

en-

us,

in

ory

ual

inst

are

Tus,

uld

ng's

or-

ments, and it concerns Alexander to profecute them, and with their Blood to wash away the stain wherewith they have blemish'd his Reputation. Rather return into Scythia, where thou hast left thy utmost Hopes, and where thou hast left thy very Soul; forget the Greatness of thy Birth, to ferve thy Love, and the Necessity of thy Affairs, and employ whatfoever the Gods have given thee that is confiderable, to make thy felf confider'd by the King of Scythia; when thou shalt have done him Services of the Nature of those Darius receiv'd from Oroondates, he'll be the most ingrateful of all Men living if he refuse thee his Assistance, and if he give thee not an Army to march against that Enemy of the whole Earth, and against that infatiable Conqueror, who quickly will pass from our Territories into his. Perhaps thy Services, and the Remembrance of our Miseries, will raze out of his Mind the Hatred he bears thy Family, and that he will not disdain thee for his Son-in-Law, when thou shalt have gain'd his Affection fo far as to venture the Discovery of thy true Quality. He, without doubt, is of a Royal Mind as well as of a Royal Birth; and if my dear Oroundates be alive, if the Gods bring him back into Scythia, thou maist hope for all Things from that dearest Brother, and uniting thy felf with him, whose Interests will always be inseparable from thine, thou with the whole Forces of Scythia mailt oppose, and like a King's Son oppose that pitiless Destroyer of the House of Persia. Thou at the Head of those thy dear Brother's Armies mailt demand Reparation of the Injuries he has done thee; and if it please the Gods thou fall in those Occasions, 'twill at least be with more Glory, than if thou shouldst leave thy Life among the Javelins of his Guards, in attempting to Itab him in his Bed.

This way without question thou shalt labour for recovery of thy Reputation, and, which is more, thou shalt labour for it in seeing Berenice again, without whom thou canst not live, and without whom thou art not permitted to die; thou at her seet maist find Consolation for all thy Losses, and she will tell thee nothing but Truth, if she say her Assection is to be preferr'd before all the Empires that were Darius's. Fear not to appear yet before

her.

her, she is too generous and too worthy a Sister of Oro. ondates, to regard the fall of thy House, and to look upon him as an exil'd Prince, and as a Prince divested of all his Inheritance, whom at our last being together she confider'd as the future Monarch of all Afia; thy Miferies will rather work Compassion in her, than any Contempt of thy Person, and thou wert unworthy of the Marks thou hast received of her Assection, if thou couldst suspect her to be of fo base a Humour, and of a Humour so different from her Brother's.

In these last Thoughts I found a great deal of Comfort, and after I had disputed yet three or four Days about the Choice of which Resolution I should take, I in the end fuffer'd my Mind to be over-swayed by these last Considerations, or to speak more truly, I let my felf be guided by my Love, which, making all other Designs odious to me, thew'd me Facility and Advantage only in that which was subservient to it, and which it had propound-'Twas therefore by the Power it had over me, that I was won to those Probabilities I have mention'd to you, and that I refolved to return into Scythia. Criton, who had totally given me his Affection, and to whom I already bore a very great one, would not forfake me; besides him, I took only the two Scythians that were with me in Prison, he having before dismissed the Guards that had affifted in my. Deliverance, whom we rewarded as well as we were able at that time. We departed from the Town where I had staid ever since the hearing of that fatal News, and took our Journey towards Scythia, by a very different Way from that I came, for fear of falling again into the Power of Arimbas. I believ'd we might pass more securely thro' Hyrcania, and thro' the Country of the Massagetes, and that was the Road we went, without committing our felves to that inconstant Element, upon which I had fallen into that cruel Captivity, which made the greatest part of all my Discontents. We met no Obstacle in our Journey; and tho' I began to trutt Criton very much, yet would I not let him know me to be other than one Arfaces a Battrian, who by his good Fortune had merited the Affection of the King of Scythia, and who in that Country might be able to fettle him in being

2

u

C

In

lis

ric

the

Co

he

me

qui

and

wit

pret

her,

able fires

the

cefs's

fpeak

himfe

but 3

his I

thers,

have 1

Am

Matir

ted his

pruder

aged

he.

a much better Condition than that he had liv'd in under Arimbas. 'Twas not to him alone that I meant to be fo referv'd, for I refolv'd never any more to take upon me the Name of Artaxerxes, so peculiar to the Kings and Princes of Persia, vill I had recovered Hopes of rising again to the Throne of Darius. And indeed I was then inform'd, that the Traitor Beffus had already usurp'd it. and that he made himself be honour'd as a King in Battria, under the Name of Artaxerxes.

When we had passed the Araxis, crossed through the Country of the Massagetes, and gone over the Mount Imaus, we entred into the Province of the Isledons, and with great many Days Journeys drew near to the Metropolis City of all Scythia. Being come within two Days riding of it, and meeting Passengers upon the Way from thence, I enquired of them what News there was at Court, and trembled as I ask'd the Question, for fear of hearing what would be unpleasing, or rather mortal to me. Sir, (answered one of them) all Things are very quiet at Court; Arfacomes has still his former Authority, and the King, fearing to displease the Queen his Wife, with whom he still is passionately in Love, suffers him to pretend to the Princess Berenice, or rather to persecute her, that generous Princess, not having hitherto been able to bend her felf to any compliance with his Defires, and making loud Complaints, because he tolerates the Presumption of his Subject; they are the Princess's own Words, for as for our parts we dare not to speak of that Business in those Terms, he having made himself so potent, that there are none now in Scythia but Slaves to the Greatness of his Fortune. Yet hath his Example been like to cause the Destruction of others, who knowing their Quality to be equal to his, have thought they might raise their Pretentions as high as ne.

Amongst them, Cydaris Prince of the Tauroscythians and de trust Agatirstans, being fallen in love with the Princess, suffere to ted himself to be so blind with his Passion, that he improdudently declar'd it to the King, either being encouthis, aged by his Indulgence to that of Arsacomes, or else not m in being able to refift the Violence of his own. The King

was

-

n

11

es

pt

KS

a fo

rt,

he

nd le-

ed

to

hat

nd-

hat

to

tons m I

ne;

rith hat

d as

rom

that

by 2 ling

ight

ntry

ith-

ent, hich

met

t

I

H

h

I

M

co fol

ou

the

hea

by wh

fto

Spo

the

aga

par

was fo displeased at such a Motion, that he could not dissemble his Resentment of it, and answer'd Cydaris with Words fo full of Sharpness and Contempt, that he not being able to endure them, forgot the Respect he ow'd the King, and reply'd in very infolent and injurious Terms; whereat he being highly offended, caused him to be feiz'd on, and put into a Dungeon, nor had he spared his Life but at the request of the Queen, and of the 'Tis not above Princess her self who interceded for it. a Week fince he came out of Prison; but when he was fet at liberty, he was commanded to leave the Court for ever, and from that time he has never been feen at Ife. don. This Business has made such a Noise at Court, that there is now no talk of any thing elfe, and this is the freshest and most considerable News that I can tell you thence. I found a marvellous Consolation in this Dif. course, and making no great Account of the Business of Cydaris, I was so extremely fatisfied to hear of my Princess's Perseverance in despising Argacomes's Affection. I went on my Journey the Remainder of that Day, and the next following, before the Sun had run out half his Courfe, I from a Hill discover'd the highest Towers of that most precious City, where I had lest the better part of my Soul with Berenice. Then I began to feel Motions of Passion which seem'd to have forfaken me for ever, methought I breath'd a sweeter Air than I was wont, and Fortune, who by fuch fad Effects had declard her felf so cruel an Enemy to our House, was contented at that time to change her Countenance in favour of me, and not being able to restore me what she had taken away, was willing to fweeten my Sorrows with the most gentle Usage I could receive from her. It was but july that he who had lost so much, should by her Assistance keep the only Thing he had left, and the only Thing which he preferred before all those she had unjustly rob bed him of.

I was within two hundred Furlongs of Isedon, when at the entrance into a Wood which I was to pass thro, I heard the Sound of many Instruments usual for the Chace; and seeing divers Men pass by at that time, learned from them that the King was hunting in that Wood

not

vith

not

w'd

ious

n to

ared

the

ove

was

for

Ise-

that

the

you

Dif.

s of

rin-

. 1

and

s of

part

Mo-

for

was ar'd

ent-

ir of

ken

most just,

ance

hing

rob-

hen

10

the

e, I

000

Wood, and that he was accompanied by the Queen and the Princess Berenice, who, because it was a very fair Day, had been desirous to take their part of that Diverfion. At this News my Heart leapt within me, not being able to hear speak of my Princess without an inward Disturbance, nor to prepare my felf for that Sight without most passionate Motions: Yet did I doubt whether I should go to the King while he was abroad there at his sport, or whether, as I before intended, I should go unknown to Theodates's House, to pay my first visit to that generous Friend, and learn of him upon what Terms I flood in Court, and whether I might shew my self there with the Safety as before. At last I should have followed that Refolution, and I was going to profecute my Journey directly toward the Town, when I was put beside it by a very remarkable Accident; I saw a Man all bloody come galloping full speed toward me, and when he was within twenty Paces of us, he fell from his Horse, with all the signs of a Man very near his End; I ran to give him some Assistance, but scarce had I begun to speak to him, when casting his Eyes upon us, Ah! (cried he) lose no time here about me, for I am but a dead Man, but if you be Scythians, or Noble-minded Men, make halte to succour the King, who is yonder like to be murdered.

No fooner had I heard these Words, but leaving that Man to the Care of one of mine, I ran as swiftly as I could the same Way that we had seen him come; Criton followed me with the same speed, and the two Scythians, having left that dying Man, would not let me go with-Before I had rode five or fix hundred Paces there was no more need of a Guide, and the Cries I heard directed me sufficiently to the Place; I sought it by the Noise among the Trees, and had not gone far, when coming to a part of the Wood where the Trees flood very thin, I was Witness of a bloody and pitiful Spectacle; I saw a small Number of Men, who, inclosing the Prince in the midst of them, defended themselves against twice as many with a most invincible Courage; they had slain divers of their Enemies, but the greater part of their Companions lay already gasping on the Vol. IV.

d

b

R

to

C

m

re

h

th

H

fe

ha

Ground, and they that remained endeavoured but in vain to prolong their Destiny, and to lend their King an Assistance, which had been utterly unprofitable if it had not given us leisure to come up to his Relief. He had his Sword in his Hand, wherewith he defended himself with a great deal of Courage, but his Servants put themselves between him and Danger, as likewise did those of Arfacomes and Theodates, who being unarm'd as well as the King, fought very valiantly to fave his Life. I had hardly cast mine Eyes upon that Combate, when knowing the Party I ought to take, I fell in among the Enemies with a Fury which proceeded from a quite different Cause than the little Valour the Gods had given me; And indeed it produced Effects infinitely above my Forces, and at my first coming into the Fight I scarce gave any Blow that made not a mortal Wound; they that were with me seconded me with so much Courage, that the half vanquished Scythians recovered Spirit by their Example, and began to make their Enemies doubt of the issue of the Combate. It quickly grew more equal than it was at our arrival, and the Number of those murderous Traitors was in a short time leffened by the Death of some of the forwardest amongst them.

Their Head, who perceived that Change, would have animated them by his Voice, and by his Example, but he was able to do no great matter, and I having known him by many Tokens, fought him in the midst of his Men, and in spite of all the Obstacles wherewith they opposed my Passage, I got to him, and to his Missortune my Sword met fo luckily with a Place unguarded by his Arms, that at the first thrust it ran clear through his Body, and made him tumble dead amongst the Horses His fall did so discourage those of his Party, that they no longer thought of any thing but defending themfelves, and that they did so ill, that the Victory over them was not difficult; for Arsacomes and Theodates, tho' they were wounded, closing up to me, with Shields wherewith they defended themselves for want of other Arms, and being feconded by all the Scythians, in whom that Alteration had wrought a marvellous Confidence, we forc'd them in the end to quit the Field, and to feek for that Safety by Flight, which they no longer could

find by their Resistance.

n d.

d

It d

d.

y

10 ;

1-

V

r

re

le.

n

is

r-

d

h

es

at

n-

er

0

ds

er

m

ce,

WC

I then turn'd me about toward the King, uncertain whether I should prosecute our Victory, or run to him; but he put me quckly out of that Irrefolution, by crying, Valiant Man, you yet have conquered but in part, and unless you also save the Queen and Princess, you have done nothing for my Safety. These Words went so near to me, that I felt my Strength almost redoubled by them, and feeing that the King himfelf ran toward the Place where he defired we should succour those dear Persons, I cast my Eye upon the ablest of those Horses that walk'd about us without their Riders, and feeling my own begin to fail, as well thro' Weariness, as some Wounds he had receiv'd, I alighted hastily, and leaping upon the other, ran with fuch speed after the King, that I had quickly over-taken him. My Love guided me fo favourably, that I foon discover'd the Chariot, about which there had been a flout and bloody Combate; all they of the Guard were flain at the Boots of it, not having abandon'd their Princesses but with their Lives, and those barbarous Enemies were pulling them violently out of the Chariot. O Gods! how infinitely did Rage transport me, when I faw my Princess in the Power of a Man, who, carrying her away in spite of her Cries and her Relistances, would have delivered her into the Arms of another that was very well arm'd and bravely mounted; certainly all the Words in the World are not sufficient to represent my Fury, and I was so animated by that Sight, that all the Enemies Forces were not able to relist me. I flew most impetuously at those two Men, but having my Sword up to strike at him that held my Princess, the fear I had of wounding her made me withhold my Blow, and turning towards him that was ready to receive her, I brought down my Sword fo forcibly upon his Arms, which he had stretched forth towards her, that they fell both together from his Body to the Ground: His Companion, feeing him receive that stroak, and fearing fuch another, quitted the Princess, but scarce had he disburthen'd himself of that glorious Weight, F 2

ġ

he

te

di

11

re

n

C

when he was also disburthen'd of his Head, which with a back Blow I made Cask and all to roul between the Chariot Wheels. After this Execution, I fell in among the rest with a Success but little different, while the King coming to join with us, as also Arsacomes, and all the Scythians that were lest of the former Fight, brought Terror to those Villains, already half deseated by the Death of their Leaders, and by the Loss of their Companions. They no longer made any considerable Resistance, and very sew of them escaped our just Reseatments.

As foon as we had no more Enemies to fight withal, I turned to that illustrious Company, all stained with Blood, and in an Equipage which, (as my Princess was pleased to say) for all it was terrible, had something in it not unpleasing to her; I consulted a while with Love and Decency, whether I should run first to the King, or to my Princess; but Love, tho' the more powerful, was content for its own Interest to yield to Decency, and found its Advantage more in concealing, than in declaring it self so publickly. Scarce had I turn'd my Horse to go to the King, when I saw him come forward to meet me, with all that were about him: 'Whosoever' thou art, (cried he) O our valiant Protector, 'tis to you

we owe our Lives, and you have won them to your

felf with so matchless a Valour, and so great a Genero-

fity, that the' you should be born our Subject, you

ought to be the Master of them for ever.'

Instead of answering these Words, I leap'd from my Horse, and cast my self at the King's Feet so suddenly, that he could not possibly hinder me, and had no sooner pull'd off my Cask but my Face was known by the King and the whole Company: The King was so astonish'd, that he went back a step or two, and then presently coming to me again with open Arms, O Arsaces, (cried he) O Arsaces, and without saying any thing more at that time, he embraced me with such Affection, that I easily saw my Absence had abated nothing of that he formerly had honour'd me withal. Berenice hath since confessed to me, that she was sain to use a very violent Constraint upon her self, in that sudden Surprize, and that by my

he

ng

he

nd

ht,

ed

eir

ole

e-

al,

th

as

111

re

r

S

d

good Fortune, I had part enough in her Favour to give her Motions of Joy in that Encounter, which it was very hard for her to dissemble; yet did she smother it with much ado, and following the Queen's Example, she contented her self with testifying her acknowledgments in the same manner.

But scarce was I got free of the King, when Theodates, making his Passage through all the rest, came to give me, and to receive Embraces, which shew'd the Company the Nearness of that Friendship wherewith we were link'd together. Arfacomes, who as well as the rest, was obliged to me for his own Safety, and for the Queen his Sifters, forced his Inclinations that he might not appear ingrateful; and when the King had allow'd every Body liberty to welcome me, he came to me again himself, and reiterating his Favours; It was impossible (said he) by the Miracles you had done for our Preservation, that you should be other than Arfaces, or else some God; such prodigious Esfects of Valour can find no Example, but in what you have done for us already; yet fince we have destined to owe our Lives to some Body, I praise the Gods that 'tis to my dear 'Arfaces, to whom we may be indebted for them without Shame or Trouble.

I had been filent during all the King's obliging Words and Endearments, but as foon as it was time for me to speak, 'Sir, (said I) your Majesty sets too high a Value upon an Action, which I was too powerfully engaged to do, both by the Remembrance of your Favours, and by the Consideration of my Honour; I were much to blame if I should think I had done any thing in the Preservation of your Majesty's Life, 'tis to your own ' Valour you owe it, and to the Gods to whom it is too dear to let it be lost; and if they were pleased I should be fo happy as to be one among your Servants for the defeating of your Enemies, 'tis only I that have the whole Obligation to them, as for the most glorious Favour they can ever do me. Forbear (replied the King) to rob Arfaces of what is due to him alone, we should not now have been alive but for your Assistance, and I find as much Satisfaction in avowing it, as I should

do Shame if I neglected Obligations of this Nature; I will acknowledge them with all my Affection, and with all my Power, and if ever the King of Scythia be ingrateful toward Arfaces, I would have him pass thro' the whole World for the most unworthy Man upon Earth.' The King accompanied these Words with many others to the same purpose; and after all the Company had seconded him, both in his Kindnesses and Praises, he commanded the dead Bodies to be view'd, to the end they might see if they could discover who they were that had been his Enemies.

Among the first whose Faces they look'd upon, there were found fome whom they knew to have belong'd to Cydaris, and the King himfelf being come close to him whose Arms I had cut off, while he unworthily stretched them forth to take my Princess, knew him to be Bandamis the Brother of that Parricide : He was not yet quite dead, and as foon as he perceiv'd the King to be near him, he called together the remainder of his Forces, and preventing the Questions that were going to be ask'd him; 'If Cydaris be flain (faid he) I keep him Company without Trouble, and die willingly for him, as he does for Berenice, and for the Reparation of his Honour. He to punish the Affront that had been done to him would have kill'd a King that had used him unworthily, and to content his Passion he would have carried away the Princess; I served him in this last Defign, while he was attempting the former: We have vet another Brother who will revenge our Death, if he have any Courage, and if he be so base as to sit down with it, he deserves that you should pour forth all those Resentments upon him which you have conceived against us.'

Bandamis ended his Life with these Words, and the King, who from the beginning had imagin'd the Truth of this Adventure, could not but admire the Resolution of those desperate Wretches. Cydaris's Body was found amongst those of his Party, and the Princess expressed a great deal of Trouble for having been the Cause, tho innocently, of the Death of so many Men, and of the Danger her Father had been in. In the mean time, we

th

al

f

were inviron'd by a Throng of those whom the Noise of this Accident had drawn from Isedon, and one may truly fay, the whole Town was almost empty from the very moment that News came thither; all the People came and cast themselves at the King's Feet with Tears of Joy, and by his Command they all came afterward to prostrate themselves before me, and to do me Honours as a Man fent by the Gods, or as the protecting Angel of Scythia. When many Things had passed, which I am not able to tell you by reason of their Length and Confusion, we took our Way toward the City, and all the while we were going, the King did nothing but embrace me, and ask me the Particularities of my Journey. I answered those Questions as I had before resolved to do, and tho' the Remembrance of our ruin'd Family could not come into my Mind, without drawing Sighs from me, I diffembled my Griefs as well as possibly I could, and attributed my long Absence to the Captivity in which I was detained by Arimbas. Yet was not the King fo wholly taken up with me, but that he took Care of Arfacomes, who was wounded in two Places; my dear Theodates also had some Hurts, but none that were at all dangerous. All the time I had free during the Way, I spent with him, to whom in a few Words I gave an Account of the deplorable Success of my Journey. As I could not make him that Recital without Tears, fo neither could he hear it without shedding some, and he solemnized our Misfortunes with all the Signs of Grief I could demand from a true and perfect Friend. I durst not make my Addresses to my Princess in the Queen's Presence, fearing that Company should observe Alterations in my Countenance, which might give some Notice of my Passion. As foon as we were come to the City, we found all the People that were left in it in the Streets, coming to meet the King, and presently they began to make Bonfires in every Place, and to offer Sacrifices and Thanksgiving for his Safety in all the Temples. The King would needs have a Lodging appointed for me in his Palace, but for the remainder of that Day I retir'd to Theodates's House, to fatisfy the Desire I had to embrace him at liberty, to finish the Account I had begun to give him of my Journey,

fo

Ir

re

0

e

S

to

t]

d

te

11

tì

fi

e:

n

I

b

W

K

21

G

m

m

po

ki

P

th

ti

and to receive particular Information of all Passages concerning my Princess, and how I stood in her Favour at that time. He satisfied my Curiosity to the full; and affur'd me, that during my Absence, he had not found the least Change in her Affection. 'Tis true, Sir, (faid he) she complain'd often of your want of Care to let her hear from you, and often testified to me, but with an extraordinary Trouble, how much the fear'd you had torgotten her. I put her out of those Apprehensions as well as possibly I could, but at last I should have had much ado to find Reasons to justify you, if she had not heard of the lamentable End of the King your Father, and of the total Ruin of your House. How deeply was the concern'd in that woful Story, and how many Tears did she bestow, both on the Misfortunes of Darius, and on the Fears of your being perish'd with him! Ah! would it had pleased the Gods I had, (cried 1) not being able to hear of that Discourse without being asham'd, and transported; but within a while after I repented my felf, and believing that Wish offended my Princess, No, (said I again) I ought not to desire Death, since I ought to live for Berenice; nor can I, without offending her, attempt or desire any Thing against a Life whereof I have referv'd no Power to my felf. After these Words, I lent my Attention again to the advantageous Report he made me of my Princess's Remembrance; but I was not a little aftonished, when after that, he told me News of Prince Oroundates. Sir, (faid he) the King, fince you went away, has heard part of his Son's Adventures, he knows the Abode he made with the King your Father, his Love to the Princess your Sister, and the most remarkable Accidents that have befallen him fince his Departure. He got this Intelligence by some Spies he kept long in Persia, and shew'd most violent Resentments at the News, but his Anger was raised to the utmost height, when he learn'd, that he had fent to make Levies upon the Frontiers of this Kingdom, and that with them he had fought in the last Battel. He protested publickly that he would not pardon him those Infidelities, so it was he call'd the Prince's Actions; and I think that the Queen, who upon the Incertainty of his Life, was already forming

n-

at

10

id

er

in id

ad

ot

r,

rs

ld

y

r,

I

e

t

15

t

t

n

e

Y

forming Pretentions for her Children, if the Gods should give her any, did not dissuade him from that Resolution. In this Discourse of Theodates, I found both matter of Joy and of Affliction; for as I with much Contentment receiv'd some Assurances of my dear Brother's Life, and of the Affection which he still preserv'd unto our Family, even in its latest Miseries, so did I with a great deal of Sorrow learn, that the King persisted still in his Hatred to us, and forefaw the Difficulties it would produce in the Reconciliation I fo earnestly defired. Then Theodates entertain'd me with Arfacomes's Persecutions, abetted by the Queen's Authority, who making that ill Use of the King's Passion to her, assisted her Brother openly in that Delign, but with fo little Success in folliciting the Princess, that it did nothing but increase the Averfion which she had already to Arfacomes, and which she express'd to him upon all Occasions. After this long Conversation, I let Theodates take his Rest by reason of his Wounds; and having passed the Night on this manner, and Impatiency on my part, which is not easy for me to represent, I was no sooner up in the Morning, but I had a mind to go to the Palace there to watch some Opportunity of feeing and discoursing with my Princess. Theodates, who knew how necessary he should be to me in that Business, would needs accompany me thither for all his Wounds, which as light as they were, might have been sufficient to have kept him a few Days in Bed. Fortune was as favourable to me as I could defire, for I was hardly upon the Stairs, when Cyllenia, who staid for me at that Passage, seigning some Occasion to talk with Theodates, told him, that when I had waited upon the King and Queen, the Princess would expect me without any other Company but her, in the same Arbour of the Garden, where I had given her the first Knowledge of my true Name and Quality. Theodates having deliver'd me this Command, I strove to make my Visits as short as possibly I could; scarce had I receiv'd the King's first kind Salutes, when he fell into the Discourse of the Prince his Son : Would you believe, (faid he) Arfaces, that that Son to whom I have born so tender an Affection, and in whom, upon very false Appearances, I had grounded

ti

h

u

II

r

m

e

ri

ir

to

ta

lo

de

1,

in

th

pr H

grounded all my Hopes, would have abandon'd me in my most pressing Affairs, only to go over to my Enemies Party? That he should have fought against us with his own Hand, in a Battel where I was in Person? That he should have sued to Darius's Daughter by base Ways, and fuch as are unworthy of his Quality? and that he should have been so insolent as to raise Forces in my Dominions in favour of my mortal Enemy? Sir, (answered 1) these Faults indeed would be very great, if your Majesty did not alledge an Excuse for them your self, and if you knew not very well that Love is able to produce much stranger Effects. There is nothing but Love without question that can excuse the Prince your Son in what he has done against you; but mere Generosity was enough to move him to affift Darius against Alexander, and your Majesty may very well pardon him, if he in favour of a poor oppressed Prince, made use of some of your Forces against the Enemy of the whole World. Alexander is more dreadful to all Kings than Darius was; for, after having made himself Master of all those Territories that were his, he will certainly invade yours, and labour to extend his Dominion over all the Earth.

I know very well (replied the King) that you are noble and generous, but Orondates is not the less faulty because you have the Goodness to excuse, and he by his Deportments has rendred himself unworthy of the Care you take for his Justification. I thought it not best to perfift in opposing the first brunt of the King's Displeafure, hoping that Time would have more Power to qualify it than all the Reasons I could have alledg'd; and therefore I said no more, but went to wait upon the Queen, who receiv'd me with great Civilities and Testimonies of acknowledgment for what I had done for her, and for her Brother; and when I was come out of the Chamber, I got loofe from all those that accompanied us, and with no Body but Theodates went down into the Garden, where I was expected by my most adored Princess. I will not stand to represent the Effects which the Hope of fo near a Happiness produc'd in me, nor my Impatiency while I was going thro' the Alleys which lead me

in

es

is

ne

S,

e

d

d

e

1-

t

S

n

to that Arbour where all my Wealth was treasur'd up-You shall only know that I came thither, and that I found my Princess there according to her Promise, having no Body with her but Cyllenia; you may imagine, that the first Thing I did was to cast my self at her Feet, and that the Transport of my Passion tied my Tongue too fast to afford me the Liberty to speak for a long while. My Princess broke Silence first, and constrain'd me to rise and to fit down by her. The Gods be praised (said she with Tears, which a generous Compassion drew from her fair Eyes) the Gods be praised, fince after so many Fears, and so many mortal Apprehensions, they suffer me again to behold the dearest Remainders of Darius's Family; I wish I were able with the better part of my Blood to bring them back again from the Grave, whom the Wrath of Heaven hath taken away, and whose Loss (perhaps) hath not cost me fewer Tears than the Princesses your Sisters; but since I can do nothing for them but make unprofitable Wishes, I receive my dear Arsaces with as much Thankfulness as I owe to those Powers that have restored him to me, and in his Person alone, I, without murmuring, limit all the Pretentions I had to the greatest Prince of all the World.

My Princess brought forth these Words with so sweet an Air, and so full of Compassion, that they wrought an extraordinary Tenderness in me, and the in those glorious Moments, my sad Remembrances were not able to interrupt my Felicity, I could not forbear with my Sighs to accompany those Tears that Pity made her shed, and taking the liberty to fix my Lips upon one of her fair Hands; I have lost nothing, Madam, (said I) I have lost nothing, since Fortune, in depriving me of all that depended upon her, has not been able to rob me of what I, without Comparison, prefer before all she could possibly give me.

'Tis true that Darius and the Queen my Mother, are in their Graves; that my Sisters are Alexanders Captives; that my Father's Dominions are in the Power of our Enemies; and that he, who at his Departure was able to protest to you that you were ferv'd by a Prince who was Heir to a considerable Empire, cannot now appear before

he

ri

m

ar

10

to

F

he

th

co

fo

ol

b

li

ינ

b

R

AP

it

C

T

tl

L

n

T

0

ra

fo

h

b

you as other than as a Prince dispossessed of his Inheritance, and as a Prince to whom Fortune hath lest nothing but his Sword and his Ambition; but how light are all these Losses, since they have not been able to make me lose the Assections of my divinest Princess, and how little ought I to bewail those Empires the Gods have taken from me, if I consider what your Goodness has conserved for me?

Yes, Madam, 'tis to your Goodness alone that I am indebted for my Life and Fortune; and any other Body less good, and less generous than your self, would not have look'd upon this Change of my Condition, without a Change in her own Thoughts; nor have received this miserable Exile, as a Prince, who yet may cherish his former glorious Hopes. I consider you a great deal more by your Virtue, (replied the Princess) and by the Qualities of your Person, than by the Extent of those Empires, which heretofore were the King your Father's; and if the Knowledge of your Birth was necessary to make me approve of your Assection, that is not lost with your Dominions, nor has Fortune depriv'd you of any Thing that made me love you.

That Change would be too base to stick one Minute in my Conceit, or to be so much as dreamt of by Orondates's Sister; therefore never make any Reslection upon a Thought that offends me, and it in my Perseverance, you can find any matter of Consolation, believe that you shall for ever have Reason to be comforted; and that I to my Grave will preserve those Inclinations, which only Artaxerxes's Person, and not the Consideration of his Kingdoms, has introduc'd into my Heart. I was so sweetly charm'd with these obliging Words, that they in an instant made me lose the Remembrance of my Missortunes, and salling once again at my Princess's Feet, I embraced her Knees, with Raptures which cannot be expressed but

in the like Occasions.

Let Alexander triumph over our Patrimony, (said I) let him stretch his Dominions over all Asia, nay, over all the Earth if he will, how little do I esteem his Conquests, how lightly do I value his Fortune, in comparison of mine, and how freely do I give up to him all that

he

ri-

ng

all

me

tle

en

ed

n-

Is

ve

2

21

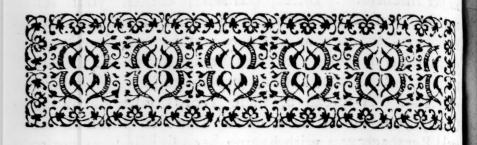
is

e

1-

h

he has unjustly taken from me, provided he leave me but Berenice? my Condition is a thousand times more glorious at her Feet, than upon that Throne from whence mine Enemies have cast me; and if I ever take up Arms against them, it shall be only to Revenge my Friends, and to make my felf more worthy of my Princes's Affec-I should have said more, if Berenice, forcing me once again to rife, had not interrupted me, to put me upon that Discourse of what I had done the Day before for her Deliverance, and for the Safety of the King her Father. She extoll'd that Action in Terms full of a great Acknowledgment; and feeing she was going to enlarge her self in Thanks, Cease, Madam, (said I) cease to thank Arfaces, for what he did for Arfaces; 'Tis for Arfacomes to return me some few Thanks for his Safety, 'tis for Stratonice, and for the King to preserve some Memory of it, but Berenice is no way ingag'd to me, fave only by that part which her Goodness makes her take in my Interests, for what I have done to my own Advantage. 'Twas only from Arfaces, that Cydaris would have stolen away Berenice, and fince that the approves my Hopes, 'tis only for Arfaces that I have rescued her. That unworthy Rival ought not to have died by any other Hand but mine, and if my Princess ought to keep any other Remembrance of this Adventure, 'tis only that she faw Arfaces do better than Arfacomes, for the Defence of his Pretensions, and for the Safety of the King her Father; it would have been one of the most sensible Vexations I could have fuffer'd (faid the Princess) if the Succour we receiv'd from you had come from the Hand of Arfacomes. 'Tis only to Artaxerxes that I will be oblig'd, both for the Safety of my Friends, and of mine own particular Life, I say my Life; for tho' perhaps those Enemies had no Design against it, I should account it an indifferent Thing to fall into the Arms of Death, or into the Arms of any other besides Artaxerxes. I give you this Assurance with Truth, (continued the Princess, seeing me transported with Joy at this Discourse) and you have Reafon to believe, that 'tis only for your felf alone that you have rescued Berenice; nay further, I will protest to you by all that is dearest to me, that the Sorrows which your Absence,



CASSANDRA

The FOURTH PART.

BOOK III.



T is true, my fairest Princess, that being oblig'd to this Recital by the Command of my dear Brother, I have declared to this illustrious Company the Testimonies you gave me of your Assection; but they are not ignorant that 'twas to the Remem-

brance of Oroendates, you granted what could never be due to the Services, or Person of Artaxerxes, and that your Inclination to a Brother so worthy of your Love, made you look upon the Passion of his dear Friend and Brother, more advantageously than you would have done upon that of the Prince of Persia.

The

nd

me,

Pal tha

(fa

or for

gre wh

for but the

kε

hin

for

ful

gra

ne

laf

alr

to

th

ov

Qu

K & SK & SK

Book III. The Signs I receiv'd of the continuance of my Princess's good Will, (pursued Arfaces, turning towards Oromdates, and the rest of the Company) were so precious to me, that I really believ'd I had no Reason to complain against Heaven, which did so fully recompence me for the Loss of those Empires it had depriv'd me of; and being, by my Princefs's Orders, retir'd with this Knowledge to the Lodgings that were appointed for me in the Palace, I employ'd the rest of that Day, in considering that the Greatness from whence I was fallen, had not in its most pompous Lustre, had any Thing comparable to my present Felicity. It belongs to none but the Gods, (faid I) to do miraculous Actions, and as great, and powerful as they are, they could not make me Amends for the Greatness of my Losses, but by the Greatness of that Fortune to which they now have raised me; having taken from me whatsoever they could give me of most great, and of most beautiful, and in short, they give me whatfoever they could take away, they give me all that I could defire, and more than I could lawfully hope for; let them bestow the Empires of Asia, and of Europe on whom they please, provided they leave but Berenice to fortunate Arfaces, he will never accuse them of Injustice, but will without Envy behold the absolute Authority of those Masters of the whole Earth. These really were my Thoughts, and Fortune (who by fuch glorious Tokens made me believe she meant to declare her self in my Favour,) forfook me not in those beginnings, but made all Things contribute to the Happiness she had procured me. That Service I had done the King, finding him prepossessed with some good Opinion of me, and with some Affection to me, wrought presently the most powerful Effect one could have hoped for by it, from the most grateful Prince in the World; and if in my former Journey I had been held in some Consideration at Court, this last Action, added to the Inclination which the King had already toward me, raised me there to such a Credit, that to represent it to you in a few Words, I may truly say, that within one Month, Arsacomes had no Advantage over me; and had it not been for the Power of the Queen, I should without dispute have held the first Place

Part IV. in the King's Esteem and Assection. 'Tis true, I labour'd not to make my felf great by Offices, and Employments,

Bo

Inf

mo

fear

to I

wa

ner

The

pub

wil

and

the

fire

to

me

her

diti

Scyl

and

cue

the

low

Col

tho

ind

hac

15,

him oth

Pri

bee

Ift

wh

ly i

Pri

vir

bel

bea

fhe

onl wa:

Infolence.

for, having Thoughts very far distant from those, I was fatisfied with causing that to be given to others (as much as I could without abusing the King's Favour towards me) which Men who had been Slaves to an Ambition dif. ferent from mine, would perhaps have kept for their own felves. This manner of Carriage, added to the good Fortune I had at that time, gain'd me a reasonable good Number of Friends in the Court, and I did so little tres. pass upon their Friendship, or upon the Compliance which my Condition oblig'd them to render me, that amongst them all, I never observ'd any one to grow cold toward me, or discontented. Arsacomes envied my Fortune, but he durst not cross it openly, remembring that he was indebted to me for his Life; and the Queen his Sister, who had the same Obligation, and who was an extreme cunning and politick Princess, would not thwart the King's Inclinations, which she knew to be very potent toward me. As Arfacomes's Envy of me was nourish'd in him by certain Considerations, so my Aversion to him was increased by divers others; and though I could not love him, because he was my Rival, and a Rival very troublefom to my Princess, yet durst I not express my Enmity, for fear of discovering the Cause of it; and 'twas with a strange Constraint I suffer'd his daily, publick Demonstrations of Love to the Daughter of his King. I found some Confolation indeed in her Behaviour towards him, and every Day observ'd with Joy, that his Presumption could not be more justly recompensed than it was by her. never gave him an obliging Word, the never did any Action that was favourable to him, and fo carefully avoided all Occasions of being alone with him, that he could never entertain her but in Company; he being of a haughty, impetuous Humour, this often made him overshoot himself, but not having utterly lost his Judgment, he strove to moderate his Resentments by his Sister's Advice, and remembring he was the King of Scythia's Subject, he considered, that if the Causes of his Fortune should come to cease, he might fall from his Authority, and be in a Condition to suffer the Punishment due to his

Infolence. The Example of Cydaris was fresh in his Memory, and tho' he could not abase himself so low as to fear a Destiny like his, yet that Remembrance was enough to make fome Impression on his Mind. Tho' Arsacomes was ill satisfied with Berenice, I for my part had all manner of Reason to acknowledge her Goodness; and fince the gives me leave, to strain a point of Discretion, to publish my Advantages, I may tell you, that I never wish'd more Happiness than I truly possessed at that time; and that my adored Princess did in my Favour, slacken the Rein to all those Testimonies of Assection I could defire from so sublime a Virtue. Yet were they all limited to Words alone, and to the Endeavours she used to assord me all the Means she could to see her, and Discourse with

her at Liberty.

V.

r'd

its,

ras

ich

rds

lif.

vn

od

od

ef-

ch gft

rd

ut

11ho

n.

S rd

25 e

e-

1

a

-

e d

d

y

e

1

That was not very hard for her to do; for in the Condition I then stood with the King, and in the Belief the Scythians had, that she was oblig'd to me for her Safety, and perhaps for her Honour, fince the time that I had refcued her out of the Hands of the treacherous Princess of the Tauro-Scythians, no Body thought strange that she allow'd me entrance into her Chamber, and fuffer'd my Company when she went Abroad. Cyllenia assisted me in those Occasions, with an Affection for which I shall be indebted to her as long as I live, and my dear Theodates had facrificed himself wholly to my Interests. True it is, that in my Encounters I had endeavoured to repay him part of the good Offices I receiv'd from him, by others which I did him to the King, and that I made that Prince better acquainted with his Virtues, than he had been formerly; but besides those Opportunities whereby I strove to testify my Friendship, another offer'd it felf, wherein I was not useless to him. He became passionately in Love with the Princess Theomiris, the Daughter of Prince Carthasis the King's Brother, an exceeding fair and virtuous Lady, and most dearly belov'd of Berenice, who belides nearness of Blood, thought her felf oblig'd to bear her a great deal of good Will, by the Knowledge she had of her excellent Qualities. Theodates was not only considerable in Scythia by his Birth and Virtue, but was also extraordinary Handsom, and well might gain the

Bo

fro

20

you

bet

Ki

Scy

wi

Ti

fis,

Ba

to

2 1

w

his

w

de

an

tir

th

hi

th

it,

vi

th

W

th

ha

A

m

he

of

fo

it

re

to

V

the Affections of that Princess, without any other Ass. stances save that of his own Merit; but I too dearly preserv'd the Memory of what I ow'd him, to negled any Occasion to requite it, and as soon as his Passion was known to me, I employ'd all the Credit I had with my Princess, to make her use all the Interest she had with Theomiris. Berenice receiv'd my Intercession without any Repugnance, and being of her felf most ready to oblige Theodates, she labour'd to advance his Suit with a great deal of Goodness, and with a great deal of Success. In the mean time the King's Favour towards me, increased from Day to Day, and tho' the Prince was ever govern'd by his own Motions, rather than by the Counfel of any about him, and that he never gave his Favourite fo much Power over his Mind, but that he ever kept firm to his own Resolutions, he seem'd then to have receded from his Maxims in favour of me, and that even in the most important Affairs, he had a greater Opinion of my Advice, than he had ever had of any other Body's. I will have the Scythians honour Arfaces, (faid he) both as the bravest, most valiant of all Men living, (they were the Terms which his Affection made him unjustly use) and as he to whom they owe the Safety of their King, and of all the Royal Family. Not being contented with many confiderable Gifts, which he heap'd upon me every Day, he to his former Liberalities, and to the excessive Riches he had already bestow'd upon me, would needs add the Provinces which Cydaris and his Brother had loft, when they lost their Lives, and which, by their traiterous, horrible Attempt, return'd unto the Crown, their Attainder having excluded all the Survivers of their House from any lawful Pretentions to them. I durst not oppose his Liberalities, for fear of angring him, and of giving him Suspicion of my true Quality, by seeming to contemn them. He had often times been offended with the little Reckoning I made of Presents of that Nature, and by the Advice of the Princess her self, I would not put my self in hazard of displeasing him. Theodates confirm'd me in that Resolution, and when he pressed me most earnestly to it, Dear Theodates, (faid I) I will not accept of this Province, but upon Condition, that you will receive it

from me when I am once in a Capacity to offer it you, and that (continued I smiling) shall be the Ransom of your Prisoner, if the Gods permit him not to satisfy you better. Theodates, who knew how to despife that kind of Riches, answered me very generoully, and by the King's Example, began to call me the Prince of the Taurosevibians; but they had hardly given me that Name, when it was known in Court, I should not bear that Tirle without dispute; for News came thither that Amas, the younger Brother to Cydaris, and he with whom Bundamis had threatned us with when he died, had begun to execute part of those Menaces; and after having lien a while conceal'd in that Province, to make a Party, whereby he precended either to revenge the Death of his Brothers, or to keep Possession of those Territories which had belong'd to his Family, he had at last persuaded the Tauro-Scythians to rife, and having under falfe and specious Pretences made their Neighbours the Agatirsians take up Arms with them, had got an Army together of above fifty thousand Men, wherewith he prepar'd himself to enter into the nearest Provinces, either to get them to revolt with him, or to use all Acts of Hostility against them.

As foon as the Noise of this Insurrection was come to Isedon, and that the King had receiv'd the certainty of it, he, without being troubled, began diligently to provide those Remedies that were needful, and summoning the nearest Troops, whereof he could compose an Army, was pleased that I should have the Honour to Command them: not but that among his own Subjects he might have made a better Choice, yet whether it were that his Assection to me gave him too advantageous an Opinion of my Susficiency, or that having given me that Province, he believ'd me to be more concern'd in the Preservation of it than any Body else, so it is that he preserved me for that Employment, before those that sued to him for

it.

V.

Mi-

rly

ect

725

my

ith

ny

ige

eat

In

fed

id

ny

ich

his

om

oft

d-

ill

he

he

25

of

ny

ıy,

es

he

en

or-

in-

use

ofe

ng

nn

le

he

elf

in

ly

115

10

m

I know not how to present to you in what manner I receiv'd it. On the one side, I was not a little satisfied to find so remarkable an Occasion, to deserve those Favours the King conferr'd upon me, and to establish my self

1

1

fo

A

fe

m

af

hi

te

Th

W

fta

tie

113

pa

to

W

 G_0

Q

yo

to

for

de

tha

aga

jet

iha

the

the

the

wh

per

date

rep

rar

V O

cut

ure

felf more and more, by the Services I hop'd to do him, in that Affection which was so necessary for me, both to. ward the Accomplishment of my Happiness with Bere. nice, and toward the Means of recovering, with part of mine Honour, some part also of Darius's Empires; but on the other side I was not less afflicted to go from Bere. nice; and tho' I forefaw not that that Absence would be of fo long continuance as it prov'd, I could not refolve upon it without a most sensible Grief. But there was a Necessity of it, and in that Sorrow, I met with some Confolations, which did in part abate its Violence. We shall fight for the King of Scythia, (faid I) it has pleased Fortune that we have not been useless to his Service al. ready, but when we shall have let him fee how we can lead an Army for his Interests, perhaps he will not refuse to give us another for the Defence of our own, and that by the Importance of the Services we shall do him, we may blot that Hatred out of his Mind, which still continues in it against the Remnant of Darius's Family. Go then, Arfaces, fince so many Reasons oblige thee to it, go conquer the rest of those that would have murdered the King, and violently have stollen away Berenice; and if thou canst not part with that Princess without Sorrow, fweeten at least that Sorrow by the Knowledge thou hast, that thou art going to fight for her Father, that thou art going to fight for her, and that thou art going to fight for thy felf.

With this kind of Discourse I took Comfort in the Trouble which that Absence was preparing for me, and in the interim told the King that I would endeavour, by the Hazard of all my Blood, to make my self worthy of the Employment he gave me, and either would return victorious over his Enemies, or else not return at all. I doubt not (said the King) but that you are certain of the Victory, and that they must be neither Rebels nor Traitors that can resist the Valour of Arsaces. In the mean time, my Departure was hasten'd with all possible Diligence, and every Day till then, I had the Happiness to see, and to entertain my Princess. If I dare take the Liberty to say so, her Grief seem'd little less than mine, nor did she see me ready to go i no Dangers, without she wing

V.

im,

to-

ere-

t of

but

ere-

be

lve

as a

ome

We

afed

al-

can

fuse

that

we

nti-

Go

o it,

ered

and

Sor-

dge

that

oing

the

and

by

y of

turn

all.

n of

nor

the

ible

ness

the

ine,

nout ring shewing a Sensibility, that was more sweet, and more obliging to me, than all the Honours and Gifts of Provinces which I receiv'd from the King her Father; but she found her Confolations in mine, when I represented those Advantages to her, wherewith the Cruelty of that Abfence was to be allayed. Theodates would not have let me go without him, but knowing his Quality, and that after the Employments he had formerly had, he could not march in an Army without Commanding it, or doing himself a great deal of Wrong, I opposed his friendly Intention, and intreated him to continue at Court to ferve Theomiris, and to ferve me also with Berenice, fince he was the only Man from whom I could receive any Affiflance in that Business. They were these last Considerations that made him yield to it, his Friendship to me making him despise the first. The Night before my Departure being come, I receiv'd Orders from the King, and took my leave of him, which he gave me not without fome Tears, nor without fuch Endearments, as those that were nearest to him could hardly hope for from him. Go, Arfaces, (said he) go quell our Enemies, restore Quietness to the Province which your Virtue has given you, and testify to the remotest Scythians, that 'tis only to the gallantest of all Mortals, their King is indebted for his Safety. Yet have a care of a Life which is very dear to us, and think not fo much of conquering, but that you may also think of bringing Arfaces home to us again. I shall conquer, Sir, (replied I) since your Majesty commands me to do so; and the remotest Scythians shall know, 'tis the victorious Sword of their King, rather than the Hand of Arfaces, that punishes them for their Perfidiousness. After I had left the King, I gave the remainder of the Day to the vifits of my Friends, and when Night was come, my Princess had the Goodness to permit me to pass part of it in her Chamber, with Theodates, and Cyllenia. It would be very hard for me to repeat all the Discourses to you which we had at that Sefaration, and as they took up many Hours, less time would not be necessary to tell you them. My Princess, cut of an Excess of Goodness, was afflicted at my Departere, and by the same Goodness, the comforted her self

and me with hope of the Fruit I should reap by this Expedition. I go, Madam, (said I) to labour for the Repose of sothia, and for my own; that Hope alone sweetens the Violence of my Grief; and at this Separation, I should not be to be comforted, if I did not believe, that Heaven separates us, only to re-unite us the more firmly. It cannot savour me with its Assistance, in the employment the King gives me, without advancing my Happiness, and when the King shall know I am the Son of Darius, he will perhaps remember I have done some.

thing for his Service.

Upon that Remembrance, next to yours my lovely Princess, my whole Fortune will depend, and fince I leave it totally at your Feet, 'tis at your Feet I hope to find it at my Return, but 'tis only to your Goodness that I ought to recommend it; yes, fairest Princess, only to your Goodness, and fince you have been generous enough to receive the banish'd, the undone, the miserable Arfaces as Prince Artaxerxes, you will also without doubt be generous enough to maintain him in the glorious Condition to which you have raifed him; this Hope not only fweetens all my Sorrows, but makes me look without Envy upon Alexander's Victories, and would make me find Advantages in my Losses, if I had not some Compassion of my Friends, and if my Reputation were not interested in their Fall. Preserve that for me therefore, my divine Princess, which Arfacomes, which Stratonice would cruelly take from me, and remember, that I cannot yield my Pretensions to them, nor to any Body in the World, without quitting my Life together with them. Have a care of your felf (replied the Princess) that you may as well preferve your felf for Berenice, as you delire she should preserve her felf totally for you; and do you refift the unjust Motions of your Courage, as well as she will refist the Importunities of Arsacomes, and Stratonice. If your Remembrance of me make you more wary in Fight, and if my Interest make you go into Dangers with more Moderation than you are wont; I'll combate here for you with all the Assurance, and all the Success you can desire. In this, Arfaces, I shall follow my own Inclinations as much as your Recommendation, but remem-

th

0

fa

fa

th

ve

In

ste

ra

y

.

I

at

to

a-

1-

ly

ut

ne

n.

ot

re,

ice

n-

in

ou

ire

ou

he

ce.

in

ith

ere

1011

In-

m-

ber

ber that I will be obey'd in what I demand of you, and that I shall be sufficiently afflicted by your Absence, without being tormented with the Fears of the Peril you are in.

My Princess accompanied these Words with many others no less obliging, and by those sweet Marks of my Felicity, she made me know, that nothing but my Departure hindred me from being the most fortunate of all Men living. I took leave of her, with effects of Grief which all my Constancy could not hinder, and before I went out of her Chamber, I received a Scart from her, part of which she had wrought with her own Hand, and with which I believed I should be invincible against the most valiant Enemies. At last I was fain to depart, and being retir'd with my dear Theodates, I spent almost all the rest of the Night in recommending my Life and Fortune to him, which next to Berenice, I lest in no other Hands but his.

By break of Day, my Lodging was full of Persons that came to bid me Farewel, and of the chief Officers of the Army that were to go along with me; I took my leave of those, and put my felf at the Head of these, who generally expressed their Joy for the Employment that was given me, and made me fee, that for all I was a Stranger, I had gain'd their Affections enough to hope for a great deal of good Will and Obedience amongst them. I answered the Offers they made me of their Service, with all the Civility I could possibly, and endeayour'd to carry my self toward them as Arfaces, whom only the King's Favour had raised above them, rather than as Artaxerxes, who once was Heir to the Empire of Asia. This manner of Behaviour perfected the winning of their Affections, and they march'd with a Satisfaction, whereat I my felf had Caufe to be very well satisfied. I will not here make a particular Relation of the Number of the Forces I commanded; They were the very same, Brother, wherewith you afterward went to fight against Zopirio, and by the muster of them, which I made two Days March from Isedon, I found they consisted of forty thousand Horse, drawn out of many several parts of Scythia. The Scythians you know seldon VOL. IV. ule

use Foot, and never draw forth any but upon those Expeditions, wherein they meant to employ their utmost

Strength.

We made very great Marches directly to Mount Tanrus, and tho' I knew not those Countries, I had Men with me who were acquainted even with the most unusual Passages, and by the former Voyage I made with the Scythians under Theodates, I had fo well learn'd their Customs, and their manner of Fighting, that I was no more troubled amongst them, than I should have been amongst the Persians. The King had given me divers Perfons of Quality and Command, but amongst them all, he that I made most Account of, was the good old Cleoreftes, Araxes's Father, whom I had particularly demanded of him, and whom I lov'd exceedingly, both for the Confideration of his Son whom I had known, and effected in Persia, and for that of his own Virtue. Besides that his Quality was considerable in Scythia, he was much to be valued for his Person, and there were but few Soldiers in the Kingdom that had more Experience than he, or a more perfect Knowledge in Matters of War. And indeed I preferr'd his Counsel before all the rest, and gave him the Employment of greatest Consequence. I'll Morten the Recital of this War, as much as conveniently I can, and only tell you the most remarkable Events of it. We arriv'd at the Frontiers of the Tauro-Scythians without difficulty; but when we would have entred, we found it defended by fome Troops which Amasis had left to guard it. The Number of Men was not great, but the Places were very advantageous for them, and that was it which put us to some Trouble in conquering them, and made us lose some Men about it. Yet did we overcome those first Obstacles, and after a sharp Encounter remain'd Masters of the Field, by the Death of all those that defended it, who never turn'd their Backs, nor ever demanded Quarter. The Entry into this Province being free by this first Success, we advanc'd in reasonable good Order toward the Town, near which Amasis lay incamp'd; but I found that War would not easily be brought to a Conclusion, and by the first Judgment I had been able to make of Men of that Nation, I conjectured

20

th

de

W

ta

fe

ha

ve

to

fpe

Ni

ne

110

Im

tho

conjectured that they would defend all their Places to the utmost, and that that Expedition would prove much longer than had been imagined. Scarce had we made a Day's March toward Amasis, when we heard he was coming to meet us; and having fancied, that the Knowledge of the Country, and their being fresh, would give his Men the Advantage over Troops tired out with marching, he defired nothing but to give us Battel. I praifed the Gods for that happy forwarding of our Intentions, and told my Companions that we could not with for any thing more advantageous than the Occasion of putting a speedy End to the War, which by other Means our Enemies might draw out in length. I found them all as resolute, and as confident as I could defire; but feeing that the Forces I had to lead were a King's whose Affection I endeavoured to keep, and that upon the Success of that Day depended the beginning of that Reputation I hop'd to gain with him, and with it the Establishment and Repose of my whole Life, I was not willing rashly to hazard Matters of that Importance, but resolved to feek our Advantages, in all the Counfels Prudence could afford us. When we were certain that Amalis was advancing towards us with all the hafte he could, and with a firm Resolution to give us Battel; Let us put them to the whole Trouble (faid I to my chief Commanders) and let him weary his Men to come up to us, while we chuse a Place to fight in that may be for our Advantage, and there we'll rest our Men and Horses, all the time that our Enemies are marching thither. This Counfel being approv'd of, we incamped in a fair Plain, and having a long Hill upon our Right-hand, and a little River behind us, we left the Front, and the left Flank open to the Enemies approach.

Scarce had we rested there two Days, which were spent in necessary Preparations, when our Scouts brought us Intelligence that Amasis was coming to Quarter that Night within a hundred Furlongs of us, and that the next Day he would offer us Battel. This News wrought nothing in the Courage of our Troops, but a generous Impatience, and an ardent Desire to have a Bout with those daring Rebels: They shew'd a thousand Signs of

it, and in the interim, I was careful to forget nothing that belong'd to my Charge, and fpent the whole Time I had remaining, to put all Things in the order we could desire. Cleorestes took off much of that Trouble from me, and with him Lectaris, Mazentes, Amisoras, and many others, in whom for their Experience and Valour, I had a great deal of Confidence. The Report our Scouts had brought in prov'd very true, for the Enemies Army incamp'd so near us that Day, that in the Night time our foremost Troops heard their Shouts, and discover'd some of their Fires. As foon as Day began to appear, the Scythians made all the Plain to eccho with the Sound of their Instruments, and the Officers, busying themselves diligently about the Orders I had given them, drew up their Squadrons according to the Scythian Discipline. Their Form was exceeding terrible; and of all the Soldiers I ever faw, never did I meet with any that prepared themselves to fight with a Considence like theirs. I wore a Suit of Arms that Day which the King had given me at my Departure, the Work of them was excellent, and the Matter very rich; but Berenice's Scarf was my most pompous Ornament. Having learn'd in part what Order our Enemies kept with their Troops, I drew mine into three Bodies, whereof I took the first my felf, and gave the two others to Cleorestes and Mazentes, and when they were all in a Readiness, I rode bareheaded along the Front of every Division, and employ'd all the Eloquence the Gods had given me, to represent all the Reasons that might animate them to the Battel. My Speech was not without Effect, for by good Fortune I had so gain'd the Hearts both of Officers and Soldiers, that they cried out aloud I should lead them to the Enemy, and that they fear'd not to be overcome, while they fought under Arfaces. Seeing them so gallantly resolved, I would not retain them longer, but covering my Head with a Cask overshadowed with white Plumes, and with a Horse-Tail which fell upon my Shoulders, I arm'd my Left-hand with a weighty Shield, and my Right with a couple of Javelins, and putting my felf at the Head of my Battalion, march'd toward the Enemies, when they were already beginning to advance. The Interview of the two Armies caused a dreadful Noise of Voices and Infiru

u

e

n

na

W

no

ta

ou

Pl

th

the

mo

wh

Ki

Ri

oth

y

n

d

1-

d

ıt

1.

e

s,

e-

y

d,

id

th

ıy

a

of

ey

of

nd

ru

Instruments, but when after we had encourag'd them for the last time, we gave them the liberty to charge, they closed with an Impetuousness which admits of no Comparison. The Enemy had but little Infantry as well as we, and so the Fight was equal between the Armies: for tho' that of our Enemies was stronger than ours in Number of Men, ours was justified by the Goodness of its Cause, and by the Valour of many gallant Officers I had with me. The Body I commanded did fo well, as it presently broke thro' that which was before us, and having routed all the Squadrons of it, we, after a great deal of Execution, got as far as their Baggage. Scythians would have fallen to plunder, but I forbad them till after the clear Islue of the Battel, and it was very happy I did fo, for fearce had we obtain'd that Advantage, when we heard that Mazentes's Battalion had given back, before that which Amasis commanded in Person, and that our Enemies General had gain'd an Advantage little different from ours.

This News made us face about towards them that stood in need of our Assistance, and leaving those we had defeated at liberty either to fly or rally, we went to fly upon conquering Amasis with a Fury which he could not eafily withstand. If I did not fear to offend Modesty, I should say, that the powerful Interest which guided me in that Combate made me do Things that are not ordinary, and that peradventure I contributed fomething toward the winning of that Battel. Mazentes, who was not utterly defeated, recovered Courage at our arrival, and while Cleorestes with his Body made good our Advantage against him that was to oppose him, we gave Amasis so smart and so fortunate a Charge, that we quickly raised our Party again. All the Forces drew infenfibly to that Place, and 'twas with a great deal of Blood, and with the Death of many thousand Men that the Victory was there disputed. I animated our valiant Warriors the most that possibly I could, and after having told them what they ow'd to their Honour, to the Service of their King, and to their own Safety, which by Reason of the River that was at their Back they could not hope for otherwise than by Victory, I endeavoured to incite them

G 3

to it by my Example, and not sparing to hazard my Life in their Presence, I, by the Considence I shew'd, oblig'd them to second me generously. I did not strive to meet with Amasis, for remembring that two of the three Brothers had been slain by my Hand already, I sought not an Occasion to shed the remainder of the Blood of that House.

Why should I hold you any longer? After we had fought long and vigorously, the Victory declared it self for our Party, and Amasis knowing that Fortune was contrary to him, sac d about with some of his Men, and by Flight, sought either for his own Sasety, or for the Means of sighting another time. In the last Rout the Slaughter was very great, and the Scythians, who naturally love Blood, and who seldom spare their Enemies, committed Cruelties which in many Places it was impossible for me to hinder: Yet did I do all I could, and where I chanc'd to come it was not without Success. Our Victory was so absolute, that of sifty thousand Men, whereof the Enemies Army was composed, there were thirty thousand slain upon the Place, and we lost not above two thousand of ours.

After the Event of this Battel, a little Town which was not many Furlongs from us, open'd its Gates without Resistance, and there we refreshed our selves for a few Days, drefled our wounded Men, and put our Forces again in order to profecute the Victory. I had received fome Hurts, but fuch light ones, that I kept not my Bed above four or five Days. Our Army was incamped near the Walls, and all the principal Officers, with the wounded Soldiers, were lodg'd within the Town, where care was taken for Victual, and for necessary Subsistance. I then had Reason enough to be satisfied with my Fortune, and that happy beginning of my Arms advanc'd my Defigns, and raised my Hopes enough to smother part of my Discontents; but the Image of my Princess was ever prefent to my Remembrance, and all the Joy I could taffe by my Victory, was strongly moderated by my Trouble for her Absence. I had no Body with me to whom! durst impart my Thoughts, and tho' I knew the Affection of Criton, who had not forfaken me, and that I had I T.

fe 'd

et

oot

16

ad

elf

1]-

by

115

19

ve

ed

ne

'd

aŝ

he

nd nd

ch

h-

ces red

ed

ear

ıd-

are

I

ne,

)e-

ny

re-

ste

ole

n I

ec-

ad I

a great deal of Confidence in some Servants I had received from Theodates, yet had I not enough in either to acquaint them with my Love, or with my Quality, for those were Secrets of too great Importance, to declare them to any Body but Theodates and Cyllenia. Yet had I then a fair Occasion to write to my Princess, and being oblig'd to give the King an Account of the happy Issue of that Battel, and of the Condition of our Affairs in that Province, I would not give that Commission but to one of those faithful Servants Theodates had put to me, and having commanded him not to deliver the Letter I wrote to that dear Friend, till he were alone with him, I feal'd up that to my Princess within it, having had trial enough of that Man's Affection, to trust him as far as that I writ our Victory to the King in a few Words, came to. having given the Messenger Instructions to inform him more at large, and fent nothing to Theodates but new Protestations of Friendship, and Recommendations of my Fortune; but the Letter to my Princess, if I can remember it, was in these Terms:

Arfaces to the Princess Berenice.

and to fear incessantly to lose you, do you think, fair Princess, that these are light Afflictions to poor Arsaces, and that his Love, his Absence, and his Apprehensions, are not capable to give him that Death, which he has not found amongst your Enemies Swords, because your Will ordained him to avoid it? For Love, the Gods forbid I should complain of it, it does, and will ever make my most glorious Condition: For Absence my Duty obliges me to bear it, and it is by serving her Father that I ought to make my self worthy of my Princess; but my Fear hath something in it more cruei, and if I could be secure against the Missortunes I apprehend, I should endure the rest of my Torments with more Courage. I do not doubt, dear Princess, of the Constancy of your Mind,

G 4

but I dread strong Persecutions, I dread a Soveraign Authority, and I dread the Fortune of Arsaces; yet it is altered, since it dependeth only upon you, and I have had nothing at all to do with chance, since you were the maker of my Destiny. I expect a happy one from your Goodness, and it is out of that Hope I will remember you have imposed a Command of Living, and of Returning upon your faithful

Arfaces.

I dispatch'd this Messenger when I had given him such Instructions as were necessary, and a few Days after made the Army decamp, and we march'd in pursuit of Amasis, to reduce that Province under the King's Obedience, but we stopt at the first Towns we came to, and all those that had never so little Strength endured the Siege with marvellous Obstinacy. That Relistance protracted the War, and kept us all that Summer in the Province of the Tauro-Scythians, while in that of the Agatirsians Amasis made up an Army, partly with the broken Forces he had left, partly with new Troops levied in those revolted Countries. We were besieging Bursta, when the Messenger I had fent to Issedon came back to us, and brought me Answers of the Letters he had carried. The King wrote to me with Praises, able to have glutted the Ambition of the most vain-glorious Man in the World, and promised me Recompences infinitely above all I could deferve. Theodates gave me Confirmations of his Affection in the most obliging Terms that could be invented, assur'd me of the Continuation of his Care, and comforted me with a Certainty of my Princess's Perseverance, and of the little Fruit Arfacomes reap'd by all his Industry; but 'twas Berenice's Letter that caused my Impatiency, and opening it, when I had kiffed it a thoufand times, I with incredible Transports of Joy read these .Words:

ce

I

r

1

you

The Princess Berenice to Arsaces.

I F you love me, if you are absent, and if you be in fear for me, you suffer nothing, Arsaces, which I do not Suffer as well as you; and I may truly protest, that I am not exempt from any of those Disquiets which my Affection, the want of your Company, and the Fear I am in for you, can make me feel. In this there is a perfect Conformity between us; I cannot condemn an Affection which I have conceived for him, who of all Men living is most worthy of it; I bear your Absence out of the same Considerations that make your endure mine; but I know not how to defend my self against the fear of losing you in those Dangers, into which you too lightly precipitate your self: Secure me, I pray you, against this Apprehension, if you will have me secure you against yours, and think of bringing me kome Arfaces, if you would find Berenice again in the same Condition wherein you have left ber.

My Joy was excessive at the reading of this Letter; but scarce had I begun to express it as much as I might in the Presence of that Man, when he added Astonishment to Joy, by the News he brought; He told me that Prince Oroundates, contrary to the Expectation of all Scythia, was come back to Isfedon, and that when the whole Court was going to testify their Gladness for a return so ardently defir'd, the King his Father being of another Mind, had receiv'd him as a mortal Enemy, and had caus'd him to be imprison'd in the Castle of Serey, where he was kept under a very strict and severe Guard. Brother, what Motions did this Discourse stir up within me, and in what manner did I receive this News of my dear Brother, of whose Life I had been uncertain? I abhorr'd the Cruelty of the King your Father, but was comforted for your Imprisonment, by the Assurance that you were alive; it pleased me a great deal better to hear

G 5

you were Prisoner to the King your Father, than to have been still in doubt you were dead. And indeed I hop'd his Choler would be allay'd in a little time, and that how great soever his Resentments were against you, he would still remember that you were his Son, and a Son worthy of his Affections. Upon this Thought I laid Foundations for my Happiness, and propounded Delights to my felf in your Company, which had been interrupted by our cruel Separation; I spent some time upon that Remembrance, and ask'd the Messenger a thousand Questions about that Business; but all the Particulars he could tell me about your Imprisonment was, that no Body was permitted to see you, and that the Princess having with much ado obtain'd the liberty of a Visit, had never been able to entertain you in private. I judg'd, that all this proceeded but from the first brunt of the King's Anger, and hop'd that before my return the Peace would be made, or if 'twere not, perhaps we might find Occasion to do fomething in it.

In the mean time we took the Town by Assault which we were Beleaguering, and after that, some others yielded themselves to Obedience, but the strongest held us so long in play, that Amasis had all the leisure he could desire to sit himself to take the Field again, and so he did, with as great an Army as before, and a greater Resolution to decide the War by a final Battel. This News was very welcome to me, believing it to be the means to finish the War, the length whereof I, by reason of my Princess's Absence, began to think insupportable. We march'd directly toward him, taking the Way that could bring us together soonest, and most conveniently; but we were sain to take many Places before we got to him, and make our selves Masters (either by Force, or by the Terror of our Arms) of whatsoever we met

with in our Paffage.

This we effected successfully enough; But that I may not tire you with the Recital of all those petty Sieges, and of many trivial Encounters, I'll tell you, that we were already Masters of the whole Province of the Army of the Tauro-Scythians, and were drawing near to that of the Agatissians, when the Enemies came within sight of

'd

at

ne n

d

ts

d

us. I found our valiant Scythians had a marvellous desire to fight, and having encourag'd them to it as much as possibly I could, I divided the Army into two Bodies, whereof I gave the Left to Cleorestes, and kept the Right my felf. Amasis parted his into four, and march'd towards us wondrous refolutely. We fought an exceeding bloody Battel, but I will not detain you with relating the Particulars, for we should not see the End of my Narration of a long while, if I should stick upon every Circumstance. Amasis and they of his Party fought like desperate Men, and like Men, who if they lost that Battel, desir'd not to out-live it; They made the Victory hang long in suspence, and disputed it almost all the Day with marvellous Obstinacy; but in the End we carried it, and the Event prov'd more fatal to the conquered than that of the former. Of five and forty thousand, whereof the Enemies Army confisted, there hardly escaped two or three thousand, and those most of them wounded, but deliver'd by my Authority from the Fury of the Conquerors. Amasis fighting in the first Ranks with a great deal of Valour, lost his Life, with a great number of Wounds, and by his Death cut up the Root of that Rebellion. We lost not above three thousand Men, but had a great many hurt, whom we caused to be dressed excceding carefully, and whereof the most part recover'd by the Help that was given them. This Victory made us Masters of both the Provinces, and those revolted People having neither Forces to dispute them with us, nor Heads to stir them up to continue in Rebellion, begg'd the King's Mercy, and came in every Day to make Protestations of their Fidelity, and to bring me the Keys of their strong Holds. We hardly needed to draw our Swords any more to perfect the reducing of them; but yet we were fain to spend some Time in visiting some of those Places, and in securing them to us, and it being then about the beginning of Winter, which is extremely sharp in those Provinces, we were constrain'd to pass it in some of the Towns, and to employ it in settling a full Peace, and in fuch Order as we thought necessary to establish a perfect Tranquility. That long Absence would have been intolerable to me, if by the means of Theodates

I had not often receiv'd Letters from my Princess, and if my tedious Days had not been sweetned with the Assurances she gave me. The King did me the Honour to write to me very often, and in his Letters gave me Praises which could not lawfully be due to any Body: When once we had nothing more to do in those Provinces, and that the Season was convenient for our Army to take the Field, we began our March to return to Issedon with a perfect Joy and Satisfaction. For my part, I could not without being transported think I should shortly see my Princess again, and that I should find my dear Brother in Scythia. The fancy of these Happinesses grew so powerful in my Mind, that it banish'd the Remembrance of all my Losses, and I was marching with Contentments, not troubled with any mixture of Bitterness, when I found they were too great to be so easily obtain'd. We had already passed over a good part of the Way, when I receiv'd an Order from the King which hindred me from going further, and reading the Letter he wrote, I found these Words:

The King of SCTTHIA to the valiant ARSACES.

IT were but Justice, my dear Arsaces, to let you rest, after having taken so great Pains for us, and I should equally desire your sight, and the Quietness of my Dominions; but I find all Scythia must be indebted to you for its Safety, and Arsaces is the strongest Buckler it can oppose against its most terrible Enemies. The Heavens offer you Matter to employ your self for it, and for us, with the Success that usually attends you, and with it an Occasion to revenge your particular Quarrels, and to punish that barbarous Man, who, contrary to all the Rights of War, detain'd you in a long and cruel Captivity. Arimbas the Governor of Pontus is entred into our Territories on the side toward the Boristhenes, with forty thousand Men, but he has not yet had

to

P

Arfaces

had time to make any great Progresses, and I am not in a C. ndition to send other Troops than those under your Command speedily enough to oppose him. Go, valiant Arsaces, go conquer that unworthy Enemy, who hindred you from fighting for your Country, and who unsuftly deprived you of so precious a Liberty. I hope for the Victory from your Hand rather than from all your Forces, and yet I will take care to raise more to recruit your Army, and you shall be sure to receive Supplies before you stand in need of them.

This Order crossing my fair Hopes gave me a very fensible Discontent, but I quickly found some Consolation, and had preserv'd so great an Animosity against that cruel Man, who had kept me from paying what I owed to my Friends, and what I owed to my Reputation, that the Desire of taking a glorious Revenge moderated my Trouble, and made me turn Head against him, with a firm Hope that I should punish him, both for the Injury he had sormerly done me, and for the Obstacle he then interposed to my present Fortune. All the Assection our Scythians bore me was needful to put them upon that new Design without murmuring; but seeing there was a Necessity of it, they sollowed me more chearfully than I

expected.

Our Army was then but thirty thousand strong, having been oblig'd to leave Garrisons in certain Towns, but it increased eight or ten thousand Men, which I drew as we march'd out of Places where they might be spared. We took our Way toward Sendica, wash'd by the Danube and Boristhenes, and bounded by the Euxine Sea, whence Arimbas was come down upon the Frontier. Our Marches were long enough for Men that were to fight, and meeting no stop to retard us, we in a short Time arriv'd within a Day's Journey of our Enemies. We rested two Days upon the Banks of the Boristhenes, which was open to us, and the third we passed it, and went to encamp within a hundred Furlongs of Arimbas, being refolved to give him Battel the next Day. Yet did I mean to let him know before, that he was to fight against his Prisoner, and calling for a Trumpet, I sent him away prefently with this Letter.

Arfaces to Arimbas.

It is against your Prisoner, O Arimbas, that you are to decide the Success of this War, and to Morrow at the Head of his Army he'll make you see that he was capable to defend his Liberty against you, if you had assaulted him with equal Forces; I bring you my Head for the Ransom I frustrated you of, you may attack it with more Glory than you did before, and I hope you shall pay me yours for the Price of the Liberty of

Arsaces.

Arimbas receiv'd this Letter with a strange Astonishment, and when the Trumpet had confirm'd, that the General of the Scythians was that same Arsaces, whom he had so long kept Prisoner, he found something extraordinary in that Adventure; but after he had ask'd the Trumpet a thousand Questions, he sent him back to me with this Answer.

Arimbas to Arsaces.

SINCE the Gods fend me my Fugitive again, I to punifor his Flight, will receive the Occasion they present me for that End; and because heretofore I too induspently spared his Life, I'll take it now for that Ransom whereof he thinks he has frustrated me. We shall see his Courage at the Head of his Army, and we'll give him Occasions enough either to revenge his Quarrel, or to fall more gloriously than he deserves.

C

The next Morning it was newly break of Day when our Troops were already in Battalia; but because I would give you the Islue of the Business succinctly, I'll only tell you, that I divided them into four Bodies, of ten thousand Horse in each, whereof the first was mine own, and the other three I gave to Leotaris, Mazentes, and Cleorestes, and having put them in as good a readiness as we could wish, I faw our Sey bians march with an Undauntedness that promised me an infallible Victory. I omitted not any thing I could fay to augment their Defire of it, and they answered me with threatning and terrible Shouts: They redoubled them with a greater fierceness when they saw the Enemies Army, and scarce was I able to keep them in, and hinder them from rushing on to the Fight with an extraordinary Eagerness; yet did they obey, me as they were wont to do, and the Armies were already within a Bow-shot of one another, expecting only the last command to fall on, when having given order to mine not to ffir out of their Place, I gallop'd on before them, and feeing Arimbas at the Head of his Men, I advanc'd to the middle of the Space that was between the two Armies, and defying him with many loud Cries, I made him understand what it was I desir'd of him. Arimbas was a valiant Man, and one that could not fee himself challeng'd before so great a Number, without shewing Proofs of the Courage he had boasted of; He ran toward me full speed, but before he came close to me he darted one of his two Javelins at me with all his Might, but he fail'd of his Aim, and the Dart having paffed whizzing over my Head, fell without any Effect at the Feet of our Troops; immediately he took the other in his Right-hand, and ending his Career, we closed with a very impetuous Shock: He fought with a somewhat blinder Rage than I, and so his Javelin only hit my Shield, upon which it broke all into shivers, and mine being a little more warily directed, found passage into the Beaver of his Helmet, and piercing to the hinder Part of his Head, made him fall stark dead in fight of both the Armies. Ours at that Spectacle fent forth loud Cries to Heaven, and moving at the same time, ran with

a marvellous Violence upon those frighted Troops, already half conquer'd by their General's Death. I strove to open them a Passage, and to clear my self a Way with my Sword, which might make theirs the more easy to them; but we found much Difficulty in the Business, and the Captains that commanded under Arimbas, being brave and valiant Men, used all imaginable Endeavours to supply the want of their General. They labour'd a long time in it with Success, but some of the Scythians having cut off Arimbas his Head, carried it upon the point of a Javelin, and by that Object struck Terror into some of the boldest of them, and animated themselves in such manner, that their Enemies were no longer able to make Resistance.

As foon as they began to be in disorder, the Soythians laid hold of the Advantage to so good Purpose, that there was no more possibility of disputing the Victory against them. In short, they won it absolutely, I say, so absolutely, that hardly one of their Enemies escaped with Life, tho' I did all that was in my Power to keep them from that Cruelty; but they had conceiv'd such an Animosity against those injurious Invaders, who pretended to enlarge their Bounds to the utmost Parts of the Earth, that 'twas impossible to save them from their Fury.

(

p

ft

m

D

ca

W

de

or

re

for

he

the

Queen Thalestris, who till then had hearkned to Arsaces patiently, could not longer forbear to interrupt him; I fought under your Command at that Battel, (faid she) and was Witness of many of those Passages you have related; but I cannot pardon your Modesty, which robs this Company of the Knowledge of the most gallant ones; you did Actions there beyond Belief, and 'twas with a great deal of Truth that the Scythians publish'd the Honour of that Victory to be due to no Body but their General. Arfaces could not suffer the Continuation of this Discourse, and to take her off on't, Madam, (said he) you give me an Advantage which belongs not to me, and fince our Troops were honour'd with your Presence, without doubt you your felf did Actions there which would have darken'd all the Glory of mine, if the Honour of fo great a Command had not given them all the Lustre that made them be taken notice of. The Queen would

would have repleid, but the Company hindred her, and

fo Arfaces went on thus with his Story.

0

d

y e

it

1-

of

h

e

15

-

n

S

After this Victory fo happily obtain'd, but yet purchas'd with the loss of five thousand of our Men, we no longer had any Enemies to fight withal, and that little Piece of the Country Arimbas had brought under his Subjection, being presently settled again under ours, we saw the whole Frontier quiet, and fo were permitted to return again toward Issedon, which we had so much defired. did it with a greater Contentment than the Estate of my Fortune ought in Probability to have given me, and drew near to my Princess and my dear Brother with the sweetest Hopes a Mind is able to conceive. Why should I trouble you with the Recital of our Journey? After haying marched a great many Days, which my Impatience made me think exceeding long, I at last faw the great City of Medon, but before I was come within three or four hundred Furlongs of it, I had met my dear Theodates, who with a good part of the Nobility was come forth to weicome me.

I received the Honour they all did me with the greatest Civility I could, but all the most tender Expressions that ever Friendship produced appeared in the Endearments between Theodates and me; We could not put an End to our Embraces, nor were the kindest and most obliging Words in the World sufficient to make known the least part of our mutual Satisfactions; I had a thousand Questions to ask him, but I feared lest a secret Conversation might be thought an Incivility to many Persons of Quality that were with him; and therefore, beginning another Discourse with that noble Company, it lasted till we came to the Gates of the Town, which we found full with a Throng of the Inhabitants that came out to meet us. Never did a thankful People welcome their Defender, or their lawful Prince, with louder Acclamations, or more Testimonies of Joy, nor never did any Soldier receive so many Praises for so inconsiderable Actions. The Cries of the People made but a part of our Glory, for the King himself, out of an Excess of Goodness which he then had toward me, came forth of his Palace into the Street to give me glorious Testimonies of his Assection;

he ftretched out his Arms fo foon as he faw me appear, and kneeled down upon one Knee to receive the Favour wherewith he was pleafed to honour me; What shall we do (said he) O our valiant Defender, to shew you we are not ingrateful? and what can we offer to generous Arfaces, which he by his Valour has not already made lawfully his own? We are indebted to him for the Conservation of our Estates, but we before were ingaged to him for that of our Lives, and now neither the Greatness of our Obligations, nor that of his Glory, can admit of any further Addition. He spake these Words holding me in his Arms, and I answered him with all the Respect I owed to so great a King, and a King that was Father to Berenice and Orcondates. 'Tis your Majesty (said I) that reduces happy Arfaces to Terms of not being able sufficiently to acknowledge your Goodness, the Opportunities you have given him to ferve you do too largely recompence all that he has done, and that high Fortune to which you raise a Stranger, is infinitely above my wierit, and above my Hopes. Alter that Opinion if you have it, (replied the King) fuch Strangers as your felf, do quickly make themselves known over all the World, and as Scythia has nothing that is above you, believe its King posses nothing you may not hope for from his Affection. He accompanied these Words with new Endearments, and afterward permitted me to falute Prince Carthasis his Brother, Arsacomes, and many others that were attending on him. When I had received and returned the Civilities of the most considerable Persons of the Court, I, by the King's Appointment, retir'd to my former Lodgings, whither I was followed by a great number of the Courtiers, but they presently withdrew, to leave me at liberty to put off my Arms, and rest my felf, only Theodates staying with me in my Chamber. When I faw my felf free Master of my Actions, I fully testified my Friendship in the most tender Expressions of Kindness, and after having begun them afresh a thousand times, I asked him what Condition my Life was in, and conjured him to tell me truly whatfoever he judged my Love could defire of him. Theodates at this Demand appeared not so joyful as I had hoped, but keeping a ferious Countenance,

Countenance, from which I drew an ill Prefage; Sir, (faid he) the Account you are to receive of me would be very unwelcome, if in it you did not find a fweet Confolation, and if in the Perfecution the Princess undergoes you had not a powerful Occasion to understand the Greatness of her Affection; She has ever been unshaken to the Sollicitations of Arfacomes and of the Queen, who in fayour of her Brother has done him Offices to her, that are unworthy of her Quality. She hath spared neither Prayers nor Tears to move her, and when the faw they were all to no Purpose, and that by her Importunities she made her Brother but the more odious to the Princess, she took recourse to all the Power and Credit she has with the King; and by my Misfortune it is now fo great, that we may fay with Truth, as we find with Sorrow, That one Stratonice reigns now in Scythia, and that her Brother is by that means become almost the Soveraign of it.

The King by his last Actions has shewed signs of his Weakness, and of his Dependency upon that Woman; After he had long resisted, and contented himself with giving Arfacomes the first Rank in the Kingdom, without encouraging him to hope that she should be his Son-in-Law, that insolent Favourite, whom so many Preferments could not satisfy, because they glutted not his utmost Ambition, either thro' the violence of his Passion, or some other Cause, fell sick, and was brought almost to Extremity. Stratonice stirred not from his Bed-side, but made the King understand her Life depended also-

The King, who loved Arfacomes exceedingly, and who besides, by a Meanness of Spirit, which had not been observed in the rest of his Life, was become a Slave to his Sister, appeared very sensible of her Grief, and was excessively troubled for the Sickness of his Fa-

lutely upon her Brother's Recovery.

Vourite

ar,

our

all

OU

ne-dy

he

ra-

he

an

ds

at

aot

ſs,

lo

at

y

1-

as

11

1,

1

e

S

0

t

1

The Queen knowing her Power, made use of it very cunningly, and one Day when Arsacomes was extraordinary ill, Stratonice seign'd to be so too, and getting into her Bed, put the King into mortal Apprehensions of her Sickness; the next Day she seem'd to be a great deal worse,

worse, and by all her Actions made the King judge she regarded not her Life, fince that of Arfacomes was in The King fitting by her, expressing with most effectual Words how nearly her illness touched him, that crafty Princess, after having figh'd many times, to work upon him the more, Sir, (taid she) let us miserable Wretches die in Peace, and trouble not the Calm of your Mind, for a loss which needs must be but little considerable to you; it is just that Arfacomes perish, since he cannot love the Daughter of his King without being worthy of Death; and it is just that Stratonice die, both because the is uncapable to survive that dearest Brother, and because she is uncapable to survive the Loss of your Affection. Of my Affection, Madam, (replied the King) I protest to you by all the Gods, that it never was fo strong as now, and that it is so extremely encreased, as in comparison of my Love to you I do not at all love my felf. Ah! Sir, (answered the subtile Queen, putting an Handkerchief to her Eyes) if you honoured me now with the Affection you gave me heretofore, you would not fuffer that to die, which, next your felf, is dearest to me in all the World, without shewing some Marks of your Compassion.

She made a stop at these Words, and the King, who presently understood the drift of them, and who could not easily yield to what she desired, nor favour Arfacomes to the prejudice of his Daughter, remained without Reply, and fixing his Eyes upon the Ground, made the Queen see the Agitation of his Mind. She soon perceiv'd it, and kept Silence with him for a while, but within a little after, defiring to finish what she thought she had happily begun; No, Sir, (added she) for Gods sake, be not at all disquieted for my Consideration, nor use any Violence upon your Inclinations for a Person who cannot have deserv'd them; tho' I cannot feel the loss of them without dying, I will at least endure it without murmuring against you, and shall be able to put a difference between what was lawfully my own, and what I held merely by your Goodness. My Fortune was too high, and (if I dare fay so) too unjust, to believe it would be of long continuance; yet has it not fo blinded me, but

that

I

t

V

t

V

that I can behold the fall of it, as an Effect of your Juflice, rather than as an Effect of my ill Fate. Stratonice and Arfacomes had too lofty an Ambition, yet Stratonice had none but what it pleased your Majesty to give her, and Arfacomes dies for the Expiation of his; if I accompany him to the Grave, your Majesty ought not to be troubled at it, fince I shall only lose a Life which was but little dear to you, and toward the Confervation whereof you were unwilling to contribute any thing. The Queen, as she ended these Words, looked upon the King with the same Eyes that had so ardently enflam'd him, and at that moment fummon'd together all her most alluring Charms, with fuch a foveraign Power, that being prepoffessed already, he was not able to resist them. He lifted up his Eyes from the Ground, and turning them upon the Queen with a most amorous Gesture, Do not kill me with these unkind Words, (said he) nor wrong my Love any more with these Reproaches. I will do all for thee thou canst desire of me, dear Stratonice, and tho' I cannot consent to use a sudden Violence upon Berenice's Inclinations, I will command her to use Arfaces as a Prince whose Design I disapprove not, and I will favour thy Brother in his Passion as much as thou oughtest to wish.

The Queen appeared transported with Joy at this Promise of the King's, and setting forth all her most attractive Allurements to seduce him, before he went from her, she persuaded him to whatsoever she would. The Princess found the Essects of it the next Day, for the King commanded her to visit Arsacomes, and to look more savourably upon him than she had done formerly. Berenice received these Words as a Clap of Thunder, and was so extremely troubled at them, that she could not settle her self again all that Day; but the next Morning the King having met her in a Gallery, and drawing her aside to a Window, Well, Berenice, (said he) will you not visit Arsacomes with me, and have you not disposed your self to do that for him which I desired of you?

th

W

di

T

E

bi

fe

ad

me

da

ces

fuc

bo

The

wi

cor

The

of i

you

had

vel

long

We

Cro

of h

dam I w

Tice)

I'll i

fxir

The Princess was so surprized, that she stood without Reply at that Question, and the King having asked it again, and pressed her to declare her Intention, Sir, (said she) I did not understand your Majesty's Commands, and was so little prepared for them, that I still have much ado to apprehend your Meaning. I thought (answered the King) I had explain'd my Mind sufficiently, to leave you no Colour of being ignorant what I meant, but since I must clear it further to you, I mean, Berenice, that you should use Arsacomes better than you have done hitherto, and that you should consider him as a Prince whom I love, who loves you, and whom I account worthy to ferve you.

Ah! Sir, (interrupted the Princess) what a Change is this of yours, and what Proofs your Majesty desires of your Daughter's Obedience! I ask nothing of you (added the King) which you may not grant me without injuring your self; Arsacomes is a Prince as considerable by his Birth as by my Love to him, and by the Alliance I have contracted with his Family; and if there be any Dishonour in suffering his Assection, 'tis not upon you, Berenice, but upon me alone that it will totally

fall.

In short, enquire no more what my Intentions are, but belive I have ever loved you enough to bring nothing upon you that is either shameful or disadvantageous. left her with these Words, and she no sooner was retired into her Chamber to digest them, but she fell in a deadly Affliction, she had so much Repugnance to shew any fign of Complacency to the King's Defires, that she could not hear the bare Proposal of them without being transported: What, (said she, as Cyllenia has told me fince) shall Stratonice then triumph in this manner over Berenice? and shall I approve of her Brother's Temerity to shew that I am a Slave to her Power? No, Stratonice, you are not yet so absolute over me, and what Empire foever you have over the King, I shall always be able to differn his own Inclinations from yours, and in this unjust and severe Command one may easily know 'tis Stratonice speaks, and not the King my Father. The Obedience I owe to him alone cannot become so general, and

if I should endeavour to follow the Orders you have made him give me, that effect of a blind Obedience would not

now be in my Power.

I love as much as you can wish, and tho' I be insensible to Arsacemes, I have a just Sense of Arsaces's Merits. Alas! (pursued she a little after) my dear Arsaces, must I, while you are fighting for my Father, fight here against thee with so much Ingratitude? and must the Injury he would do thee, make me shed Tears while thou art shedding Blood, and perhaps thy own Blood for his Service? This Remembrance drew showers of Tears from her fair Eyes, which for a long time made her unable to say more, but when she had vented part of her Resentments, she sent for me, believing she might find some Consolation in

advising with me.

ı

0

f

t

e

1

Y

,

e

2

V

e

r

e

-

d

f

As foon as I came into her Chamber, the role to meet me, and taking a Handkerchief from her Eyes, Theodates, (faid she) now it is that all our Affection to Arfaces will be necessary, for while that poor Prince obtains fuch gallant Victories for the King, he ingratefully la-'Tis but too true, bours for his Ruin and for mine. Theodates, and I believe I shall sufficiently acquaint you with my Unhappiness, by telling you, that the King hath commanded me to love Arfacomes. How, Madam, (faid I) has the King commanded you to love Arfacomes? Yes, Theodates, (replied the Princess) and 'tis only because of that Misfortune that I desir'd your Company, and your Confolation. With that she told me all the King had faid to her, and by that Discourse put me into a marvellous Confusion. After I had shew'd it by a reasonable long Silence, I took the liberty to blame the King's Weakness and blind Affections, and then I deplor'd the Crosses I foresaw you would meet with by this Alteration of his Humour.

When I had a little recover'd my first Astonishment, fixing my Eyes upon the Princess's Face; and you, Madam, (said I) what will you do for Prince Artaxerxes? I will do all that he can hope for from me, (replied Berenice) and in spight of all the Obstacles that can happen, I'll never cease to love him, who loves me more than I deserve, and who for my sake hath abandoned all. After this

this Assurance, which I will receive for him, (answered 1) I do not think he will lament his Fortune, and provided you perfift in this good Resolution, I hope that his Return, Time, and the Prince your Brother's Liberty, will overcome all the Disasters you apprehend. I'll perfift in it to my Grave, (added the Princess) and all the strongest Considerations shall never be able to dissuade me from loving him while I have Breath. Alas, (purfued she) I am too powerfully obliged ever to dis-ingage my felf, and tho' my Arfaces were less lovely, tho' he were less great, tho' he were less valiant, I owe too much for what he has done for me, and I owe too much to him, who in my Affection alone finds a Confolation for all his Losses. In the mean time (continued she) it were fit we should give him Notice of my Discontent, to make him hasten his Return as much as possibly he can, and to affure him, that there is no Authority in the World fo powerful as to shake my Affection. At first I approv'd the Princess's Motion, but presently after we both judg'd it was not necessary to inform you of a Thing that could only trouble you, and whereof the Knowledge could ferve for nothing, being we were enough perfuaded that your Passion made you long for your Return, and that you would not defer it a Minute after the End of the The next Day the Princess was constrain'd to go with the King to Arfacomes, but tho' she came to his Bedfide, and that by the King's Command, she ask'd him how he did, it was impossible for her to dissemble her Repugnancy, or refolve to give him a favourable Look. Yet did Arfacomes find so much Contentment in that Visit, that he was half cured by it, and strengthening himself by the Hopes the Queen gave him, he recover'd his Health within a few Days after.

h

t

fe

fc

21

W

W

pe

po

m

W

an

w

mi

the

When he was well again, his Visits to the Princess were very frequent, and she was forc'd by the King's Command to endure some of them; but whensoever he entertained her with his Passion, she answered him with so great a Coldness, and shew'd him so many Tokens of her Aversion, that if he were not the most presumptuous Man alive, he would a thousand times have lost all the Hopes which the King's Favour and the Queen's Assistance

V.

ed

71-

nis

er-

he

de

ır-

ge

he

oo ch

for

re ke

to

fo

'd

d

ld

ld

at

at

he

90

d.

im

ner

k.

it,

elf

th

:ss

he

th

of

us

he

ce

ad

had given him; they are now upon these Terms, and itis not above two Days since I saw him come out of her Lodgings so ill satisfied, that I believe he stood in need of all the Queen's Endeavours to comfort him. The Princess has used all possible Means to obtain Permission once more to see the Prince her Brother, to impart her Discontents to him, and to make him know the Person of Arsaces, of whom, by reason of the Spies that were set to observe her, she could never speak any thing in her two former Visits; but she was not able to procure Leave of the King, and we easily judge that his Resusal is an Essect of Stratonice's Cunning, who strives to hinder that Communication, less it should fortify Berenice in her Aversion to Arsacomes, and because she in the Prince's Captivity, finds the Continuance of a Power, which his

Liberty might probably overthrow.

Theodates ended his Discourse on this Manner, and fruck me so with this News, that I could not recover it for a long while. 'Tis true, I found much Confolation in my Princess's Goodness, and esteem'd my felf the happiest Man in the World, that I had been able to oblige her to so perfect a Constancy; but I could not digest the King's Injustice, who would force her Inclinations for a Man whom I judg'd to be little worthy of her Love; and remembring the Services I had newly done him, I reproach'd his Ingratitude with Terms full of Refentment, as if he had been acquainted with my Passion, and as if he had known how much I was concern'd in what he did for Arfacomes. To the Sense of this Injury, I added the Fore-fight of those Pains and Difficulties, which this Constraint would cause us; and if I may be permitted to fay fo, some Fear likewise of Change in my Princess's Humour, who by the King's Authority might pollibly be brought to forget Part of her Inclinations to me. She'll pardon me this Apprehension, for indeed it was very hard for a young Princess, not supported by any Body, long to relist a sovereign Power, and against the King's Will to preserve an Assection toward me, which I had no ways deferv'd but by the Greatness of mine, and yet she carried her self (as you shall see by the Continuation of my Discourse) with a Constancy, VOL. IV. H

and with a Generolity worthy of her felf, and of the Prince her Brother. I, in that Conversation with Theo. dates, ask'd him a Thousand Questions touching my dear Brother, but he could rell me nothing of him, fave that he was strictly kept, that no Body was permitted to fee him; and that notwithstanding the Complaints of all the Scythians, who murmured aloud at the Restraint of their great Prince, the King appear'd more obdurate than ever. I hearken'd to this Discourse with a great deal of Grief: but after we had spent some Hours in it, and that I had made my felf ready to wait upon the King, we went to. gether to his Lodgings, where Theodates left me to go to my Princess, and to dispose her to give me a particular Audience. She was already prepared for it, and by giv. ing out that she was not very well, had freed herself from the ordinary Visits she was wont to receive, and lay upon her Bed, accompanied only with the Princess Theomiris and Cyllenia: I went to her Chamber as foon as I came out of the King's, where I had met the Queen, and by that Encounter had fav'd a Visit, which in Ceremony was to have been paid before that to my Princess.

Though she was to be seen but by very sew, it was not thought strange, that after so long an Absence, and in the Condition I then stood in the King's Favour, I should obtain that Privilege. When I came in to her, Theodates had led Theomiris into the Closet, and seeing my Princess come alone with Cyllenia to meet me, I cast my self at her Feet, and while I embrac'd her Knees, she threw her Arms about my Neck, and used all the modest Kindnesses to me I could desire of her. The Gods have brought you home according to my Desires, (said she) nor could they recompence the Sorrow your Absence hath

caufed in me, but by the Joy of your Return.

I have wish'd for you a Thousand Times, both for your own Interests, and for mine; and if your Presence would have been pleasing to me, your Assistance would not have been less necessary in the Persecutions I have endured. You have desended your self too well against them, (answer'd I, being ravish'd with those obliging Words) to have stood in any need of my Assistance, and you have been a better Champion for Arsaces, than Arsaces could

could in Reason desire. All my Blood, fair Berenice, is of too mean a Value to purchase the smallest Part of these Obligations; and though to requite them I should lay down a Thousand Lives, (if the Gods had given me fo many) I should still remain a Debtor to my Princess. In what I do for you, (added Berenice) I follow my own Inclinations, and my Gratitude, which equally oblige me to love you, nor did I labour less for Berenice than for Arfaces, when I refifted the King's unjust Commands. O Gods! (cried I with a transported Action) could I lawfully hope you would recompence my Losses with fuch extraordinary Bleffings, and did you referve me for this glorious Fortune, when you took away all that you had given me? I spake many other Words to this Purpose, and my Princess having taken a Seat, and commanded me to fit down by her, after she had ask'd me divers Questions concerning my Expedition, told me all that I had heard from Theodates, and told it me with an Action which secured me from all my Fears, and made me confidently to banish all my Apprehensions. O Gods! how sweet were her Promises to me, and with what incredible Raptures did I hear her express the Aversion she had to Arfacemes? Fear nothing, my dear Arfaces, (faid she) and if you will not offend me, suspect me not of the least Inconstancy; I know well enough to what Vertue and Obedience oblige me, to have hitherto preferv'd that Power over my felf, which I with Reason may keep. The King may well constrain me to receive Arfacomes's Visits, but he cannot constrain me to love him; and if he should be so weak as to desire I should marry him, I shall have Resolution enough to prefer Death before that unworthy Match. The Way to hinder it, lies open to us, faid I, and whenfoever you are too much importun'd by Arfacomes, I wear a Sword that will be able to deliver you from his Importunities; I will not fuffer that unequal Competitor to have too just an Advantage over me, and all the Authority he hath in Scythia shall not defend him from the Hands of a Rival, not altogether fo unworthy as he is of the Glory to ferve you. I brought forth these Words with a Tone, that made my Princess fear some Effect of my jealous Resentment, but she was defirous H 2

nft

S

d

1

r,

is at

eft

ve e)

th

for

ild

ing ind ices

uld

Part IV.

defirous to prevent it, and hindring me from faying more, You are too prudent, replied she, not to foresee the Ruin of your Design in such an Enterprize, nor can you come to any Violence against Arfacomes, without discovering to the King, and to the whole Court, what by fo many Reasons we are oblig'd to conceal. Do but depend upon the Assurances I give you, and never let us try the most dangerous Courses till the Extremity. You may dissemble as you have done hitherto, and husband the King's Affections so well, as to draw your Advantage from thence, when once the Time is feafonable for you, to declare your felf. In the Interim, we'll use our utmost Endeayours for my Brother's Liberty, and if we can obtain it. as he in meeting you, and in the Knowledge of your being alive, will find Causes of an inconceivable Joy, so you, in that ardent Affection which he justly bears you, will find all the Assistance, and all the Furtherance of your Intentions you can hope for. O Gods! (cried I. at this Remembrance) my dear Brother, must your Vertue, which is adored in all other Places, be fo ill underflood in your own Country? And can those admirable Qualities, which gain you Slaves and Idolaters over all the World, leave you Enemies in Scythia? If Darius, the Enemy of your Family could not know you without honouring and loving you as his own Son, is it possible you should be used as an Enemy by him that was the Author of your Birth? Then my Affection made me utter a great many refenting Words against the King's Cruelty, and after having confulted a long Time what we should do, or undertake for you, and having vainly contrived Expedients to fee you, it grew Night, which made me take my Leave of my Princess, and retire to my Lodging with Theodates. We spent the best Part of that Night in consulting of Means to let you hear from us, but the Notice my Princess had given me, that all your Guards were at the disposing of Stratonice and Arfacomes, and that therefore there was no Trust in them to be hoped for, put all my Designs out of Frame, and was the Cause we durst not think of hazarding a Letter through their Hands; indeed, the Princess at her second Visit, might perchance have watch'd an Opportunity to deliver you one

one her felf, without being observed, if she had thought on it aforehand to have writ; but then her Hope of procuring a greater Freedom to fee you, and talk with you in private, was the Cause of that Neglect, which she was not a little forry for afterward, and which she intended to have repair'd, if she could have obtain'd Leave to visit you once again; but finding no Possibility of that, I refolv'd in the End to speak to the King concerning you, and to imploy all the Credit I had with him to get the Liberty to see you, and for that Purpose I went to wait upon him the next Morning as foon as he was up; he neglected all the Company that was in the Room, to fayour me with exceeding kind Reception, which gave me a greater Confidence than I had before, and made me the bolder to attempt something for the Service of my dear Brother. We continued a while in a general Conversation, but when the King was ready, he took me by the Hand, and drawing me afide from all the Company, lead me to walk with him in a Gallery, which is near his Chamber. I was watching an Occasion to speak to him of the Prince his Son, when he himself began the Discourse, and in Terms full of Anger and Indignation, aggravated the Cause he had to hate him, and never more to have any Confidence in him. I hearken'd quietly as long as it pleased him to speak; but when I had let him vent Part of his Choler, and that by his Silence he shew'd that he expected to know something of my Opinion, Sir, faid I, if your Majesty would give me Leave to speak my Thoughts with a little Liberty, I really protest I would abuse it no further, than to represent to you what a true Zeal inspires me with.

The King looking upon me at these Words, and expressing by his Gesture that he expected the Continuation of my Discourse: Is it possible, Sir, pursued I, that that Son of yours, the most Great and the most Lovely of all the Princes in the World, whose Vertue found nothing but Adorers amongst his greatest Enemies, should not find some Remainder of Love, or at least of Compassion in the Heart of the King his Father? Have those Faults which a violent Love made him to commit, and for which he hath suffer'd so long, so sharp a Penance, choak'd all the Tenderness of Nature in

you, and banish'd the Knowledge you had of the admirable Qualities of that Son, whom the Gods gave unto Mankind as their most accomplish'd Workmanship? Where were there ano. ther King to be found, who would not redeem a Son like Oroondates, by the Lofs of all bis Dominions? And who, in Consideration of his Touth, and of his Passion, would not forgive an Offence, which he accompanied with a Thoufand great and miraculous Actions? Have not whole Tears of a firit and cruel Imprisonment punish'd a Prince of his Quality severely enough? Are not they that inspire this Rigour into your Majefty, and that follicit you to a Revenge, which falls only upon your self, satisfied with so long a Captivity: And if they love the Glory of Scythia, ought they not to endeavour to restere it its greatest and most illustrious Ornament? Pardon me, Sir, I befeech you, if in this Conceit I indifcreetly interest Persons, who, it may be, are considerable to you; but I feel my feif chlig'd by the Honour you do me, to put you in Mind, that their own Interest sets them on, and that they labour to prolong the Prince's Restraint, only to prolong their own Authority. Their Thoughts perhaps are yet more destructive to the Happiness of this Kingdom, and of your Majesty in particular; Time will give you Informations, to which you will lend more Credit than to my Words; but if you bearken to the Wiftes of all Scythia, and diftern the Counfel of your real Servants, from that of others who are swayed by their own particular Ends, you will consider Prince Oroondates as your Son, and those that would ruin bim in your Opinion, as Perfons not well affected to your Service.

The King would not suffer me to pass farther, but stopping me in this Part of my Discourse, Arfaces, said he, I know that thou art generous, and that the Report of some Vertue which appear'd in Oroondates in his earlier Years, makes you speak as you do in his Favour. It is true, he was born with Parts good enough, and by the Care I took in Breeding him, I made him a reasonable compleat Man; but all his good Inclinations are lost, and since he betray'd me, and betray'd himself, with so much Baseness and Meanness of Spirit, I cannot consider those Things that were good in him as other than so many Advantages which he has unworthily abused: If he had Valour, he should have employed it for

and

the Good of his Country, and for the Service of his Father, and of his King: If he had Handsomness and graceful Fashion, he ought to have made use of it for a more justifiable and a more glorious Conquest than that of Darius his Daughter, and of Alexander's Captive; and in short, if he had Ambition, he should have shewed it at the Head of an Army, like that of Alexander's, and according to the Rudiments I had given him, instead of wasting the Prime of his Life vilely and shamefully in

the Service of my Enemy.

These Words of the King's touch'd me so deeply, that I could not possibly retain a Sigh or two, and scarce was I able to keep my Tears from discovering how much I was concerned in that Discourse; I strove to diffemble it as well as I could, and looking upon the King with an unfatisfied Countenance, What, Sir, faid I, do you believe then that your Son has shamefully abased himself in serving the Daughter of Darius? And do you think that King held so inconsiderable a Rank amongst other Monarchs, that you look upon the Purpose your Son had to contract an Alliance with him, as a mean and unworthy Defign? I am not ignorant of Darius's Quality, replied the King, nor was it to the Defect of that I attributed Oroundates's Meanness of Spirit; but how Great soever he was, he was an Enemy, and my Enemy with a kind of Hatred, which no Consideration was able to reconcile. Ah! Sir, (added I, more nearly touch'd than before) Is it possible that the Missortunes of the House of Persia should not have mollified you, and that you should behold the Fall of it with the Eye of an Enemy? Hath not poor Davius, who was once the Greatest King in the World, soften'd your Resentments, by so lamentable a Death, and by the Loss of all his Family; and can you consider that sad Revolution of his Fortune as other than a dreadful Example of all Kings in general? No, Sir, you can no longer conserve against his Memory, and against what is yet remaining of his House, that Hatred which heretofore produced fuch fatal Effects between you; nor can you look upon the Assistance Oroundates gave him in his Misfortunes as an unpardonable Crime. His Love was the Cause of his first Faults; H 4

and these last Actions, which you accuse of so much Baseness, were inspired into him by meer Generosity. If Darius's Son were alive, he, if he were able, would repay you all the Services Darius received from Orcondates; he would not look upon you as his Father's Enemy, but as the Father of his dearest Friend; and if Love were joined to those Considerations, he would give you his whole Life; and Darius, if he were living, would easily pardon him that Offence. The King, troubled with this Discourse, would not suffer me to continue it. I do not rule my felf (faid he) by the Example of mine Enemies, and of those, who from the Beginning of their Empire have by all Manner of Ways endeavoured to invade that of my Ancestors. I never desired Peace in a War which they always began; and as my Hatred was more just and more lawfully grounded, 'tis not to be thought strange if it be of longer Continuance. I was infinitely afflitted to fee the King fo obdurate, but I thought it not fit to press him farther: So having walk'd half a fcore Steps without speaking, Sir, added I, Since your Majesty's Indignation will not suffer me to say any thing more in Behalf of the Prince your Son, be plcafed to do me a Favour that cannot be hurtful to your Service, and give me Leave to have the Honour to make him a Visit : That which I have heard spoken of him, may excuse this Curiofity, and there are few Perfons, in whom the Reputation of that Prince hath not begot a just Defire to fee him. If I were not bound by Oath, replied the King, I should easily grant your Request; but I have engag'd my felf before the Gods to refuse it to all the World. These last Words utterly stopp'd my Mouth, nor had I the Confidence to entertain him further upon that Subject. I left him within a while after, but I was To ill fatisfied with that Discourse, that it was easy for my Friends to observe it in my Face. I gave an Account of it to Theodates, who was afflicted with me at the little Propenfity we found in the King to love them that were of the Blood of Darius: I mis-doubted before, said I, that Fortune, the pitiless Enemy of our House, did but feign a Reconciliation with me, to make me the more sensible of her utmost Cruelties; and I perceive by this renewtenewing of my Misfortunes, that she is preparing something against me, worse, if it be possible, than all she has made me feel already. The Hopes she had given me by Orcondates's Return, find themselves most cruelly deceiv'd, and that which they make him suffer in his Person, is a Presage of what ere long shall suffer in mine. Take not an Alarm so soon (said Theodates to comfort me) but hope for better Usage from your Fortune than that you apprehend. It is true, the King hated the Person, and is still an Enemy to the Memory of Darius; but when he shall know that 'tis to his Son he is indebted for his Life, and for the Peace of his Kingdom, you shall see all his Resentments give Place, and

more due Acknowledgment.

t

e

r

t

d

e

e

e

n

r

By fuch like Discourse, Theodates strove to allay my Discontents, and the same Day having communicated them to my Princess, she by all Manner of Expressions gave me to understand, how great a Part she bore in them. I laid aside the Resolution I had taken to make my felf known to the King fo fuddenly as I intended, and to demand the Ailistance that was necessary for me to revenge Darius, to procure the Liberty of those that were remaining of his poor Family, to recover my Dominions, and to repair my Honour; finding that yet I had not Power enough over him, and that it was necesto dispose him by new and more considerable Services than those I had done him, to forget the Animosity he still kept against our House. In the Interim, I endeavoured by the Means of Theodates, and by all kind of Inventions, to corrupt the Guards of the Castle of Serey to obtain a Sight of the Prince, but they were always inexorable to my Entreaties, and immoveable to the Offers I caused to be made them. The King still looked upon me with his wonted Eye, and my Princess was ar favourable to me as I could wish, but I could not so well disguise my Inclinations to her, but that Arsacomes's Interest made him find Occasion by my frequent Visits, and by our long Conversations, to suspect something, and to redouble his Envy toward me; yet durst he not openly shew it, knowing my Credit in the Court was not inferior to his, and fearing to exasperate the Princess more: H and

more against him. But at that Time there happen'd a very strange Alteration in my Fortune; and now it is that I begin to enter into the Discourse of my most im-

portant Adventures.

Ten or Twelve Days were hardly passed since my Return, when one Morning as I was going out of my Chamber, I saw some of the King's Guards at my Door, who forbad me to stir forth. I turned toward their Captain, who was come into my Chamber, and whom I had received as one that came to visit me, and as I was going to ask him the Reason of what I saw, he clapt his Hand upon the Hilt of my Sword, and demanded it of me in the King's Name. I was so surprized at that Encounter, that he had taken it from my Side before I observed what he was about, and that Astonishment did without Doubt prevent a Resistance, wherein perhaps I might

have perished.

No fooner was I difarm'd, but I looked upon the Captain with a Countenance, and with an Action, that struck a Terror in him, and made him know, it was no trivial Enterprize he had performed in feizing upon me on that Manner: What, Cleobis, faid I, am I a Prisoner then to Day in the same Place where yesterday I was triumphant? Sir, answered he, the King has commanded me to fecure your Person, nor have I executed his Order without being very forry for it. Do you not know the Cause of your Commission, reply'd I? And will you not tell me for what Crime the Scythians can accuse him, whom but the other Day they called their Defender and Preferver? No, Sir, said the Captain, neither is the King wont to declare his Intentions to us in Employments of this Nature; I can only tell you; that yesternight after he was in Bed, he gave a long Audience to Stranger, who of late has been a Follower of Arfacomes, and that as foon as he was come out of the Chamber, I seceived this Command. Well, added I, I am bravely rewarded by the King of Scythia, and the Services I have done him, deferv'd this Recompence. Though I was flirred with a most violent Anger, I would not let It break forth into any sharper Expressions against the Father of Otoondates and Bevenice; and in the just Sense I had

I had of that Usage, I preserv'd a Respect which such

moving Reasons gave me toward him.

is

n-

e-

ny

or,

ir

I

as

is

ne

n-

ď

ut

ht

e

at

10

e

er

i-

d

r

e

t

1,

d

0

I

I

Thus did I fee my felf a Prisoner, where but the Day before I had appear'd with fo great Renown; and tho' this kind of Usage was something hard to a Prince, who knew no Condition in the World above his own, and who by Actions confiderable enough had deferved nothing less; yet was I fain to bear that Affliction without murmuring, and to bless what I began to suffer for Berenice. I studied at first to find what might be the Cause of my Imprisonment; but when Cleobis had told me of the King's Discourse with that Stranger, I immediately believed Arfaces was discovered to be Artaxerxes. This did not feem at all strange to me, and I knew very well I should have had much ado to be so long in Scytbia, without having my Face taken Notice of by some Person or other, who might have been in the Court of Persia, if the Rumor of my Death had not facilitated my Difguise, and cross'd the Opinion of those, who else might have believed they had seen me there. I underwent this Change of my Fortune patiently enough, and only begg'd of the Gods, that my Princess might not be entangled in my Ruin, the King's Severity giving me some Cause of Fear for her, by the Example I had before my Eyes of his Usage of the Prince his Son. Scarce had I had the Leisure to consider what Resolution I should take, when I faw him come into my Chamber, attended by those in whom he had greatest Confidence, and to whom he declared his most important Secrets, having left his Guards at the Door, that they might not be Witnesses of the Discourse he desired to have with me. I found not that Cheerfulness in his Face which he was wont to have when he saw me, and instead of that kind Reception I usually had from him, there was nothing in his Eyes and Countenance but Marks of his Anger and new Animohty.

I went to meet him at his Coming in, with an Action but very little troubled, and with my ordinary Respect, and having given him a Salute not much different from what he was wont to receive of me, he looking upon me with a fiery Eye, and with a Face kindled by a Pas-

fion which he was not well able to master, I come to visit you, said he, Sir Artaxerxes, and this Respect is a Beginning of what is due to the Knowledge of your Quality; the Ignorance of it has made me faulty toward you, but when I shall once have it confirm'd by your own Mouth, I will repair the Errors I have committed, by Usage more suitable to what I owe to the Prince of Persia. After these Words, I no longer had any Reason to doubt the Cause of my Imprisonment; and tho' in them I observed an extraordinary Sharpness, I was not terrify'd enough to disown the Blood of Darius. I judg'd that fuch a Baseness would render me unworthy of the Honour I had to be descended from him; and that all the Dangers I could apprehend after that Discovery, ought not to be sufficient to make me stoop to so shameful a Dissimulation. In this Belief, looking upon the King with Confidence enough, They that endeavour to ruin me in your Majesty's Thoughts, said I, have but small Knowledge of your Generolity, and of the little Love I bear to Life; but if it were a Thousand Times more dear to me than it is, and that I manifestly saw the Loss of it in this Confession, there is no Fear so powerful as to make me disavow the Honour I have to be of the Race of Darius. His Misfortunes, which ought to serve all Kings for an Example, have not taken any thing from him of his Dignity, nor from his of the Glory to be born of the first Monarch of all the Earth; if I did not declare it fooner, 'twas because I waited 'till Fortune should present me with Occasions to do you Services that might be confiderable enough to blot that Hatred out of your Mind which you have born my Family, and to make me discover that more handsomly, which I now only confirm to your Majesty, after the Knowledge you have of it already. Yes, Sir, I am Darius's Son, Fortune brought me into your Territories after she had made me to be taken from among the dead Bodies at the Battle of Selena: Your Vertue, your favourable Usage, and the Remembrance of what I ow'd to the Friendship of Oroondates, stay'd me here; and the Hope I had in your Generofity, and in the Support of my dear Brother, brought

me back again after the Loss of my nearest Friends, and

of my Dominions.

to

a

1-

1,

n

y

n

n

t

d

e

e

t

a Part of that Affection Orondates had received from Darius, and that against our general Enemy, I could not hope for a more fitting Sanctuary than in the Court of my Friend's Father, and of a King who had honoured me himself with his Affection. Nor did I only hope that King and that Friend would afford me a secure Retreat, but also their Assistance, to raise my self to the Throne again, to revenge the Death and Captivity of my Father, Mother, and Sisters, and to recover my Reputation. If this Considence in your Generosity be my Crime, I cannot deny, Sir, but I am truly criminal, and if this Knowledge has made me lose my Liberty, and caused the Change I observe in your Majesty, I will not disavow it, nor hide him from your Indignation,

who hath voluntarily exposed himself to it.

I uttered these Words with an Assuredness, which, as I believe, hindred the King from interrupting me before I had ended them; but when I had done speaking, he turned his flaming Eyes upon those that were with him, and then fetting them upon my Face with a furious Action, Is it true then, faid he, that you are Darius's Son, and that you are bold enough to make a Confession in my Presence, which cannot but be fatal to you amongst the Scythians? Is it true that you are the Son of my mortal and irreconcileable Enemy, of him who hath often dyed our Fields Red with the Blood of our Subjects, and with mine own, and who many Times brought Fire, Sword, and Desolation into my Kingdom, and instead of considering that the Gods have delivered you into my Hands to give me some Satisfaction for the Injuries I have receiv'd from you and yours, do you pretend to be protected and affifted by me? I was mov'd with this cruel Discourse; but I yet consider'd the Father of Berenice and Oroondates, and struggling against my Refentments to keep my felf within the Respect I ow'd him, It is true, Sir, replied I, I am the Son of him who was heretofore your Enemy; but that which I have done for you and yours, the Marks whereof are still fresh in the Heart

Heart of your Kingdom, and in the Limits of your Territories, and which I also bear in many Parts of my Body, may sufficiently tell you, that you have sew Friends have done you Services like those you have receiv'd from the Son of your Enemy. No, Sir, I do not believe you can yet hold him for your Enemy, who abandoned his own Interests for yours, and who, to the Prejudice of his Dominions, to the Prejudice of his Blood, nay, and even to the Prejudice of his Honour, fought for you and yours, while his Country was on Fire, and while his nearest Friends became a Prey to

the Fury of his Enemies.

I know not whether the King's Anger was then rifen of it felf to the Height, or that these Words (accompany'd with some Reproaches) drew him to Extremity of Rage; but howfoever it were, he then went beyond the Bounds of that Moderation which was befitting a Person of his Quality, and breaking forth with a Violence which put a Fear into all those that attended him, Ah! Impostor, cried he, dost thou think by thy Artifices to escape my just Indignation, and to disguise those pernicious Defigns which brought thee into Scythia? Thou camest to execute what thou hadst plotted with Oroondates in Persia, and 'tis for that End thou hast lived here unknown in my Kingdom; the Example of that Friend hath strengthen'd thee into thy wicked Intentions, and by thine own Confession thou art capable as he is of all Manner of Perfidiousness, after having betray'd thy nearest Kindred, and abandon'd thy Father in his utmost Calamities. O Gods! How deeply did these cruel and injurious Words pierce into my Soul? And how was the Grief I felt for those dear Friends renew'd, by that wrongful, bloody Reproach, of having betray'd them, and of having abandon'd them? Certainly it would be very hard to express it, and 'twill suffice me to tell you I lost part of my Reason, and part of my Understanding, and 'tis the Loss of them, dear Brother, that shall obtain your Pardon for what my Transport made me reply to him, whom Nature hath tied you to with so near a Relation. Ingrateful, barbarous King, said I, If thou hadft any Spark of Honour, or any Sense of Vertue,

Vertue, thou wouldst remember that thou hadst not now been alive but for him whom thou useft so unworthily, nor wouldst thou go about to blast the Reputation of Two Princes who have nothing to be asham'd of, but what the one receiv'd from thee, and which the other has done for thee. I cannot draw any Example from my Fore-Fathers of the Perfidiousness wherewith thou reproachest me, and that of his cannot corrupt the Vertue of Oroundates. Compleat thy Cruelties against him, to whom they shall henceforth be dearer than thy Friendship, and fince thou neither deservest such a Son as Oroundates, nor fuch a Friend as Artaxerxes, glut thy felf with the Remnant of the most Illustrious Blood in the World; and believe, that for all I am alone, and unarm'd, I could yet shed thine, if a stronger Consideration than any Respect to thee, did not with-hold me.

At these so bold, and perhaps so unlook'd for Words, the King stood as immoveable as a Statue; I know not what Reason hindred him from letting loose his Indignation instantly upon me, seeing he might very easily have caus'd me to be kill'd. But I could no longer endure his Presence, and as soon as ever I had done speaking I turn'd about, and went into my Closet, shutting

the Door after me.

ır

y

V

4

10

0

e

S

n

0

n

Behold, a very sudden Change, and a strange Revolution of my Fortune! The Day before I had been confidered among the Scythians, as he, who by the Greatness of his Credit was the only Man that could dispute for the first Place with Arfacomes, and then I saw my felf not only fallen from that Power, but had driven my Affairs to fuch Extremities, that in all Probability I was like to perish; yet the Fear of that touch'd me but a little : And as nothing but Berenice and Oroundates made me care for Life, so nothing but their Remembrance was able to disquiet me : I fear'd that the King was inform'd of my Love, and of my Princess's Favour toward me, as well as of my Quality, and this last Knowledge of his Rigour made me also astaid for the Destiny of Orcondates. These Apprehensions were then my sharpest Discontents, and if Love and Friendship had not united themselves with my Difasters to torment me, I had Courage enough, and

t

ŀ

t

I

ir

and was sufficiently inured to Misfortunes, to bear my Imprisonment with Patience. The King had been upon the very Point of letting his Wrath break forth immediately against me, and was so highly offended at my Words, that if he had not been as prudent a Politician. as he was a violent and rigorous Enemy, he would have made me find a sudden Death amongst the Javelins of his Guards; yet did he over-master himself, whether it were that he judg'd other Formalities necessary for the putting to Death of a Man of my Quality, or that he believ'd the Scythians lov'd me too well to suffer such a violent Execution without murmuring. Before he went out of my Chamber, he, by an Oath, which is inviolable among the Scythians, bound all those that were come in with him, to keep the Knowledge of my true Quality fecret; and inventing another Pretence for my being cast out of Favour, he kept the whole World in Ignorance of the true one. The Day was not half run out, when my Guards, leading me out of my Lodging, made me get into a Chariot, and having thut the Sides of it up close, removed me to a House that was the usual Place where Great Persons were wont to be imprisoned: There was I put, and kept with much Watchfulness and Severity. True it is, my Keepers were as civil to me as I could defire, without Hurt to themselves; and, remembring the Credit I had lately had amongst them, and how I had often made use of it in their Favour, they comply'd with me in all Things that could not ferve to the attaining of my Liberty. 'Twas by their Means I procured, that Criton and the Two Scythians Theodates had put to me, and who had accompanied me in my Journies, should be of the Number of those that were left to wait upon me: They had the Freedom to go out and in; but from the fecond Day they were fearch'd, which was the Cause I durst not venture any Letters by them, for fear of putting the Princess, and those in whom I trusted, into manifest Danger. The King at first had some Suspicion of Theodates; and knowing the near Friendship that was between us, he believed him not ignorant of my true Quality, nor of those Designs whereof he accused me, and was going to have clapt him up as well as me; but ny

on

i-

ny

ın,

ve

115

re

ng

he

e-

ny

ng

th t;

of

he

ny et

e,

re as

y. ld

ng

h

of

at

d

n

(e

of

0

n

e

,

,

Though

but within a while after, having asked him certain Questions about it, he found a great deal of Innocence in his Answers; and remembring the Fidelity wherewith he had ever ferved him, he gave over suspecting him, and believed that his Friendship to me was grounded upon some Obligations I had laid upon him: Yet did he refuse him Leave to visit me, and used all those so ill who dared to ask him, that no Body had the Boldness to speak to him of it any more. By this Order it came to pass, that I was many Days before I heard from my Princess, or from Theodates, and I pass'd them with an inconceivable Tediousness and Impatiency. 'Till then, I had not imparted any thing of my Love, or of my true Quality to Criton, nor to my Two Scythians, believing those Secrets so important as not to be trusted to any Man except Theodates; but they were made acquainted with my Birth, by the Discourse the King had with me, and I had already received fo great and fo certain Proofs of their Fidelity, in a Service of many Years, that tho' the Necessity of my Affairs had not obliged me to discover my felf to them, I thought I could no longer conceal any thing from them without being ungrateful. I laid my Heart therefore open to them, and that last Knowledge they had of me, having made them more respectful than before, they cast themselves at my Feet, and received that Proof of my Confidence in them with fuch a Zeal and fuch an Affection, as drew Tears from my Eyes, and made me find some Comfort in my Affliction: Yet durst I not give them any Message to my Princess; but they faw Theodates often, and not daring to bring any Letters from him, for fear of the Hazard they ran of being fearch'd, they told me by Word of Mouth, how extremely he was griev'd for my Misfortune, and how he had taken a Resolution, either to perish, or to find some Means to fee me, and do me Service; they also brought me Word from him, that my Princess took as deep an Interest in my Sufferings as I could defire; and that notwithstanding all the Endeavours she used to dissemble her Sadness, she could not hinder Part of it from appearing in her Face.

B

giv

WC

tha

to

tui

and

w

it

av

Fr

the

py

tha

2 1

(fa

cel

no

to.

of

per

lea

ble

Yo

no

do

fer

mo

aff

he

Ir

an

w

ma

me

W

ve

ou

ot

he

DO

Tho' I doubted not before of my Princes's Goodness, I was comforted by this News, and prepared my self with more Joy to undergo all the Miseries I was destined to for her sake; yet could I not, for all my Constancy, keep my self from bewailing my Captivity sometimes, but much less for the Danger that threatned me, and for the loss of that Favour to which I was raised, than for the Absence of my Princess; and when I complained of the King of Scythia's Cruelty and Ingratitude, I accused him not so much for having deprived me of my Liberty, as for having deprived me of the sight of Berenice.

My furthest Walk was limited within the Space of a Chamber, a Closet, and an outward Room, where Criton and my two Scythians lay. My Chamber had a Window that over-looked a scurvy Garden, but the Window had a double Iron Grate before it, and the Garden was enclosed with a very high Wall. One Night I was in my Bed, where my cruel Disquiets would not suffer me to Sleep, when in that still Silence I often heard a Noise at my Window, and hearkening attentively to it, I gueffed that it was caused by certain Stones which were thrown against the Iron Bars; I called Criton, who was affeep in the Ante-chamber, and having made him rife, I bad him open the Window. Scarce had he done so, when by help of the Moon, which then cast a dimfaint Light, he perceived a Man in the Garden; he, as soon as he heard the Noise of the Window, came near enough to be known by Criton for Prince Theodates; Criton no Sooner knew him, but he told me of it, and prefently I leaped out of Bed, with a Joy intermixed with Fear, by Reason of the Danger to which my Theodates exposed himself. As soon as I discerned him, I put forth my Head as far as the Grate would fuffer me, and raising my Voice as loud as I durst, for fear of waking my Guards, who were asleep in a Room beyond the Antechamber, My dear Friend, (said I) is it you? Yes, Sir, (answered he) it is even I, and if I have not the Liberty to entertain you at a nearer Distance, neither accuse the fear of Danger, nor the want of my Affection. It is too well known to me to do fo, (replied I) and you now give

V.

ess,

rith

to

icy,

and-

han

ned

ac-

my re-

f a

77-

n-

n-

en ·

25

er

4

it,

ch

10

m.

10

m

15

IF

h

give me a Proof of it, for which I, with all my Heart, would have dispensed with you; 'tis not without trouble that I enjoy this Happiness, and how dear soever you are to me, I had rather want it than fee you put your Fortune to so manifest a Hazard. I'll hazard it at any time, and my Life withal, (faid Theodates) to repay a part of what I owe you, and if need should require me to give it you without any Condition, you shall never see me avoid the Occasions. You are too generous in your Friendship (answered I) to be the Friend of Arfaces, and the Heavens ought to have given your Virtue a more hap-We had some other Words of Civility upon that Subject, but having put an End to them to fall into a more important Conversation, Well, dear Theodates, (faid I) how stands my Fortune, and what are my Princess's Thoughts in this Change of my Condition? Does not Fear, or some unjust Consideration of what she owes to her Father's Inclinations, make her abate fomething of the Affection she has promised me? Does she not repent her having look'd upon a miserable Man? Or, at least, does she not bear his Missortune with an Insensiblenefs, whereof I should never have suspected her? You have less Cause to do so than ever, (said Theodates) nor can you complain of her in this Occasion without doing an Act of Injustice, whereof you could never de-Her Thoughts are more passionate and ferve Pardon. more obliging to you than you ought to desire, and I can affure you, the stood in need of all her Courage to keep her felf from finking under her Discontent. Cyllenia and I receive Proofs which will not fuffer us to doubt of it, and you shall receive some your felf by this Letter, whereof I undertook the Delivery.

At these Words I selt a Joy, which for a sew Moments made me forget all my Afflictions, and calling Criton to me again, whom I had set to Watch near the Room where my Guards lay, we studied together for some Invention to draw up the Letter to us: We cut some of our Linen into narrow Pieces, and tying them one to another, made a String long enough to reach to Theodates; he took it by the end and tied the Letter to it, and I no sooner had got it into my Hands but I made Criton

light

light a Candle, and not fearing Theodates would take it ill, I read these welcome Words from my adored Princess.

The Princess Berenice to Prince Arfaces.

Friends, stretch not your Resentments, my dear Arsaces, so far as me, but believe my Condition cannot be good so long as yours is bad; I suffer because you are ill used, and I suffer the more because you suffer for my sake. Not that I bewail my Destiny, if you continue to love me; I shall never be unhappy if you be ever faithful, nor shall you ever be unhappy tunate if Berenice's Affection can contribute to your Felicity; all the Persecutions that rise up against us shall not be able to shake it, and the King of Scythia can shew no Cruelty to Arsacse, that will not equally be fatal to

Berenice.

B

pui

Any my

Fr. tha

hin

be

fro

Pr

*

"

"

"

"

"

"

"

"

*

"

"

-

"

In these sew Words, which I kissed a thousand times, I found so many Causes of Comfort, that I in some sort rejoic'd at my Imprisonment, which had afforded me the Occasion of receiving those sweet Confirmations of my Princess's Assection. This Consideration would have taken me up whole Hours, if I had not made a Conscience of abusing Theodates his Patience, who was waiting alone in the Garden, and who, for all he was a Prince, did me the same Offices I could have hop'd for from my meanest Servant. As soon as he was come close under my Window, putting my Head out as I had done before, Most obliging Prince, (said I) and the most generous Friend of all those that ever bore that Name, your Goodness puts

ke

red

my

ear

an-

use

if opy or-

our

bia lly

es,

ort

he

my

ve

n-

it-

5 2

for

ofe

ne

us

ess uts puts me into a Confusion which I am not able to express. Tis enough, (interrupted Theodates) reserve these Complements for others, and think now of sending the Princess an Answer. Since you will have it so, (replied I) I'll drive my Incivility to the utmost, and I know you will be so good as to pardon it, in Consideration of my Missortunes. With these Words I went from the Window, leaving my good Friend to walk alone in the Garden. The same Servants that had accompanied him, and that had brought the Ladder wherewith he had gotten over the Wall, staid for him in the next Street, and kept watch to hinder him from being surprized. Criton had found Means, from the beginning of my Imprisonment, to procure Ink and Paper from my Guards, and having given it me, I wrote to my Princess in these Terms:

Arfaces to the Princess Berenice.

" No, my dear Princess, I shall never be unfortunate so long as you remember me; and all that I " shall suffer for you, instead of afflicting me, shall be " accounted a most glorious Recompence. It was not " in the King's Power to deprive me of my Liberty, I " loft it when I faw you first; and by making me cease " to fee you, he can neitheir take it away, nor restore "it. Yet has he used all the Cruelty he could against " me, and not being able to rob me of my Princes's " Affection, he has robb'd me of her Sight, fince that " was a Thing within the limit of his Authority. " only in the want of it that my Imprisonment consists, " and being forbidden to see you, I should be as much a " Prisoner in the open Field as in the closest Dungeon. " Fear nothing therefore for me, dear Princess, fince (ex-" cept those that depend on you) this is the greatest Un-" happiness I can receive, and being secured by your " Promife of whatfoever I could apprehend, all that " our Enemies can do is not terrible enough to strike " fear into the Courage of Arfaces.

t

1

2

1

ŀ

1

t

1

1

t

h

h

F

n

M

n

g

a. fi

fe

h

in

de

b

T

ar

lo

B

W

to

W

W

ag Th

gu

When I had folded up this Letter, I tied it to the String, and going to the Window again, I let it down into Theodates's Hand, with Words full of Affection and Acknowledgment for the good Offices he did me. We had fome other Discourse touching what the King's Intentions might be against me, whereof Theodates told me he was as ignorant as I; yet could he not believe that King would come to Extremities against me, after the Services I had done to his Kingdom, and to his Person; and we both believ'd he would spin out my Imprisonment in length, to determine of it according to the Event of his Assairs. We had many Things to say to one another, but I fear'd lest Theodates should be surprized in so long a Visit, and so I forc'd him to go away, tho' he desir'd to have discoursed with me longer.

After that Night, I saw him and many others by the same Means, but never without bringing me Marks of my Princes's Remembrance, and 'twas by them I lessen'd the Wearisonness of my Imprisonment, which, after the Losses I had undergone, would not have been supportable but for those sweet Consolations. I learn'd by him how Arsacomes continued his Persecutions, and though I sound a Remedy against that Mischief, in the Knowledge of the little Fruit they reap'd, I saw great cause of Fear, when I heard they were approved by the King, and that insolent Man employ'd his Authority to acquire what he could not obtain by the Merit of his Persecutions.

fon.

m M

My Princess did me the Honour to write me divers Letters upon that Subject, and receiv'd a great many of mine about it; you will dispence with me if I repeat them not, for if I should tie my self punctually to a particular Recital, my Narration would be of an extraordinary Length. I had already been many Months in Prison, (the true Cause of it being known but to very sew, who being bound by Oath, never declared that Secret to any Body) during which, I at several times heard News from Theodates, which produced different Effects in me; The first was that of Zopirio's entring into Scythia, whose first Progress Theodates told me, and with it the Fright of

all the Scythians, upon the Report of Alexander's coming. I continued many Days without learning what General would be fent against those dreadful Enemies, tho' Theodates brought me Word, that all the Scythians petitioned the King for their Prince's Liberty, and cried aloud, that no other Body could be fet to oppose that Conqueror of all the Earth. The King, by the Counfel of the interessed Person, did long forbear to satisfy their Desires, but in the end, he found fo much Justice in them, or rather so little Security to himself and his, in the Election of another Commander, (he himself being already grown infirm with Years, and very unfit to undertake fuch an Enterprize) that he promised them what they had so earnestly long'd for, and resolved to put an End to that tedious and unjust Captivity for which all Scythia had much lamented. I was extremely everjoy'd when I heard this pleasing News by Theodates, and though my Friendship to my dear Brother was sufficient alone to make me so, yet I confess it was encreased by some little Mixture of Interest. I doubted not but I should still find the same Affection from him he had formerly shew'd me, and was confident, that in the Authority he was going to recover, I might hope for all the Support, and all the Assistance I could desire. Yet did I not think it fit he should so soon learn the Truth of my Affairs, for fear lest being but upon the point of getting again into his Father's good Opinion, the Endeavours he should use in favour of me might cast him into his Displeasure more deeply than before, and destroy a Fortune that was yet but weakly fettled. To prevent this Danger, I made Theodates swear he would do a Thing I should desire him, and after I had strongly engaged him, that there was no longer any Cause to doubt his Promise, I entreated him, Brother, that he would not make you acquainted with what he knew concerning me, till the End of the War to which you were going, because I was afraid that News would be enough to make you quit the Employment that was given you, which would certainly incense the King against you more than ever, and so utterly ruin you. Theodates made great Difficulty of granting me this Request, but he was so fast tied by his Oaths, (whereof the Scythians

. W.

the own and

We In-

that the

fon; nent

f his but

d to

the cs of len'd

por-

gh I

ing,

Per-

vers y of

par-

ordiison,

who

from The

hole ht of

all

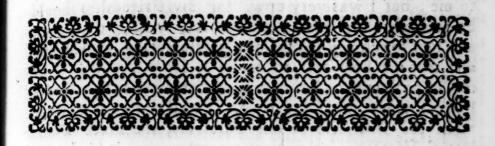
Part IV.

wa red

kne

Scythians have a particular Veneration) that after he had relisted a good while, he was fain in the End to confirm the Promise he had made me. This was the Cause, dear Brother, that hindred him from telling you my Adventures, during that Voyage in which he accompanied you, tho', as he has told me fince, it was not without great Violence upon his Inclinations. The Prince of Scythia interrupting Arfaces here, It is true, (faid he) Brother, Theodates did religiously observe what he had promised you. and still speaking to me of you as of Arsaces, he contented bimself with begetting a love in me toward you, by the Recital of your good Qualities, without ever making me suspect that you were Artaxerxes. Alas! I was far from imagining any fuch Tring, and neither Time, nor the continued Course of my Adventures, had been able to make me lose the Remembrance of my dear Brother's Death; it was always present to my Thoughts, and now I call to mind, that when it drew Tears from my Eyes, and made me fall into those Lamentations which I owed to so dear a Memory, Theodates would alledge Examples to make me believe, that by some frange Effect of Fortune you might still be alive, and that there had been Persons deceived after as great Probabilities as those which had persuaded us you were dead. While the Prince was speaking thus, Dinner was brought in, and those illustrious Persons made a pleasing Meal together; during which, their Discourse was partly concerning the marvellous Events Arfaces had recounted; and they had no fooner dined, but that Prince disposed himself to go on with the Remainder of his Story; the Company, who feared lest speaking so long might be hurtful to him in his present Condition, would have diffuaded him from continuing his Narration, but he told them he felt himfelf well enough to make an end of it without prejudice to his Health, and so having put them into their former Silence, he went on where he had left, on this manner.

The End of the Third BOOK.



The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK IV.



ad rm ar nou. eat na er, u, ed ciect

71ed be tys it

aes ne at as he nd

r; he ad go y, m

m n-

ce

er

HE Joy I had receiv'd, dear Brother, by the News which gave me hope of your Liberty was moderated by that which Theodates brought me the Day after, when 2 he told me the King had commanded him to accompany you in that Journey, with

Arfacomes, who was also to go along with you. This was a very fensible blow to me, and when I saw my felf reduc'd to lose the Consolation of that dear Friend, I knew not which way I should be able to bear it. Theodates seemed no less troubled at it than I was, and would VOL. IV. rather

rather have drawn the King's Anger upon himfelf, than have forfaken me in a Season when he was so necessary to me; but I was very unwilling my Friendship should be prejudicial to him, therefore reprefenting that I was not like to run any hazard of my Life during his Absence, and that the King seemed to be a little mollified since my Imprisonment, I after a long Contestation, persuaded him to leave me for a time. I will not entertain you with the Discourse of our Farewels, the Place would not suffer us to embrace one another, but it hindred us not from saying all that so tender an Affection as ours could make us utter at fuch a Parting. We took as good order in my Affairs, as the Hastiness of your Departure would permit; but it was fo fudden, that the next Day I was deprived of that dear Friend, who so generously assisted me to support the Burthen of my Missortunes. I heard in what manner the King had fetcht you out of Prison himself, and how he had made you to take Horse, without giving you the Liberty to come into the Town, or so much as to see the Princess your Sister, and I judg'd with some Probability, that knowing how earnestly you would interest your self on my behalf, he had us'd that Caution in your Departure, to keep you from all Knowledge of me; which I the rather believ'd because he appointed none of those to wait upon you in your Journey, who had been present at our last Conversation; and for Arfacomes if he knew who I was, as it was likely he did, fince it was by one of his Creatures I thought my felf to have been discovered, he wanted not many Reasons powerful enough to oblige him to Silence. I was left in a very gloomy Night, though it were lightened with some small Beam of Hope, in the Expectation of your Return, and sweetned with some Comfort by the going away of Arfacomes, who by that Means loft the Opportunity of making any Advantage of my Imprisonment, for the Furtherance of his Ptetensions to Berenice; 'tis true, the Queen his Sister supplied his Place well enough; and tormented that poor Princess in such a manner, that The was often constrained to make Complaints against her, by whose ill Usage she was driven beyond the Limits of her usual Moderation. I receiv'd no more of her Let-

t

n

fu

to

tr

Cabinet,

ters after Theodates's Departure, but Criton saw Cyllenia every Day, and learned News of her, which he still brought me by Word of Mouth. This was some ease to my Assistions for being deprived of so dear a Sight, yet not so great an one, but that they began to overwhelm me, and to put me into such a Condition as might have mov'd Pity even in the King of Scythia himself. I liv'd on this manner, or rather suffered a continual Death, when my Miseries receiv'd a bloody surcharge, and that which I had never apprehended.

Queen Stratonice finding with what Repugnance the Princess desended her self against her Brother's Assection, and imagining by the Opinion she had of him, that he was handsom enough to merit hers, believ'd that so strong a Resistance, both against his Persecutions, and against the King's Command, could not proceed from any Thing else but an Aversion caus'd by some other

Love.

Arfacomes had already told her his Suspicions of me, and had by that Advertisement oblig'd her to observe my Actions more heedfully than before; nor was she contented with that Care, but that she might be perfectly satisfied of the Truth, she by Presents and Promises, had corrupted one of the Princess's Maids, who had formerly belonged to her, and had so disposed her to a treacherous Compliance with her Intentions, that that disloyal Creature had no other Thought but to play the Spy upon her Mistress's Actions, and to seek Occasions of betraying her, as the Means to make her self a Fortune. The Princess trusted her not with the Secret of her Assection, neither did she mistrust her, but next to Cyllenia used her as savourably as any of the rest.

She observed the frequent Discourses between Criton and Cyllenia during my Imprisonment, and by telling the Queen of them confirm'd her in her Suspicions, and drew more considerable Gifts and Promises, that engaged her surther in her pernicious Design, which she found Means to essect when she least expected it. The Princess, contrary to the Request I had often made her, kept all my Letters, and not thinking she had any Body about her so salse as to seek to betray her, only lockt them up in a

T 2

Cabinet, with those other Things she valued most. One Day having shut her self up in her Closet with Cyllenia, after she had entertained her a while with the Grief which her Goodness made her sensible of for my Susserings, she called for her Cabinet, and sought to comfort her self in her Discontents, by her Reading of my Letters. She sat leaning upon a Table, where she read them over one aster another, but before she had done, she was surprized in that tedious Employment by Sleep, which insensibly

Role into her Eyes.

Cyllenia not taking Notice that her Mistress was fallen asleep, and being call'd away by some other Business, went very imprudently out of the Closet, shutting the Door but half way after her. While she was absent and the Princess asleep, that perfidious Creature who serv'd Stratonice in her Intention, and had fet her Mind upon nothing but her Treachery, came either by Chance, or out of Design into the Chamber, where she neither found the Princess nor any of her Companions; and then drawing near the Closet Door, which she saw half open, after The had pull'd it a little further, she thrust in her Head, and faw the Princess afleep upon the last Letter she was Reading, and by her all the rest, whereof some were That Sight made her guess instantly part of the Truth, and taking Courage by hope of the Recompence The expected, she grew so bold as to go into the Closet, and to steal softly to the Table, where seeing that her Mistress wakened not, she took four of my Letters, from among a score of others, and putting them up in haste, went out again not making any Noise, and passed thro' the Chamber without meeting any Body that could difcover her. Within a while after, Cyllenia being rezurned, and Berenice awake, she gave her the Cabinet to Iet away, not perceiving the Theft, by reason of the number of Letters. The Maid was no sooner in a Place where she could look upon the Prey, but she presently cast her Eyes upon it, and in the first Words she read, found all that was defired of her. She delayed not a Minute to go to Stratonice's Lodgings, and having eafily obtained a particular Audience, delivered her the Letters the had stollen: As foon as Stratonice had read one of them,

them, she saw her self but too much confirm'd in her Opinion, and having in the rest found more than she wished for her Brother's Satisfaction, was transported with Anger, and went sull of Resentment into the King's Chamber, where she made her reruel Accusation to him, and gave him those Witnesses that were to convince us. The King having formerly received many Letters from me, and was so well acquainted with my Hand, that it was easy for him to know it at the first sight. The Astonishment of Astaon at the sudden Alteration of his Shape, was not to be equall'd to that of the King of scythia, at the sight of my Letters, nor can I represent what a Consusion seiz'd on him, when in the first he open'd, he found these Words:

Arfaces to the Princess Berenice.

I Should have been dead, fair Princess, but for the sweet Consolations you afford my Miseries, and my Enemies had triumphed over my Life as soon as my Liberty, if they could have triumphed over your Constancy. But can I have any Reason to complain of them, since in the Design of ruining me, they raise my Fortune; and since they seem to have deprived me of my Princess's Sight, only to give me the Occasions of knowing her Affection? This Happiness is infinitely above all my Missortunes, and for a Gain of so great Importance, my greatest Losses are inconsiderable.

O Gods! (cried the King as he made an end of Reading this Letter) with what kind of Affection will you overwhelm me, and by what Actions have I so highly incensed you, that you should arm my ingrateful Family against my Repose, and against my Reputation? Ah! Berenice, soolish Berenice, whom I never suspected of such Lightness, and of such a Persidiousness, by what I 3

Usage have I given thee Cause to betray me, and by what Punishments canst thou be able to blot out the Offence thou hast committed against me? Having said thus, he open'd another Letter, in which, with a like Astonishment, he read these Words:

Arsaces to the Princess Berenice.

Y Sorrows are redoubled by the Knowledge of yours, and I am less sensible of my own Miseries, than of the Persecutions you suffer from that insolent Brother, and his cruel Sister; but pardon me, dear Princess, if I cannot be totally afflicted at them, nor think with Trouble of the Assaults you receive, without looking with Joy upon the generous Resistance you make in favour of me; my Advantages thereby are too great to lose the Remembrance of them utterly, and if I had not had an indiscreet Rival, and a troublesom Enemy, I should not so soon have known the Constancy of my adored Princess.

The King was so transported at the Reading of these, that he had not Patience to read the other Letters, but the Queen open'd them in his Presence, and made him also hear these Words in the next:

Arsaces to the Princess Berenice.

Have been told what past last Night in your Chamber, and what cruel Words the King spoke in savour of my Rival; you heard them, most lovely Princes, without changing your Resolution, and being all made up of Goodness and Generosity, are still willing

to suffer for him whose most cruel Sufferings cannot at all merit the least of yours; there is no Justice in it, fair Princess; but though there were a great deal less, it is impossible for me to condemn you; I confess I slove my self too well, since I desire my own Advantage to the prejudice of your Repose, but I do it only because I am yours, and if I should cease to be so, I protest to you, I would also cease to love my self.

Ah! Suborner, (cried the King) art thou not content with having employed thy Subtilty in broaching thy faithless Practices in my Kingdom, without making use of it to seduce my own House against me; and couldst thou not satisfy thy self with spreading thy Poison among the Scythians, without insecting also the Royal Family? Let's see, (continued he, taking the last Letter out of the Queen's Hand) let's see the rest of his persidious Designs, and let us in the Continuation of his Crimes, find evident Matter for our Revenge. Saying thus, he cast his Eyes upon it, and saw that it was written in these Terms:

Arfaces to the Princess Berenice.

AM not able to represent with what an Excess of Joy I heard the King's Intention to set our dear Brother at Liberty. This Contentment (dearest Princess) is both beyond Expression, and Imagination; and though by the End of his Captivity I hope for that of my Afflictions, I protest that our Interests make the smallest part of my Joy, and that as that Brother is infinitely dearer to me than my self, I look upon his Happiness and his Advantages with a great deal more Satisfaction than mine own. Not that I can have quite forgotten them, (fair Princess) but I give them up absolutely to my dear Brother, since I cannot think of his Liberty, without hoping thereby for the Establishment of my Fortune.

Thy Hopes are vain, (faid the King, as he made an end of Reading these Words) thy Hopes are vain, false Arsaces, diffembling Artanemes, and tho' by thy disloyal Practices thou corruptest my Subjects, and armest mine own Children against me, know, thou shalt reap but small Advantage by it, and shalt profit but little either by the Infidelity of Oroondates, or by the Weakness of Berenice. As he spoke these Words, he walked about the Chamber with fo furious an Action, that the Queen did not dare to look upon him, and began already to repent that she had put him into so violent a Rage. Berenice, (said he) Berenice has betray'd me, and that Daugh. ter whom I had brought up with fo much Care, and in whom I thought I had found fo many Signs of dutiful Obedience, and of a perfect Virtue, does not only love a Man without my Approbation, but gives her felf over (faithless Girl as she is) to the Love of my mortal and irreconcileable Enemy.

This Thought transported him with Fury; and prefently after, I'll punish her (continued he) in such a manner as shall serve for an Example to all that are of her Condition, and shall teach all Royal Families the Heinousness of such an Infidelity against a Father, and against a King. With these Words, not being able to master his Anger, he fent for the Princess, and at the same time having learn'd in what Place she us'd to fet the Box where any Letters were, he gave his Guards order to bring it him, and to take it by Force if there were any Difficulty

made of delivering it.

Berenice had no fooner received the King's Command, when being ignorant of her Destiny, she went to wait upon him in his Chamber, but scarce was she come in, when she read her Misfortune in his Face; and as she was commonly in an Apprehension of what then had happen'd, she instantly found her Condemnation in her Father's Looks. O Gods! How infinitely was she furprized, when instead of the kind Welcome she was wont to receive from him, the faw herfelf melt with fo terrible an Action, as might have daunted the most fearless Persons. He had still my last Letter in his Hand, the

th

th

K

di

W

at

no

of

fid

Inf

thy

wh

mi

rou

a C

See

of i

tho

and

of t

mar

Dif

Equ

dive

at th

own

Wor

stanc

fall :

his A

lified

with

Eyes

Crue

fofter

a Co

them

thou

me to

turn'

the others lay open upon the Table, and presently after they brought in the Cabinet in which were all the rest.

At that Sight alone she seemed half dead, and the King having beheld her awhile in that Trouble which did absolutely convince her, without being able to find Words capable to express his Indignation, broke forth at last in such a Manner, that a Clap of Thunder could not have struck such a Terror into the affrighted Heart of that poor Princess. Thou wicked, ingrateful, perfidious Creature, (said he,) or rather, thou Monster of Infidelity and Ingratitude, behold the gallant Marks of thy Vertue; thou art not only convicted of an Affection which dishonours thee, and which fixes an eternal Blemish upon thy Reputation, but also of holding a treacherous Intelligence with my mortal Enemies, or rather of a Conspiracy against thy Father, and against thy King: See here, fee the brave Letters of Darius's Son, and brag of having made him triumph over my whole Family, as thou wouldest have made him do over my Dominions, and perhaps over my very Life. Was it then in Favour of this Lover, that thou fo stiffly didst oppose my Command? And didst thou persist in that Pride, and that Disdain of a Birth inferior to thine, only to feek for an Equality in the Remnants of Darius's Blood, and in this divested Prince, who by his horrible Practices, would at the Cost of our House, have repaired the Losses of his own? The poor Princess, at this Torrent of cruel Words, was ready to lose her Senses, and her Understanding; and all she was able to do, was to let her self fall at the King's Feet, where she endeavour'd to appeare his Anger by a Stream of Tears, which would have mollified any other Heart but his. His was not at all mov'd with them, but thrusting back this poor Princess, with Eyes sparkling with Wrath, and with an Action full of Cruelty. Think not, said he, by thy deceitful Tears to soften my just Resentments; since thou joinest thy felf in a Confederacy with my Enemies to betray me, thou with them shalt bear the Reward of thy Treachery; and since thou declarest thy self to be my Enemy, thou shalt know me to be thine; all my Thoughts of Love, are now turn'd into Thoughts of Hatred against thee; and as thou IS

hast hitherto found me an indulgent Father, so shalt thou now see me as severe an Enemy. I'll take an Order to cross thy persidious Designs; and since Heaven hath discover'd them to me, to thy eternal Shame and Consussion, I'll make whatever you had prepared against me, fall upon thy self, and upon thy salfe Suborner. Let him not so soon rejoice at the Advantages he has won upon my House; I hope they shall benefit him but little, and I shall be in a Condition to satisfy my self for all the

Injuries he has done me.

The King accompanied these Words with a whole Heap of Reproaches, which it would be hard for me to repeat; and this poor Princess was so troubled at them, that she never had the Confidence to open her Mouth in her own Justification. Her Silence perfected her Condemnation in the King's Thoughts; and after he had further aggravated her Griefs by many bitter Words, he commanded her to be gone out of his Presence, and to retire to her Chamber, which was to be her Prison. You tremble still at this Remembrance, Madam, (pursu'd Arfaces, turning toward Berenice,) and in your Face I still fee the Marks of the Fright you were in at that Encounter; truly the Cause was sufficient, and when I heard the Relation of it, the Apprehensions I fell into for you, came but little short of yours. Yet did not I hear it till fome few Days after, but that very Day my Servants were forbidden to ftir any more out of Prison, and were presently deprived of that little Liberty which till then had been permitted them.

I will not tell you, Brother, what Berenice's Thoughts were, feeing herfelf exposed to the Anger of a Father, whose pitiless Nature was not unknown to her; you are not ignorant that she is of a very gentle Humour, and such an one as was no way able to resist those violent Assaults. The Consuston she was in, seeing her Assection discovered, and her Fear of the King's Threats, tormented her not a little; but she has had the Goodness to consess to me since, (and will pardon me if I tell it you) that the Apprehension of my Danger made the greatest Part of all her Sufferings, not doubting but that the Kings

Si

bi

Se

en

th

th

in the Violence of his Anger, would fly to Extremities

against me.

7.

U

to

th

u-

e,

m

on

nd

he

le

to

n,

n-

ad

he

to

n.

ď

I

n-

rd

u,

ill

its ere

en

nts

er,

re

nd

ent

on

ed

ess

nat

art 1g,

in

This Fear, which was not groundless, could not fettle it self in her Heart, without a most sensible Affliction; and though she had Cause enough to lament for her own Captivity, feeing the was a Prisoner herself, and confin'd to the Limits of her Chamber, yet did she to that Confideration, add also that of Arfaces's Ruin, and was excessively grieved for fear of seeing a Prince perish, (and perish by her Occasion) who had given himself wholly to her, and who by the Endeavours of his Services, had merited some Part in her Affection. These indeed were lawful Apprehensions, but they would have been much greater, if she had been of the King's Counsel, and had perfectly known his final Resolution. Truly it was a stranger one than I expected, and you will not only difapprove it, Brother, but will also be astonish'd at it, and if you please will pardon me all those Words which a just Sense thereof may make me utter in the Profecution of my Discourse.

I was in my Chamber with Criten, where were also Theocles and Hyander, my Two faithful Scythian Servants, when I saw one of those that commanded my Guards come in, sollowed by Five or Six of his Men, in a Manner that was something extraordinary: He brought a Cup in his Right Hand, and a Dagger in his Left. His Countenance was altered by the Business he had undertaken, and all things about him contributed to make me know his Errand: I was surprized at this Encounter, and guess'd, though with some Repugnance, the Truth of his

Commission.

Yet did I give him Time to tell me what it was, and he trembling, and stammering, at last got out these Words; Sir, (faid he) the King is resolved that you must dye; but the Consideration he has of your Person, and of the Services you have done this State, will not suffer him to employ the Hands of any of his Subjects to do that Office; therefore he leaves it to your own Choice, to take either this Ponyard, or this Poison, for the Execution of his Will.

Ahl

of

H

0

D

te

fa

ca

(

hath

of

u

Si

ar

to

th

ar

of

th

Ah! Brother, (cry'd out Prince Orondates, at this Part of Arfaces's Discourse,) What Prodigies are these you tell me, and what Shame will you have me suffer, for being born of a more cruel and a more barbarous Monster, than any that Africk ever bred! Oh thou inhuman Tyger, I disavow thee, and since thou doest so little consider, both the chiefest Blood in all the World, and the Person that ought to be most dear, and most considerable to thee; I account my Birth more vile and shameful, than if I had receiv'd it from the basest Dregs of the People. Orondates, transported by his Resentment, would have gone on with his Investive, if Arsaces had not hindred him by

profecuting his Story on this Manner:

I confess, Brother, I was as much surpriz'd as you are at this cruel Proposition, for though I began to be acquainted with the King's Humour, and that I had some Reason to look for some ill Usage, I could never have believed he would have run to that Extremity against a Prince of my Quality, and a Prince who had ferv'd him both in his Affairs, and in his own Person. And indeed I testified my Astonishment by a Silence, which perchance made these Guards think it was caus'd by the Fear of Death. True it is, I had ceas'd to desire it, as well by Reason of the Proofs I receiv'd of my Princes's Affection, as of the Hopes I had in your Assistance; and that if my Life (which the Sweetness of these Hopes began to make much dearer to me than it was before) could be preferv'd without doing an unworthy Action, I did not disdain to lay hold of the Occasion. Yet was it not so much the Fear of losing it, as the Horror of that Usage, together with Despite and Amazement, that caus'd the Greatness of my Confusion. But as great as it was, I quickly recovered my felf, and looking upon that fatal Messenger with an Action that utterly took away the little Courage he had left: Is it possible, said I, the King should have given you this Commission against 2 Prince whose Birth is known to him, and against 2 Prince to whom he owes his Life and the Peace of his Dominions? 'Twas he himself that gave it me, (replied the Man) but I took it not without Repugnance, yet am I oblig'd to obey his Orders, and punctually to exe-

cute his Commands. What, faid I, you who are one of the very Scythians, who have often feen me at the Head of your Armies, securing your Quietness by the Loss of my own Blood, are you resolved to obey his Orders, and to execute his Commands? Yes Sir, (anfwered that barbarous Fellow) and if after the Choice I have offer'd you, your Hand refuse to perform his Sentence, mine must become the Instrument to supply that Defect. I'll fave it that Labour, (reply'd I with a Countenance far more resolute than his) and Death is too familiar to me, to borrow that from thy Hands, which I can eafily compass with mine own: Give me that Dagger, (continued I, putting forth my Hand) the other kind of Death would little become the Life of Arfaces, and he has been prodigal enough of his Blood for thee and all thy Country-men, to make thee believe he can himself pour forth the Remainder of it, to fatisfy the Ingratitude

of the King of Scythia.

As I ended these Words, I took the Dagger from his Hand, but 'twas with an Intention very different from his; and as foon as ever I had hold of it, I lifted up my Arm, and instead of striking my own Breast, stabb'd it up to the Hilt in his. Scarce had I pull'd it out again, all hot and bloody, but inftantly I plung'd it into the Body of his nearest Companion, who by reason of the Suddenness of my Action had not Time to prevent it; and then immediately taking away his Sword, I began to dispute my Life against the rest. I might perhaps have perish'd, being unarm'd as I was, but I was furiously seconded by Criton, who had gotten up the Sword of the first, and by my Two Scythians, who being refolv'd to die with me, laid hold of the Swords and Javelins of those they saw fall, and plac'd themselves by my Side with a marvellous Courage. By their Assistance, I was quickly deliver'd from my Enemies, who were no better arm'd than we, and the last of them was turning his Back to fave himself in the Hall, where he had left more of his Companions; when I saw them come to his Relief, I was fo heated, that the Number of my Enemies frighted me but little; but they were so terrify'd themselves by the Death of their Fellows, and by the Resoluteness where-

wherewith we came upon them, that they did not what they might have done, to revenge their Companions, and to oppose my Passage. True it is, the Knowledge I had that this was the only Way for my Safety, and for my Revenge, and my Defire to fell a Life at the dearest Rate, which they fo unworthily would have taken away, made me do Things beyond my Strength, and I gave but few Blows that dispatch'd not an Enemy out of the Fight, Criton and my Two Soythians affifted me fo valiantly, that they laid Five or Six of them at their Feet, and the rest were so posses'd with Fear, that they left the Passage, and the Door open to me. They followed us down Stairs, but very coldly, and those that came in our Way, to hinder our going out, felt such Effects either of our Courage, or of our Despair, that the last of them were constrain'd to open the outermost Gate, to seek their Safety in the Town. We rush'd out after them without Delay, and came into the Street all bloody, and in a Posture that might have caus'd Terror in the most undaunted Persons. My Guards cry'd out in the Streets, and call'd for Help in the King's Name; their Cries drew a great many People together, but the Sight of us put them to a Stand; and when I faw them waver in the Refolution they should take, People of Medon, said I, for you I have often given the better Part of my Blood, and will you favour my Enemies in a base and cruel Assassinate? Or rather, will you fee him murther'd by traiterous, ingrateful Wretches, who at your Head has both fought and conquer'd for you? I am your General, I am your Fellow-Soldier Arfaces, the very Man to whom you fo voluntarily submitted your selves, and the very Man whom you have followed in War with fo much Affection.

As I spake these Words, I open'd my Way with my Sword among those Enemies I still had lest, and they wrought such an Essect upon the People, that whether it were that my Face representing yet some Idea of that which had commanded them, stirr'd up some Remainders of Respect toward me, or that the Cruelty and Injustice of the Usage which was shew'd me, caus'd some Horror and Aversion in them, or that they had still preserv'd some Remnant of that Love which they had formerly

porn

born me, they never stirred to do me any Hurt; nay, and there were many among them, who, to facilitate my Retreat, pester'd my Enemies, and clear'd my Passage as much as possibly they could. They would have done more for my Sasety, if they had dared, but I made such Use of those Proofs of their good Will, that I got a great deal of Ground toward the City Gate, and kept my Enemies still out of the reach of my Sword. All this Resistance, and all this Favour of the Scythians did indeed deser my Death, but it was not sufficient to have hindered it, without Heaven's particular Assistance. The News of this Adventure was already carried to the King, and there was no doubt but he would soon send Troops

against me.

nat

ind

nad

my

te,

ay,

out

ht.

nat

est

ze,

vn

y,

ur

re

ir

h-

a

1-

s,

N

It

r

I was a-foot, without other Arms fave my Sword, wounded with some light Hurts; but those that accompanied me had few parts of their Bodies free, and poor Hyander one of my most faithful Scythians, after he had done Actions worthy of eternal Memory, fell dead by me, leaving his Fellow in a Condition little different from his. I already faw more Soldiers coming to the Relief of their Companions, and in short, I saw evident Death before my Eyes, fo that what Refolution foever I had taken to fell my Life as dearly as I could, I should certainly have lost it, if the Gods had not fent me a miraculous Succour; I call it miraculous, because in the conjuncture of it, there was something very extraordinary, which made me observe their particular Care of my Safety. I was striving (weary and wounded as I was) to prolong my Destiny, when I saw fifteen or twenty Horsemen come up to me, at the Head of whom I knew my dear Theodates; Theodates who I thought had been in the Prince's Army, who was then coming into the Town, or rather who was then fent thither by the Heavens, for my Relief. Before he came to us he had heard fome Rumour of that Adventure at his arrival, and his Eyes then telling him the Truth of it, he never flood confidering what Refolution he should take, but galloping up with his Sword drawn, he did so scatter those that were before me, that he had a free and open Passage. Courage valiant Arfaces, (cried he) we must escape, and Theodates muit

Part IV.
or perish
but as he

to

C

b

tı

ti

(d

n

b

le

ti

n

tl

k

n

0

P

G

Office

must either bring you off from this Danger, or perish with you. He gave me not leisure to reply, but as he spake those Words, made two or three of his Men alight, and offer'd me their Horses: For all I was so wounded, I got reasonably lightly upon the first, Criton took another, but poor Theocles's Strength fail'd him, and at that very moment, his Life for fook him; and having stayed but just as long as it was necessary to me. The Death of these two faithful Servants would have been a great Affliction to me, if I had then been in a Condition to be as sensible of it as I should have been at another time. As foon as I was on Horseback, I believed my felf out of Danger, and trampling those under my Horses Feet who would have opposed my Passage, I ran with Theodates and his Men to the nearest Gate. We came thither just as the King fent an Order to have it shut, and a Soldier was thrusting out his Arm for that Purpose, when giving him a good flash with my Sword I made him let go his hold, and with the shock of our Horses overturning those that were in our Way, we got out of the Town, and took toward the Field with our utmost speed. The Swiftness of our Flight carried us off without further Difficulty; and before those whom the King sent to purfue us were got on Horfeback, we were already above fifty Furlongs from the Town. Then we were favour'd by the Night, which presently overtook us, and leaving the Highways, we rode cross the Field, and in the dark toward those great Forests that are about three or four hundred Furlongs from Medon. As foon as Theodates thought us enough at liberty to converse, he suffered me to embrace him, and give him Thanks for what he had done toward my Escape. Never were more ardent nor more tender Endearments us'd between two Friends; and tho' I had not lov'd Theodates fo well as I did, yet I should have been the most ungrateful Man in the World, if fuch a Service as that I had newly receiv'd, had not made me absolutely his. My dear Deliverer (said I) or rather the Genius of Arfaces's Life and Fortune, must you needs happen to be, or rather must you appear by Miracle in all Places where you are necessary to my Safety, and must I never find an Occasion to requite you with an

h

ne

t,

)-

at

ıt

of

f-

e

S

f

0

d

S

Office of the like Nature. I am so extremely engaged to you already, (replied the affectionate Theodates) that you have no Cause at all to wish me more oblig'd; and I much more justly am indebted to you, for a Life which

shall ever be readily laid down for yours.

We accompanied these Words, and many others of the fame Stile, with an infinite number of most dear Embraces; and when we had given Truce to them a little, we began to ask one another concerning our mutual Affairs. I presently questioned Theodates about the Prince my Brother, and about the Occasion of his going to Isedon; but he would tell me nothing, till he had heard my last Adventures, and the Cause of the Condition he had found me in. I told him all I knew, and he at that Relation trembled, and detefted the King's Cruelty and Ingratitude, in Terms which gave me new Affurances of his hatred to Vice, and of the Affection he bore me. When I had given him that Account, he fatisfied me in what I defired to know of him, and made me the Recital of the Battel you had won against Zopirio, with some other of your particular Actions, which fill'd me with Joy and Admiration, and then coming to the Cause of his Departure from the Army: My Impatiency to fee you again, (continued he) and the perpetual Apprehensions I was in for you, made me return toward Isedon; but I wanted not another Pretence, and some Contestations that passed between Arsacomes and me in matter of Command, furnished me with one specious enough, to ask the Prince's leave to come away. Not but that I was very much troubled to leave him, and had a defire to share in the Glory of what he had yet to do; but as often as I remembred that I had left you a Prisoner, and exposed to the Anger of a Prince, whose Humour was well enough known to me, I fell into Disquiets that would not suffer me to take any Rest. I even repented me that I had obey'd the King's Orders, and that I had forfaken you in a Condition wherein my Services were most necessary to you. I also found a great deal of Constraint in the Oath you had exacted from me, and not being able to tell the Prince the Truth till the End of the War, I on the other fide could not endure to leave him in that Ignorance at

B

pi

CC

TI

0

y

W The de

it

of

it

be

W

an

of

fir

it,

to of

vi

ge

te

ke to co I

eft

Da

he

the

tar

no

tin

tie

gag

my

by

my Departure. I therefore found out a middle way, and refolved to deliver him that in Writing, which it was forbidden me to tell him; yet observing what you had enjoined me, and tying him to the same Promise I had given you; for this Purpose, the Day of my Departure I wrote these Words:

Theodates to Prince Oroondates.

N inviolable Oath has kept me bitherto from declaring what it is necessary you should know; but since I now bave the liberty, I will acquaint you, Sir, that the Great Arfaces, to whom the King your Father is indebted for his Life, and your Country for the Quietness it hath enjoyed, is Prince Artaxerxes the Son of Darius, your dear Friend, your dear Brother; and he, on whom you have bestowed so many Tears. The Gods saved him miraculously from that Battel where you thought he had been flain, and fince that Time, bis Passion for the Princess Berenice, and the Occasions of doing Service to your Friends have kept him in Scythia. He is now a Prisoner to the King your Father, who, without doubt has discovered him to be the Son of Darius: Judge of his Danger by your Knowledge of the King's Humour; and by the Friendship that was between you, think what Hope he ought to have in your Assistance.

O Gods! (cried Prince Orondates, when Arfaces had repeated that Letter) how many Misfortunes would the fight of these Words have sav'd me, if you had suffer'd me to cast my Eyes upon them! but you had otherwise decreed, and that Knowledge would certainly have overturned all the order of those Adventures that have since befallen me. My Voyage to Susa had been diverted, or at least deserred, and I should have thrown off all Consideration of my own Interest, and run to the Succour of my dear Artaxerxes. Ah! Brother, how I blame your unjust Cautiousness, in concealing from me the only Happiness,

ad

r-

n-

n

te

t

is

r

piness, from whence in the fad Condition I then was, I could draw any Confolation; and how I should hate Theodates for being fo scrupulous, if I had not so many Occasions to love him for the good Offices he has done you! It is true, Brother, (continued Oroendates) and I will fay this to spare you fomething of your Discourse, Theodates the Day of his Departure having drawn me aside, deliver'd me a Letter fast sealed up, and before he gave it me, Sir, (faid he) in this Paper which I present you, you shall find the most pleasing News, and the most important Advertisement you can receive, doubt not at all of the Truth of those Things you shall find written in it; it will be very easy for you to certify your felf; but before I put it into your Hand, be pleased to give me your Word, that you will not open it till the End of this War. I was surprized at this Discourse of Theodates, and being desirous to persuade him to satisfy my Curiofity fooner: If this News (replied I) will be fo pleafing to me, why do you fo long defer my Knowledge of it, and why do you delay a Joy, which it is in your Power to give me? Sir, (answered he) I am bound up by one of those Oaths which you know the Scythians can never violate; and because I am injoined this Silence no longer than for the Time I have demanded, you may then fee in this Paper, what my Absence will not suffer me to tell you by Word of Mouth: But, Sir, I befeech you keep it carefully, and if you love your felf, forget not to look upon it as foon as the War is at at End. I was constrained to make Theodates the Promise he desired, and I lockt up that Paper amongst those Things which I esteem'd most precious. Theodates went away the same Day, leaving me much troubled for his Departure; but he had alledged fuch specious Reasons to me, touching the Disputes he had had with Arfacomes, and the important Affairs which recall'd him to the Court, that I could not deny him the leave he demanded. I kipt this Writing with a great deal of Care, and with as much Impatience to read it as foon as I should be free of my Engagement, but the strange Revolution that happened in my Soul, and in my Affairs by the arrival of Tyreus, and by the News of Statira, put it quite out of my Head at

my

I

A

h

fu

k

m

da

m

I

ne

Q

ha

an

as

hir

for

Id

aga

fely

I

The

pos

peri

fo n

it,

all

we

that

not

emp

wer

fure

whe

migl

fon (

Affa

Thro

that

my fudden Departure from Orchilachia; and till I was at Sea, I never remembered the Box I had left it in, which the new Trouble of my Mind had made me utterly to forget, with many other Things that were very dear to me.

The Gods would have it fo, (replied Arfaces) to bring our Affairs to the Issue they had ordained, and to make us know the Power they referve unto themselves over all our Proposals. It is true, Brother, Theodates told me almost the very same Words we have now heard from you; and then in a few more he inform'd me of the Condition he had left you in, and of the Success of his own Journey, wherein he had no considerable Encounter. When we had thus instructed one another, we fell to think whither we should retire, and what order we should take to get my Wounds drest; they began to trouble me, and tho' they were but flight ones, the violent Exercise I had used, my Loss of Blood, and the Vapours of the Night made them a great deal worse than else they would have been. Criton was no less hurt than I, but his Affection was fo strong, that he forgot his own Danger, to take care for mine. After we had confulted a while, Theodates would need have us go (for the remainder of that Night, and the Day following) to the House of one of those Men who then was with him, which was not above an hundred Furlongs from the Place where we were. I fuffered my felf to be guided by his Will; and as we rode along, Theodates calling all his Company to him, drew a new Promise from them of their Fidelity, and tied them by all manner of Entreaties to be as fecret as we could defire. They were all very affectionate to their Master, and some of them were so well inclined toward me, that they were both forward in promising, and exact in performing what we demanded. The House we went to, was far from any great Road, upon the edge of a huge Forest, and in such a Place as was very unlikely to be suspected for our Retreat. When we were come thither, the Master of the House, and some Women we found there, took the beest order they could to receive us, and by good Fortune, Theodates having brought his Physician, and his Chiurgeon from the Army

1

d

I

d

0

of

of

e

I

e

d

15

0

d

ſe

ne

y

re

10

d

ig he

ny

Army with him, furnished him with such Things as were necessary for any Wound, we had the Means to have ours dreffed as commodiously as if we had been at Issedon. I had but three, and those were found to be fuch light ones, that it was not probable they should keep me long in Bed. They applied what they thought most convenient to them, and likewise to Criton, who had four or five greater than mine, but not at all more dangerous. The Physician enjoined me to give the remainder of that Night to rest, contrary to the Intention I had to spend it in discoursing with Theodates, but the next Day I had Leisure enough, and ask'd him a thousand Questions concerning my dear Oroundates. By what he had done in my behalf he was become as criminal as I, and his access to Court was as difficult, and as unsafe as mine. His Affection to me was sufficient to make him undergo it with Patience, but I was afflicted at it for him, and his Love to Theomiris being known to me, I doubted not but he had a restless longing to see her again.

We fell to deliberate what we should do with our felves, and were a long time before we could refolve. I was too firmly fixt in Scythia, to fuffer so much as a Thought of going out of it, and would rather have exposed my self to a thousand evident Deaths, than have persuaded my self to leave Berenice; but if I had been so minded, it would have been exceeding difficult to do it, and we doubted not but that the King had fent to stop all the Ports, and to lay all the other Passages by which we could get out of his Territories. We believ'd also, that how fecret foever our present Retreat was, it could not serve us many Days, and that those Persons the King employ'd in fearch of us, might at last discover where we were. After we had long confulted, we believed the furest way we could take would be to return to Issedon, where when the first Troubles were once past over, we might have free Entrance by Night, and where by reason of the greatness of the City, and the multitude of new Affairs that sprung up daily in the Court, and in that Throng of People we might eafily lie conceal'd in Houses that were at Theodates's disposing, especially being the

1

ſ

fi

n

f

fo

N

ne

OL

du

W

of

N

pic

the

lik

ril

and

Co

tru

tho

gre

his

Gre

him

Ma

the

or v

Iw

have

loth

who

the

our

We

thought)

King would never suspect we were returned thither, and that we had taken Sanctuary so near him against his Anger. This Advice feem'd the most reasonable, and was most conformable to my Humour, and to the Desire I had not to go far from Berenice; in the mean time we fent two witty understanding Fellows back to the Town, to fetch us fuch Things as we wanted, and to enquire after what concern'd us. They performed their Commission very cunningly, and in the Evening brought us the same News we had imagined. They told us that the King had appeared more fensible of this last Discontent than of any other he had ever felt before, and that for all the remainder of that Day, those that were most in his favour, hardly had the Boldness to come near him, that he had left no Body at Home that was able to ride on Horseback, but had fent them all in pursuit of us, and that (as we had foreseen) he had given order to stop all the Ports and Passages of his Kingdom, that nevertheless they faid in Town that none but those that were interessed, obey'd his Orders without Trouble, and that the better part of Scythians, amongst whom the Name of Arfaces was still in high Esteem, rejoyc'd at his Escape, and favoured him with their Wishes as much as they could possibly. In this News I found some Consolation; but when I ask'd them concerning Berenice, they could tell me nothing, but that the Rumour was, how fince this Accident the King had commanded she should be securely guarded, and that very few Persons were allow'd to see her. This Report made me guess at part of the Truth, and I believed that the King's late Refolution against me, had proceeded only from the Knowledge he had gotten of my Passion. Ah! how many Torments did that Belief cause in me, and how many Sighs did it cost me when I thought what that fair Princess was like to suffer by my Occasion! O King of Scythia, (cried I) revenge thy felf upon Arfaces, but do not punish Berenice; and though that be the most sensible Part wherein thou canst wound thine Enemy; remember that Berenice is above thy Laws, and above the Empire of Mankind. The fecond Day being passed, Theodates was of Opinion we might be much more fecure in Ifedon, (as we had already

d

-

S

d

it

0

n

e

d

n-

r,

ad

e-

at

ey d,

er

ces fa-

ld

rt

ell

his

ely

fee

th,

nft

ot-

hat

me

ffer

ige

and

inft

ove

he

we

ady

ht)

thought) than in that House; and for that Purpose, having sent to make ready a Lodging, where he was consident we might safely trust our selves, we took our Way thither the Night sollowing. Our Wounds would not suffer us to ride without Inconveniency, but I had so great an Inclination to be near Berenice again, that I was scarcely sensible of mine, and having rid it in little more than two Hours, we entered after Midnight into the Town; the Gates whereof were not wont to be shut.

Those that accompanied us, parted several Ways, fome of them retiring to other Places; and for fear our Number should at last make us be discover'd, we kept none with us but those that were necessary. They did our Business, and fetch'd us in Provisions by Night: And during the Day-time, the Doors of our House were always shut; it stood in the most unfrequented Quarter of all the Town, and we were fo careful to make no Noise, that there could hardly be any Ground for Suspicion; yet we were in a great deal of Danger: But by the Order the King had taken, we should have been so likewise in any other Place; and the Consideration of Peril was not able to drive me from Berenice. and I were not without a good Number of Friends at Court, to whom we should have made no Difficulty to trust our selves if it had been necessary; Prince Carthasis, tho' the King's Brother, would have receiv'd us with a great deal of Affection; and his Friendship to us, as also his Aversion to Arfacomes, and his Discontent at the Greatness of his Fortune, were sufficient to have made him expose himself to any Hazard for our Consideration. Many others, of the Chief of Scythia, had still preserved the Remembrance of the good Offices I had done them, or which I had endeavour'd to do them, during the Time I was in Favour, and I doubted not but that they would have ventured very far to have obliged me; but I was loth to endanger them without Necessity, believing that whosoever should be known to be my Friend would be the first suspected, and that by how much the more secret our Abode was, so much the fafer also would it be. We pass'd many Days on this Manner, which being sepa-

rated from my Princess I should have thought unsupportable, if fince the Time of my Imprisonment I had not been inur'd to suffer. Yet was I marvellously impatient to fee her, and as foon as my Wounds permitted me to stir out of my Bed, I refolv'd to hazard that Visit in Spight of Theodates's Oppositions. What, said I, shall I be free in Issedon, and not fee Berenice? Ah! Theodates. my Life is not fo dear to me as that I would fecure it at that Rate, nor can I preserve it without Berenice, since it is for her alone that I preserve it. Theodates comply'd with my Design when he saw he could not divert it. and that Confent was not without some Mixture of his own Interest. The Princess Theomiris was still with Berenice; and for all her Father's rigorous Usage of her, at the Request of Prince Carthasis, she was allow'd the Company of that Princess, whom she made her Bedfellow, and to whom she had entrusted her most secret Thoughts. Theodates had not feen her fince his Departure, but now he hoped we might share that Visit together. After we had long contrived the least difficult Expedients, we at last made Choice of this: We remember'd that the Princess's Anti-chamber had an Iron-grated Window not very high, which stood towards a little narrow Street that was almost uninhabited by reason it was so exceeding dirty, that hardly any Body could pass that way; it was not near the Palace-gate, nor any of those Places where there us'd to be Guards, and I thought when all the World was afleep, we by that Window might get to speak with Cyllenia, and by her Means enjoy the Happiness of entertaining our Princesses.

After we had thus laid our Design, we got on Horse-back, and took Two trusty Men along with us, whom we set as Centinels at each End of that Street, to come and give us Notice in case they should see any Body that could discover our Conversation. In the mean Time, there had happen'd Things to my Princess, which the Course of my Story hindred me from telling you, and which I will not recount before I pass further in my Narration. It would be fitter (interrupted Oroondates) that my Sister should tell us them her self; that little Breathing Time will not be needless in so long a Discourse as this

th

W

M

by

off

aga

COI

gue

nev

ther

Dif

wha

both

danc

and

,

W

re

at

n-

ry

at

ng

ras

ere

he

to

pi-

fe-

om

me

hat

ne,

the

and

ar-

hat

ath-

28

this

this of yours, and it were good you rested your self a little, that you may be able to prosecute the Remainder of it without Inconveniency. Arsaces made no Answer, leaving the Princess to satisfy her Brother's Motion, and Berenice knowing his Desire: Since you will have it so, Brother (said she) and that your Friendship to Arsaces, and your Knowledge of his Vertue makes you pardon my Faults and my Disobedience, I'll spare him the Trouble of a few Moments, but I have so little to say, that so short an Intermission will not be much considerable.

I will not stand to repeat again (after the Relation you have heard already from the Prince) what my Thoughts were after the cruel Accident of the Surprizal of my Letters, and after the Knowledge I had both of my being made a Prisoner, and of the Danger that threatned Prince Artaxerxes. It suffices me, that you already know I lov'd him, as much as I believed I ought, and as he could defire, to make you judge that my Apprehenfions for him, were my most cruel Disquiets. All my Comfort was in the Princess Theomiris, and in Cyllenia, whose Company the King afforded me, notwithstanding all his Severity. Theomiris had obtained it of the King, by her Father's Mediation; and my Enemies thought it was not necessary to take Cyllenia from me, who, in their Opinion, was not able to do me any Service that could be prejudicial to them. It is true also, that I received those perty Satisfactions by the Queen's Means, who with a cunning Dissimulation seign'd to be forry for the Misfortune which she her self had brought upon me, and by Courtesies of small Importance, endeavour'd to take off Part of that Resentment which she believ'd I had against her. However it were, Theomiris and Cyllenia continued with me; and tho' at that Time I could not guess by whom I had been so unworthily betray'd, I never had so much as a Thought to suspect Cyllenia. therefore trusted these Two dear Persons with all my Discontents, and with all my Fears; and they help'd what they could to stop that Current of Tears which both those Occasions drew from my Eyes in great Abundance. Ah! Cousin, said I, Ah! Cyllenia, I am undone, and poor Artaxerxes will undoubtedly be ruin'd, and VOL. IV. ruin'd

ruin'd meerly by my Imprudence. That Prince, who after the Loss of his Empire, and after the Loss of all his Friends, has escaped such numberless Dangers, under the Weight of which, any other Body would certainly have sunk, he who amidst his most bitter Enemies has subsisted with such Dexterity, and who, by so many marvellous Actions, had so well gain'd their Affections, falls now by my Fault alone; and she, to whom all Scythia owes that Repose it holds from him, owes the Life of its King, and owes such important Services, sacrifices him now her self, to his Inhumanity, and to his Ingratitude.

Ah! Berenice, (continued I) Berenice, the fole Caufe of that great Prince's Misfortunes, do not out-live his Affli-Etions; and if thou canst not hinder the Death of poor Artaxerxes, at least fore-run it with thine own. I accompany'd these Words with such a Flood of Tears, and expres'd my Sorrow by fuch moving Actions, that not only Theomiris and Cyllenia, but even People of the harshest Natures, would have been touch'd with Compassion. I fpent the Remainder of that Day in this Employment, and would needs have my Cousin lie with me, to help to pass away the cruellest Night I had ever known in all my Life. She alledg'd all the Arguments she could think of to cure me of my Fears, and often persuaded me it was not likely the King would fly to Extremities against a Prince of Artaxerxes's Quality, and against a Prince to whom (besides that of his Life) he had other such important Obligations; that the whole Kingdom fo powerfully indebted to his Valour, would oppose the King's rigorous Intentions; and that he was too prudent and too politick to fuffer himself to be transported by his Passion to such a Violence as was without Example.

I found so much Reason in this Discourse of Theomiris, that if my Affection had been more moderate, I should without Question have drawn some Comfort from it; but it was by her Inspirations, and by those of Cyllenia, that I took a little Courage, and resolv'd to suffer the King's Presence, and to receive his Words with more Spirit than I had done before. Having spent the Night on this Manner, and likewise Part of the Day sollowing, I saw the King when I least expected him, come all alone

into

to

m

COT

me

Wh

into my Chamber. I rose up, and went to meet him trembling, but he disdained my Reception, and sitting down upon a Chair, from whence he darted nothing but furious Looks at me, I come not to visit thee, faid he, ungrateful and disloyal Girl, I owe not so much Civility to the Daughter-in-law of Darius; and from hence forward I cannot defire thy Sight otherwise than as that of my most mortal Enemy. I come only to reproach thee with thy Ingratitude and Infidelity, or to examine thee as a Criminal convicted of Treason against her King. Speak, wicked Creature, continued he, (feeing me daunted, and strucken half dead with these cruel Words). open thy Mouth to excuse thy self, and justify thy Infidelities, if it be possible: Didst thou then think the Son of my implacable Enemy more lovely than a Prince whom I had chosen for thee, and whose Affections I had expresly commanded thee to receive? And if thou hadst Eyes to judge of the Difference there was between Arsacomes and thee, hadft thou none to consider that without betraying thy Father, and shamefully betraying thy felf, thou couldst not match thy felf to the Enemy of thy House, and to him who had basely abandon'd his Father and his Country to their new Enemies, to compass his treacherous Practices against their old ones, and to seek that Revenge by his fecret Conspiracies, which neither he nor his could ever find in open War. While the King brought forth these Words, with many others of the fame kind, I fummon'd all my Courage to answer him, as he commanded me; and tho' I had much ado to recollect my felf, at last my Assection, my Sense of the ill Usage I receiv'd, and the Resolution I had taken, gave me a Boldness that was not natural to me; and when the King had made an End of speaking, charging me expresly to reply, Sir, faid I, I would not open my Mouth for my Justification, if your Majesty had not absolutely commanded me; but in my preferring Arfaces before Arfacomes, I can find no Cause at all to repent my self. Arsacomes is born my Father's Subject, Arsacomes never did me nor mine any confiderable Service, nor have I ever feen any thing either in the Actions or Person of Arfacomes, which ought not to have oblig'd me to hate him. Arfaces

0

e

t

15

ld

;

a,

he

re

ht

g,

ne

grant

is born the Greatest Prince in the World, and born Prince of a Thousand Subjects more considerable than Arsacomes; I owe to Arsaces the Life of the King my Father, and my own; the Queen, and Arsacomes himself, are indebted to him for theirs, and all Scythia for the better Part of its Tranquility; and in the Action and Person of Arsaces I never saw any thing that ought not to oblige me to love him.

If he be the Son of your Enemy, Sir, the Services he has done you, makes you sufficiently to know how far he is from any of those Thoughts you suspect him of; if he had defired the Ruin of your Kingdom, he would not have labour'd with the Loss of his Blood for its Confervation; and if your Majesty's Life had been odious to him, he would not so visibly have hazarded his own for its Desence. I alledge not to your Majesty the Engagements we had to him, in the Person of the Prince my Brother; the good Offices he did to him pass not, in your Opinion, for Obligations; and tho' I were indebted to him for none but those which are common to me and to your felf, for the Loss of his Dominions, which he perhaps might have avoided, if your Service had not taken him up; and for the particular Proofs of Affection he has shewn me, I think that those he has receiv'd from mine, will not pass for shameful Crimes, and that I have confin'd them within fuch Limits, that the Want of your Allowance is all the Fault can be objected against me.

I have lov'd him enough to prefer him before a Subject, before whom he would have been most worthy to be preferr'd, though their Qualities and Obligations had been equal. I have lov'd him enough to approve of his Services, waiting till such Time as those he daily rendred you, should dissipate the Hatred you bore his Family, by the Example of the King his Father, in whom less important Services, in Spight of your inveterate Enmities, begot such tender Assections to the Prince my Brother; and in short, I have lov'd him enough, to hope with Contentment, that after that Reconciliation, you would make Choice of him rather than of Arsacomes, and rather than of any other Body that should have an Ambition like that of his; but I have not lov'd him enough to

I

p

grant him any Favours that can make me blush, nor to give him either Promises, or Hopes to the Prejudice of what I owe unto your Majesty. Though Arfaces and I were both at Liberty, I should be so much Mistress of my Affection to him, as to die rather than marry him, or go along with him without your Confent; but if your Will would agree with my Inclination, I confess, Sir, that as much forfaken by Fortune, and as much dispossest of his Dominions as he is, I would prefer him before all the Princes upon the Face of the Earth. At these last Words, the King was so enflam'd with Anger, that it was easy to observe it in his Face; and stamping with his Foot as he rose up from his Chair with a furious Action, And I swear by all the Gods, said he, that I will quickly deprive thee of the Liberty of preferring him before any Body; and thy indifcreet and difloyal Affection shall be more fatal to my Enemy, than all those ill Designs he has against me: Prepare thy self for his Death, which I tell thee of my felf, as thou tellest me of thy perfidious Tricks, and believe that the only Choice I will leave thee from hence forward, shall be that of Arfacomes living, or of Arfaces in his Grave. If the Beginning of the King's Discourse had not prepar'd me for these cruel Words, they were enough to have made me lose my Senses; but as well resolv'd as I was, I had much ado to keep my felf from falling into a Swound, and finking into Cyllenia's Arms, who stretch'd them forth to receive me, seeing me change Colour, I look'd upon the King with a pitiful Eye, tho' it were animated with some Resentment; and struggling against my Faintness, The Ashes of Arfaces, faid I, shall ever be dearer to me than the Person of Arsacomes; and if I must shut up my Hopes, and my Life it felf within this Tomb, I shall esteem my Condition happier than if I were Possessor of all Europe with Arfacomes. These last Words absolutely took away all the Reason the King had left; and though my chiefest Desires were bounded in Artaxerxes's Safety, I innocently procur'd his Ruin by these extraordinary Marks of my Affection. The King could hardly retain himself in the Violence of his Wrath; but moderating it by Thought of that Revenge he was preparing, he was content with K 3 exprefexpressing his Intention by furious Looks, and went out of my Chamber with a Face, which sufficiently declar'd

the Action he was going to do.

I remain'd in an Excess of Grief, or rather in a mortal Agony, and all the Apprehension I had for Arfaces before, was nothing in Comparison of the Fears which then affaulted me. I knew the King's relentless Nature, and his Perfeverence in his cruel Refolutions, and that put me into the most forrowful Condition you can posfibly imagine. Theomiris and Cyllenia knew not which way to comfort me, and I think without their Assistance, I should have been reduc'd to very great Extremities: I every Moment fancied poor Arfaces either dead or dying; and the King's harsh Threats had made such an Impression in my Mind, that 'twas impossible for me to withdraw my Thoughts one Minute from that fatal Remembrance. Oh! King of Scythia, faid I, if thou accomplish thy horrible Resolutions, thou mayst well prepare thy felf for the Funerals of thine own Children; Berenice will not survive poor Artaxerxes, and Oroondates will without question die for Grief, when he shall hear that the Life of his Brother, for the Loss whereof he had shed so many Tears, was preferv'd only to fall under the Hands of the King his Father. I faid many other Things, whose Length makes me forbear to entertain you with them, and I tormented my felf on that Fashion, from the Morning when the King had visited me, till it was almost Night. I did not believe he would so soon have gone on to the Execution of his Threatnings; and I thought that to put a Man of Arfaces's Quality to Death, there had been need of longer Deliberation: But I was deceiv'd in my Opinion; and tho' my Fears were violent, they were not of fo long Continuance as I expected. It began already to grow late, when there was a great Noise in the next Court, and amidst a great Confusion of Voices, I heard the Name of Arfaces pronounced several Times.

At that reiterated Name, my mortal Fears were redoubled, and I fell immediately into the most fatal Apprehension. Arsaces is dead, (cry'd I, throwing my self cff from my Bed) Arsaces is dead, Cousin, and without doubt

doubt this confused Noise is caus'd by the News of his Death. As I spoke these Words, I ran to the Window which look'd into the next Court, where I faw a great many People got together, who, in Talking of Arfaces, clapt their Hands, and did Actions that fufficiently express'd their Astonishment. I then heard a Calling for Arms, and faw a great many of the Guard go out of the Palace in Hafte and Confusion. All these Things confirm'd me in my Fears, and I was so affrighted, that I had not the Heart to open my Mouth, to ask what the Matter was. In the End, the Court was almost empty. and for a Time there was a Silence as great as the Noise had been before it. Theomiris and Cyllenia laid me upon my Bed again, in a Condition little different from that of Persons without Life. I had not the Leisure to express my Sorrow by any long Complaints; for, before I had been a Quarter of an Hour upon my Bed, I heard a fecond Noise in the Palace, much greater than the former: It wrought the same Effect upon me the other had done; I ran quite transported to the Window, where I heard the Officers of the Guard, and many others, calling for Horses with a Precipitateness which testify'd their Disorder. After I had remain'd a while in a Perplexity that cannot be express'd, I saw Prince Carthasis, my Uncle, come into the Court; by good Fortune he prefently cast up his Eyes to our Window, and I no sooner saw that he look'd upon me, but I, by Signs, and by a befeeching Gesture, begg'd a Visit from him. As soon as he understood my Meaning, he came up the Stairs, and finding no Hindrance at my Chamber-door, by reason of his Quality, he entred immediately after. He was acquainted with all Matters that past, both by what he had heard from the King, and what I had confest to him my felf; nor had I any Cause to repent that he was privy to them, feeing there were no Proofs of Affection I could defire of him which he did not give me, in all manner of Encounters to his utmost Power. He had a particular Esteem, and a strong Affection for Arfaces, and I receiv'd no small Assurance of it by his Action in coming toward me.

K 4

I caft

I cast my self all in Tears into his Arms, but I had not open'd my Mouth to ask him the cruel News I apprehended, when to put me out of Pain, he broke Silence sirst. Madam, said he, the King would have put Arsaces to Death, but his Genius is more powerful than that of the Scythians; and it is not under such Arms as theirs, that such a Man as he can fall.

These Words began to produce their Effect upon me, when my Uncle, not willing to let me fuffer any longer, Arfaces is escap'd, said he, but he has made his Escape like Arfaces, and he has appeared to the ingrateful Scythians the same gallant Man that he appeared to the affectionate Scythians, when he fought so valiantly at the Head of them. They have found him as invincible asainst them, as against Arimbas, and the Tauro-Scythians; and if they formerly have feen him win Battles by his fole Courage in the Front of their Armies, they To-day have feen him alone and unarm'd, make Rivers of Blood run through the Streets of their principal City, and with his Sword hewn out the Way unto his Safety, through the Midst of their stoutest Troops. This News having fuddenly reviv'd me, I appear'd very different from what I was a few Minutes before; and tho' I was little inform'd of the Truth of the Business, I found my self well enough recover'd to enquire it of the Prince, and to hear the Relation of it very patiently.

He told me what had pass'd in Arsaces's Escape, as it was reported by those of his Guard which had seen the Beginning, and by those that had seen the End of that Action; he made me often grow pale and trembling during this Discourse; but when at last I heard, that after having done Things above the Power of Man, he had been succour'd by Theodates, whom the Gods had miraculously fent him, and that with him he was gotten out of the Town, with little Probability that he could be overtaken by those that were sent in Pursuit of them, my greatest Fears began to vanish, and I remain'd as quiet, and as well contented, as I could hope to be in that Adventure. Modesty forbad me to express my Satisfaction to the full before my Uncle; but he saw it plainly enough in my Face, and might easily have per-

ceiv'd

I

fc

al

fa

lo

of

Im

Gu

loc

to

the

ceiv'd in his Daughter's, if he had observed it, that she was not insensible at the News of Theodates's Arrival, and of the Share he had in the Destiny of Arfaces. Tho' I conceal'd Part of my Thoughts from my Uncle, I made him acquainted with the rest, not being willing to give him Cause by my Distrust, to repent the Assection he shew'd me in a Season when it might be prejudicial to him.

When I had testify'd my Acknowledgment of that Favour as much as possibly I could, I entreated him to be gone, for fear a long Visit at that Time might be hurtful to him, and gain him the King's Jealousy and Hatred.

After his Departure, Theomiris and I discoursed of that last Accident; and when I had compared the Danger Arfaces had escap'd, with those he might yet fall into. and the Rigour of his Imprisonment with that of his Abfence, I thought my Condition a great deal better than it was before, and I believ'd I ought to be much better pleas'd with my Fortune, than I had been at any Time fince my Restraint. I pass'd that Night in less violent Disquiets; and tho' I found Cause enough of Affliction in being separated from Arfaces, I found Matter of Conifort in his Liberty, and chose much rather to have him absent, than a Prisoner to the King my Father. Arfaces, faid I, will not forfake me, I am too certain that he loves me, to fear he will go away from me for ever; he by being out of the Way for the present, will avoid the evident Danger that threatens him, and without doubt will return to me as foon as he can be able to make use of my Brother's Assistance. Croondates has lov'd him too perfectly, ever to abandon his Interests, and perhaps my Father's cruel Humour may one Day be appeas'd, by the Confideration of his whole Family.

Thus did I flatter my self in my Discontents, while the King was transported with Excess of Rage, not being able to bear the Affront he had receiv'd, with such an Impatiency as nothing can represent. He banish'd those Guards for ever that had escap'd Arsaces's Valour, and look'd upon the rest with such a Fury as put them all into a mortal Terror. What, said he, has a single Man in the Heart of my Dominions, in the chiefest of all my

K 5

Cities, near my own Person, and in the midst of all my Subjects, made his Escape from my just Indignation; and are the Scythians so cowardly as to quit the Passage to one Man alone, or so faithless as to open it of their own Accord to their King's chief Enemy? He spoke these Words with many surious Actions, and grew so terrible to those that were most samiliar with him, that the Oueen her self durst hardly venture to come near him.

His Belief that I would be glad of the Discontent he had receiv'd by Arfaces's Deliverance, redoubled the Aversion he had receiv'd against me, and he was ready to have discharged Part of that Wrath upon me, which before was kindled against him. He neither saw me, nor would suffer me to be seen but by very few; yet about Three Days after this Accident, I was visited by the Queen, from whom I neither had expected nor desir'd that Honour. I was not so good a Dissembler, as to make my Face shew a different Welcome from what my Heart afforded her; but though I could not doubt that her Malice alone had brought me into that Condition I then was in, I strove all I could to pay her, in my own Chamber, some part of what was due to my Father's Wife. After the first Discourses of a very forc'd Civility, Madam, said she, by rendring you this Visit which I owe you, I shall without question move the King to some Displeasure against me, but I was willing to hazard that, to assure you that I am very sensible of what you suffer, and very ready to labour for your Redress as much as possibly I can. I am much oblig'd to your Goodness, answer'd I, but my Fear of the King's being displeas'd with you for it, could have made me wish you had not honour'd me with this Visit. Stratonice, who had a great deal of Wit, took my Words in the same Sense they were intended; and shewing by a Smile, that she very well understood my Meaning, I do not doubt, reply'd she, but that you are angry with me, and that you suspect I have done what I could to maintain Arfacomes's Interest against Arfaces. In this I am very forry I have been constrain'd to thwart your Inclinations, but 'tis a Proeeeding that is both very natural, and very ordinary; and you are too full of Reason to believe, that I ought

fc

A

aı

to hold the Son of Darius, and my own Brother, in equal Confideration.

I should not have fallen upon this Discourse, if the Queen had not begun it. But when I faw she entred fo far into it her felf, I thought I might very well reply. It was not just, faid I, Madam, that you should favour Arfaces with your Assistance, to the Prejudice of Arfacomes, neither did he demand it of you; but by the Service you had receiv'd from him, he had Reason to believe you would not endeavour his Destruction, nor had I ever offended you so much, as to imagine you ought to seek for mine. I have done nothing, added the Queen, that should make you think I had an Intention to hurt you; nor did I perhaps feek your Disadvantage, when I labour'd to make you prefer Prince Arfacomes, before a Prince whose Birth and Merit indeed were considerable. but he was an Enemy to the King your Father, an Enemy to this State, and one to whom the Gods have left nothing of which his Ancestors posses'd. If the Gods (reply'd I, with more Boldness than ordinary) have depriv'd Prince Artaxerxes of his Fore-fathers Empire, they have left him Characters which all their Anger cannot take away; they have left him a Sword that can recover his Dominions, as it hath defended ours; and briefly, they have left him Marks of what he was, and what he still is, which can fuster no Comparison with any of my Father's Subjects: If he be the Son of our Enemy, 'tis of an Enemy that us'd the Prince my Brother as the dearest of his Children; and if he be our Enemy himself, he's an Enemy, Madam, without whom the King had not now been alive, without whom Arfacomes had not been alive, without whom both you and I had either been dead or Captives, and without whom perhaps this Kingdom had been loft.

The Queen was nettled, seeing me take Arsaces's Part so sharply; and not being able to dissemble it, after a Blush which appear'd in her Face, Your Assection to Arsaces, said she, gives you Thoughts in Favour of him, and to the Contempt of others, which would be very advantageous to him, if they were approv'd of by the King your Father; but it has pleas'd the Gods, his Mind should

should be different from yours; and though he was not unsensible of Arfaces's Services while he believ'd him to be his Friend, nor blind to the Knowledge of his good Qualities, yet was not his Opinion the same with yours, for the Choice of him whom he thought worthy to be your Servant.

That Arfacomes whom you despise so much, was not so contemptible to him, but that he destin'd him to the Honour which you made Darius's Son to hope for, and has settled the Pardon of the Offence he believes he has received from you, in the Obedience you shall render him,

in Favour of my Brother.

The King (answered I, being vext to the very Heart at these Words) cannot destine me to Arsacomes without destining me to my Grave; and what Obedience soever I owe him, Death is able to give me a Dispensation. You shall not die, (reply'd the Queen, rising from her Chair) but Time will make you know what Maids of your Birth and Quality owe unto their Father, and unto their King; and how great Dissiculty soever you make of submitting your self to it, you understand your self too

well, directly to oppose the Will of yours.

After these Words, and some other of a feigned Civility, she went away, and left me so ill satisfy'd with her Conversation, that I was not settled again of all that Day. I pass'd the next, and some others, in the fame Manner, 'till the Time we were visited with Arfaces and Theodates. Theomiris and I were in Bed together, and not being able to fleep, I was entertaining her with my ordinary Disquiets, when Cyllenia (who took as little Rest as we) heard a Knocking at the Grate of my Window. At first she regarded it not, but finding it continu'd, she leapt out of her Bed, and coming close to mine, told me of it, and ask'd me what I would have her do: Altho' I did not absolutely guess the Truth, and that I believ'd not Arfaces to be in Iffedon, yet did I imagine it was to give me Notice of fomething, that any Body came to my Window at fuch an Hour, and in Conceit, I commanded Cyllenia to open it. She had no sooner done so, but she perceiv'd Two Men on Horseback, one of which presently call'd her by her Name, and

and was known to her by his Voice to be Arfaces. As foon as she was certain of it, she gave him not the Leifure to discourse with her, but running to my Bed-fide, brought me the News, transported either with Joy or Aftonishment. I was strangely surpriz'd at it, as you may well imagine; and not with standing the infinite Defire I had to fee Arfaces again, I could not hear he was so near his Enemies, without being extremely affrighted. I rose with Theomiris, and each of us taking a Night-Gown, we went unto that Window, and made Cyllenia stay at the Chamber-door, for fear we should be surpriz'd in that Conversation. I had no sooner discover'd Arfaces. and his Friend, through that gloomy Night, but my Fear and my Affection sharing my Soul between them, made me immoveable, and also insensible; but as soon as the Two Princes knew us, they bow'd down to their very Saddles, and having given us a Salute full of Respect, Arfaces breaking Silence first, Madam, said he. Arfaces is yet permitted to see you again, and the Gods have fav'd this Prisoner, this condemn'd Man, this Fugitive, to restore him a Sight which is a Thousand Times more dear to bim than the Liberty they had taken, or the Life they would have taken from him. He would have gone on with this Discourse as he had begun, if I had not interrupted him. Yes Arfaces, said I, you see me, and I see you again; but tho' your Sight be as dear to me as you can wish. it causes greater Disquiets in me, than those your Abfence would make me fuster; and if you had lov'd me as you are oblig'd to do by the last Proofs of your Affection, you had kept my Heart from those Terrors to which you now expose it. You doubt not that I was as much concern'd in your Safety as in my own; but you ought as little to doubt that I can fee you in the Danger into which you precipitate your felf, without mortal Apprehensions. What, (pursu'd I with the same Tone) is Arfaces in Isedon, and under the Palace-Window? Arfaces, the fole Aim of the King's Wrath and Hatred, and Arfaces for whose Destruction he would hazard that of his Empire? I faid a great deal more that express'd my Fear for him, but all ferv'd only to give him new Marks of my Affection: And after he had quietly

given me the Hearing, I know no Danger, reply'd he, that can fright me from the Sight of my Princess; and I should have scorn'd my Liberty, and given up my Life to them that would have taken it away, if I had believ'd there had been any Confideration strong enough to keep me from feeing you again : Do not therefore moderate my Happiness by your too obliging Fears, but suffer me, after an Imprisonment, which nothing but your Absence made me think unsupportable, to enjoy what was fo cruelly forbidden me, and to return through the midst of all manner of Dangers, to that Felicity for which alone I have preferv'd my felf. He accompany'd these with many other passionate Words; after which I receiv'd Theodates's Civilities, and gave him those Welcomes that were due to his Quality, and to his Deferts, and to the good Offices he had done his Friend. I thank'd him for Arfaces's Safety, with as much Acknowledgment as possibly I could, and then I would no longer rob him of the same Advantage we enjoy'd, but left him to entertain Theomiris with an equal Liberty; that Lady lov'd him, as she was oblig'd by all manner of Considerations; but 'twas with so much Discretion and Reservedness, that the severest Persons could not have found any thing to condemn in her Affection. The Window at which we talk'd was fo low, that the Two Princes being on Horseback, could easily reach it with their Hand, and though it were grated, the Bars stood far without, that we could hear one another tho' we spoke but softly, and also see one another as well as the Light of the Stars would suffer us. After I had teffify'd to Arfaces how fensible I had been of the Dangers he had run, and with what Joy I had receiv'd the News of his Escape, I told him all that happen'd to me since the Time I had not been able to write to him, and recounted all you have heard, as well about the taking of my Letters, as the King's cruel Threats, the Queen's Visits, and all that I had suffer'd for his Sake. He was so passionate at that Discourse, that he had hardly Patience to let me finish it; and in the Answers I had made to the King and Queen to his Advantage, as likewife in the Constancy I had shewn to favour him, he found

found so much Reason to be satisfied with me, and with his Fortune, that he knew not how to express the least part of his Acknowledgments. Is it possible (said he) that what I hear should be a Truth, and that Arfaces should be so happy as to attaint his high degree of Felicity? Ah! Lofs of my Dominions; Ah! Dangers that I have run; Ah! Pains that I have suffer'd, how gloriously are you all rewarded; and how unable is the King of Sythia to shake so firm a Fortune as mine? Since my Princess judges me worthy of her Affection, and that in fpire of fuch cruel Rigours and Persecutions she perseveres to keep it for me, I henceforth apprehend nothing from the Power of Men, and my Happiness is above the reach of all they can attempt against me. From this he fell into fuch tender, and fuch affectionate Expressions of Thanks, that it was hard to hear them, and to repent what one had done for him; and I redoubled his Contentment by all the Confirmations he could defire of my

Friendship.

We then began all together to consult what was best to be done, and when we had feverally delivered our Opinions, my Defign (added he) if it be permitted for a Person that is subject, and dependent to have a Design, is for some Days to enjoy the Happiness which now is granted me, if I can do it without troubling and difquieting my Princess, and when I shall have obtained leave of my Love to be able to depart from her for some time, and that by the fettling of the King's Anger I may think my Passage will be a little freeer, I'll go away to the Prince my Brother, to show him the Face of him he hath so dearly loved, and to take Sanctuary with him against the Indignation of his Father. I hope for all Things from his Friendship, and he commands an Army, which after him would be at my Devotion against the rest of all Mankind. I shall have no other Enemy there but Arfacomes, and if the Confideration of Oroondates make me defer the Effect of my Resentments against him, I am most certain I shall be preferred before him in Oroondates's Friendship; but if, without offending my dear Brother, I may be suffered to let them loose, I shall find Ways enough to free my felf of a Rival, who hath made

made, and who perhaps would yet make the greatest part of all my Miseries; neither ought he to hope that he can enjoy his Life, with his Ambition of serving Berenice; and tho' I fear not he should be able to shake the Constancy of my Princess, I ought however to punish him for the Pains and Persecutions he hath made her suffer. This was Arfaces's Intention, part whereof I approved, and labouring to divert the Violence of the rest, I would needs moderate his Spleen against Arfacomes, by the Promise I made him, that all his Endeavours should never ferve for any Thing but to make him the more odious to me. I will not trouble you, Brother, with all the Particulars of our Conversation, that Discourse would be too long, fince it was not much shorter than the Night; in brief, judging that the Day began to draw near, I difmilled Arfaces, after having confirmed him by all manner of Protestations, in the Hope he had of my Constancy; and after having given him leave to take the same Opportunities for a like Entertainment, while he could stay at Issedon with any Safety. This Design was put in Execution, and I faw him many times in the same manner, without either being furprized, or troubled by any Encounter; and Arfaces, at my urgent Entreaties, was fo careful to keep himself concealed; that his being at Isfedon was never fo much as suspected. In the interim the King was so extremely vext at the Shame he thought he had received, that his Discontent moderated, or rather stifled all the Joy he ought to have received, for the happy Proceedings of my Brother's Army. He had heard of his Victory over Zopirio, and afterwards of the taking of many Towns, which either by Force or Gentleness he had brought under his Obedience; but he had hardly appear'd any way fensible of those Successes, which in another Season would have found him very ready to bear a part in the publick Joy. But he received no small surcharge to his Affliction, when by an Express that came from Arfacemes, he heard how Prince Oroundates had left the Army, the Cause of his Departure being unknown to every Body, as likewise the Place whither he was gone. He delivered him a Letter which my Brother had written to Arfacomes, whereby he resign'd the Army into his Command,

tl

G

H

CO

fe

Ki

Co

en

vit

eve

Cr

fen

tho

wa

rou

wh

fo c

my

Command, and gave up into his Hand the Charge the King had imposed upon him. This News cast the King into furious redoublings of his Anger, but it was raifed to the Extremity, when that Messenger delivered him a Cabinet which my Brother had forgotten, in which among many other Papers there had been found the Information Theodates gave him of the Life, Fortune, and Imprisonment of Artaxerxes. The Reading of that Letter produced many several Effects in him, for if it made him judge that Oroundates had till then been innocent of the treacherous Deligns whereof he accused Artaxernes, it made him also believe that it was that Advertisement that made him leave his Army, to go to that dear Friend, and to join with him against his Father's Service. Neither was he without some Suspicion, that Oroundates had cunningly left that Letter, to make it be believed that the Designs and Person of Arfaces had been unknown to him, and to gain the more Facility by that Device, to effect the Plots they had contrived together. But how soever it were, the King could not fix upon any of these Opinions, without finding Cause to redouble his Wrath and Hatred against Artaxerxes, nor did he neglect any Thing that could ferve toward his Revenge; and feeing that the Gods, or his ill Fortune had made him 'scape out of his Hands, he fought out all the Ways to mischief him that could fall into his Imagination. He caused many Manifests to be drawn, and sent into all the Quarters of his Kingdom, wherein he accused him of Treason, and of a Conspiracy against his Life; exhorted all his Subjects to endeavour his Destruction; and the more strongly to invite them to it, promised five hundred Talents to whosoever should bring him his Head. The News of this Cruelty and Malice of the King's, drave Arfaces into Refentments which were like to have made him go beyond those Considerations which till then he had preserved towards his Person. Ah! (said he) why must this barbarous Man be the Father of Berenice and Oroondates; and why is it not permitted me to revenge with the Blood of so cruel an Enemy, the ingrateful Designs he has against my Life, and the Wrong he would do my Reputation?

I

ce

pa

of

M

M

to

to

he

ve.

he

100

kne

all

reso

the

froi

fur

the

tion

that

Sir, I ho shal! Dear

favo goin judg

was

had than

differ

Nigh

Visit

my R

broke fpeak where

Tears

After these Words he returned again to himself, and repenting that he had spoken to them, ask'd me Pardon, and protested he never would fall any more into those violent Thoughts against my Father. And indeed till then, he endeavoured to force himself to Patience, but he utterly lost it, at the last Effects of the King's In-

dignation.

How great Compliance foever the King had till then shewed to Stratonice, yet had he never resolved to marry me to Arfacomes; and tho' he was driven to it by the Confiderations of his Love, and by the Queen's eternal Perfecutions, his Ambition, and some remainder of his Affection to me, made him repugnant to that Alliance; but when once he began to lofe the Hope of taking Revenge upon Arfaces by any other Way, he overcame the remnant of his Love to me, and believing he could not afflict his Enemy more fenfibly than by giving me to his Rival, he refolved absolutely upon the Marriage. He had heard there was nothing more to do in the Country, where Arsacomes was with his Army; and having determined that he should return with his Forces, he sent an Express to him, with Orders to bring him back, and with a Letter which he wrote to him, the Words whereof were to this Purpose:

The King of Scythia to Prince Arsacomes.

SINCE you are the only Man worthy of my Friendship and of my Alliance, I intend that you shall have them both; come therefore Arsacomes, to receive the Recompense that expects you, as well for the Services I have received from you, as for those you have rendred Berenice; from hence forward she shall be yours, and all the Difficulties you have found in winning her, shall yield to the Authority of her Father, and of her King.

He shewed this Letter to divers of the Court, and published his Resolution to every Body, to the end Arfaces might come to hear of it, and feel the Sorrow he prepared for him. He would needs also give me my Share of it, and the next Day after the Departure of that fatal Messenger, he came into my Chamber, and bearing the Marks of his cruel Intention in his Forehead, put me into as great a Fear as I could possibly be capable of. He took not so much leisure as to sit down for the short Visit he meant to make me, but looking upon me with a feverer Eye than ever he had done before, Berenice, (faid he) hitherto I have been too favourable to you, but you too unworthily abused my Indulgence, therefore now know my last Intentions, and dispose your self (once for all) to marry Arfacomes; I give you as much Time to resolve upon it, as will be necessary for his Voyage hither; but I declare to you, that he shall be your Husband from the very Day of his arrival. Tho' I was infinitely furprized at this strange Discourse, yet did I call up all the Courage I had, to make reply to that fevere Proposition of the King's, and looking upon him with an Eye that was more animated than ordinary, I will obey you, Sir, (said I) to the last Minute of my Life; but my Death I hope will be free from the Obedience I owe you. You shall have leave to die, (replied the King) if you prefer Death before Arfacomes, but you shall never obtain a more favourable Election. He stay'd not for my Answer, but going out of the Room left me in the Condition you may judge I was reduced to by that cruel Threat: Truly it was a very lamentable one, and Theomiris and Cyllenia had never been more forrowfully employed about me, than they were all the rest of that Day. I would have diffembled my Grief to Arfaces, whom I was to fee that Night, and I prayed my Cousin not to tell him of that Visit of the King's, but 'twas impossible for me to hold my Resolution; and as soon as ever I saw him, my Tears broke forth in fuch abundance, that before I was able to speak, he was but too well instructed in my Missortune; wherefore I was forced to confess it to him, after the Tears that had betray'd me, and feeing he suspected something

1

ł

ip

12

ed

m

of

Te

fe

fic

tr

po

at

th

ne

W

the

ne

nu

the

def

YOU

wh

tho

Pri

thing more fatal, I was fain to tell him all I knew, both of the King's Message to Arfacomes, and of the cruel Command I had received from his own Mouth. Arfaces never appeared so terrible to me as at that killing News, and I do not wonder his Enemies should think him so dreadful in Fight, fince in the Anger I saw him at that time, I could not but be afraid of him my felf. Yet did he all that possibly he could to master it before me, and when he had a little conquer'd that first Fury, which made him fly into an Extremity of Rage against the King's violent Proceeding, and that he had kept Silence for a few Moments; 'Tis too long deferred, (added he) Arfacemes must die, and the Blood of that unworthy Favourite must pay for the King's Tyranny, and for his own. Oppose not this just Resolution, Madam, with unjust Commands; my Obedience in this Encounter would be Cowardice, and in the Extremity we are now reduced to, I ought to be exempted from it. The King doth but vainly prepare a Marriage for him, to which he has unworthily pretended; neither am I so forsaken of the Gods or Men, no nor of my own Courage, which hitherto hath ferved me faithfully enough, but that I can make that Rival fall at the Head of his Army. The King of Scythia perhaps shall find that the Remembrance of Arfaces is not yet extinguish'd in the Court of Scythia, and I hope it shall be with his own Forces that I'll oppose his unjust and tyrannical Designs. These were Arsaces's Words, and I faw him so fixt upon that Resolution, that I had not the Confidence to oppose it with all the Power I had over him. Yet did I strive to pacify him as much as possibly I could, and alledged all the Reasons I thought capable to divert his Purpose. I lov'd not Blood, and could have wish'd to be rid of Arsacomes otherwise than by his Death; and besides, I saw such great and manifest Dangers to Arfaces in that Enterprize, that it was hard to hope for a favourable Issue of it. I represented it to him as well as I was able, and endeavoured to touch him by the Consideration of my Fears for the evident Peril of his Life. He having ever been very ready to comply with my Entreaties, strove to appear more moderate, and having protested he would make his Inclinations

Book IV. CASSANDRA.

)

ddh

e

)

1.

st

e

ior

h

at

a

is

pe

ft

d

ad

as

ht

be

an

i-

as

d

to

i-

ly

0-

12-

ns

tions yield to mine as much as he could possibly, he left me in some Belief that I had obtained what I desired of him. I past the rest of that Day in those Disquiets which that Uncertainty caused in me; but in the Night, at the Hour when I expected him, I only received a Letter by one of Theodates's Servants, the Words whereof were these:

Arfaces to the Princess Berenice.

Depart, Madam, fince my Honour, since my Repose will not suffer me to remain longer near you, and perhaps I shall not return to you again, till I am freed of a Rival, and reveng'd of an Enemy: Remember your faithful Arsaces; and if it please the Gods ke die in this Enterprize, suffer him not to die also in your Memory.

The Reading of these Words did infinitely augment my Grief, and put me again into my former Apprehensions. I began to be afflicted for his Absence, and to
tremble for the Dangers into which he was going to expose himself. What likelihood is there (said I to Theomiris and Cyllenia) that he can attempt to kill Arsacomes
at the Head of his Army, without perishing himself in
the Design? Ah! without doubt, Cousin, we shall never
see him more, and his Despair will make him so far to
neglect the Means of his Sasety, that he by his own Ruin
will secure the Pretensions of Arsacomes.

I afflicted my self on this manner, notwithstanding all the Consolations I received from Theomiris, and could never be cured of my Fears during all the time he continued in that Journey. But, Brother, I think I am at the End of the Recital you demanded of me, and if you desire to know the wonderful Events of Arsaces's Voyage, you may learn them much better from himself than me, who am little capable of relating such Adventures as those you are going to hear from him. It is just, sair Princess (replied Arsaces) that I should ease you of that

Pains

Pains, and you, out of your Goodness, have given me rest enough to be able to finish this Narration. Arfaces held his Peace at these Words, and when he had thought a while of the Discourse he was to make, he proceeded in these Terms:

As foon as I had left the Princess, and that I was retired with Theodates, I made that dear Friend acquainted with my Resolution of departing the next Night, to go to Arfacomes, and either give him his Death in the middle of his Troops, or put an End, by my own, to all the Pains to which I saw my felf condemned. Theodates was amazed at that Design, but he argued not much against it, and only told me he would run my Fortune, and that into what Peril foever I expos'd my felf, he never would forfake me while he liv'd: These tender Proofs of his Friendship, did infinitely redouble mine, and not having the Power to refuse his Company in such an Enterprize, especially seeing there was no more Safety for him in Isledon than for me, and that in what Part of Scythia foever he could be, his Abode would still be dangerous, because besides what he had done to favour my Escape, the Letter which had come to the King's Eye, and which was known to be his Hand, had exceedingly aggravated his Displeasure against him, I consented to let him go along with me, and expose himself with me to all the Dangers which in Probability we went to Encounter.

That Day we gave order to get good Arms, and good Horses, and other Things that were most necessary for us; but we would take no other Company along with us, except Criton, who had already well recovered his Wounds, Theodates's 'Squire, and two of his Servants to take care of our Horses and Arms, believing that a greater Train would but make our Passage the more disficult, and the more easily discover us. I wrote those sew Words to my Princess which she repeated to you, and tho' her Absence was the greatest Missortune I was sensible of in that Attempt, yet would I go away without seeing her for sear she should oppose my Intention with her absolute Authority

1

1

ti

ar

pa

F

G

M

the

ill

for

ado

Rea

affu

you

Arf

Sol

him

Con

I gave my Letter into the Hands of a trufty Servant of Theodates; and when a good part of the Night was spent, we took Horse, and going out of the Town, put our felves into a Way that was not unknown to those that attended us. By good Fortune we had no River to pass that was not fordable, nor no Town in our Passage which we could not avoid, fending only Theodates's Servants through them, to buy fuch Provisions as we needed. This did much facilitate our Voyage, and we perform'd it without any Encounter that was able to cross our Purpose.

ne

25

at

d

ę-

ed

0

he

as it,

at Id

is

2-

r-

or of

n-

ny

e, ly

to ne

n-

od

or

th

nis

to

a if-

se

u,

125

:hon

1

But before we came to the Army, I thought fit to difcover the Bottom of my Defign to Theodates; and to that End, Do not believe, faid I, that my Resolution proceeds totally from my Despair, and that my Enterprize (for all it is fo hazardous) is without some Beam of Hope, grounded upon a great deal of Reason. The Army now under Arfaconies, is the fame you know that I commanded against the Tauro-Scythians, in the Country of the Agatirfians, and afterwards against Arimbas; 'twas with it we obtained fome Victories against the King of Scythia's Enemies; There is no Commander among those Troops whom I have not oblig'd by fome particular Courtefy; there is hardly any Soldier whose Face and Name is not known to me, and never did any General receive more Testimonies of Assection from his Men, than I from them, while we march'd together.

This Remembrance makes me hope for Favour amongst them, the' I should come to be so unfortunate, as to have ill Success in my Delign against Arfacomes's Person; and for all he is their General, perhaps he will have much ado to find more Friends than I among them. You have Reason to believe it, answer'd Theodates, and as I can affure you, that your Memory is still dearer to them than you can imagine, I can also tell you, that by reason of Arfacomes's Pride, and of his haughty Carriage, all the Soldiers and all the Officers have a great Aversion to him; and I am confident they never submitted to his

Command without a great deal of Unwillingness.

These Words of Theodates redoubled my Hopes, and in the mean Time we advanc'd toward the Army, with as much Speed as the Compasses we were fain to take would suffer us, and we found it sooner than we expected. The King's Messenger had made very great haste, and had been arriv'd there many Days; and Arsacomes, who with such losty Hopes had receiv'd so pleasing an Order, has rais'd his Camp from the Banks of Boristhenes, and was returning strait to Issedon, with as long Marches as he could. He, by Order from the King, had lest Five or Six Thousand Men upon the Frontier, which he had put in Garrison in some of those Towns that had been recover'd, and the rest of the Army was about Eighteen or Twenty Thousand.

It was along the Bank of the River Hypanis that we faw the first Battalions march, and riding with our Beavers down, we passed without doubt, among the first that faw us, for Horsemen of their Army; we wore nothing upon our Arms that could discover our Quality, they were very good, but not enrich'd with any Ornament that could make them be taken Notice of; and we had made Choice of fuch, that we might have the Liberty of passing every where with less Danger of being known. I had taken no particular Order about my Design, but had only refolv'd to lay hold of the first Occasion Fortune should offer me to fight with Arsacomes, or kill him if I could do it upon even Terms, and without any Baseness; but see how she behav'd herself in that Adventure, and admire her Capriciousness in one of the strangest Events you ever heard.

d

D

he

to

dr

an

no

the

mu

fati

and

One Part of the Army was already pass'd, when I saw Arfacomes appear at the Head of a good Number of Commanders, among which I knew the good old Cleorestes, Leotaris, and some other of those Friends I had greatest Considence in. He was compleatly arm'd, (as you know it is the Custom among the Scythians, never to go without their Arms upon a March, or passing upon any Duty of their Command) but his Beaver was up, and he was easy to be known by many other Marks. As soon as ever I saw 'twas he, my Resentments awaken'd in such Manner, that I no longer was Master of them;

f

e

1,

e

n.

It

r-

11

ly

d-

ne

W

n-

es,

eft

ou

go

ny

nd

As

1'd

n;

nd

and tho' in Appearance I could not take a more unfeafonable Time for my Satisfaction, I was not capable of all necessary Considerations; and moreover, I believed, that in the Extremity I was reduc'd to, and in the Nature of the Cause that mov'd me, I could not stand considering; nor feek Ways to facilitate my Enterprize, and be cautious of my Safety, without Cowardife. In this Conceit, turning toward Theodates, Dear Theodates, faid I, I can no longer defer the Execution of my Design; stir not till you fee I have need of your Assistance, and then do what you shall think convenient. I hearken'd not to what. Theodates alledg'd, to diffuade me from my rash Intent; but advancing towards Arfacomes, I drew near him without any Difficulty. I faluted him, bowing to my Saddle Bow, and speaking to him without putting up my Beaver, Sir, faid I, may I have a Word or two with you in private, to inform you of a thing of great Importance for the King's Service? Arfacomes accus'd me of Unmannerliness or Folly, for having spoken to him without discovering my Face; and looking upon me with an arrogant Fashion, he ask'd me who I was. You shall know, Sir, answered I, and with my Name, shall also learn the Buliness I have to impart to you, if you please to withdraw about an Hundred Paces from this Company that is about you. With these Words I turn'd my Horse, and rode toward the Place whither I defir'd to draw him; and tho' they that were present would have perfuaded him not to follow me, and told him that by fo doing he would injure his Dignity, yet being (as indeed he was) valiant, and desirous of Glory, he believ'd that Distrust would shew a Want of Spirit: In that Opinion he commanded them to march on, and forbidding them to follow him, he came galloping after me, and passing by the Place where I had stopt, went Five or Six Hundred Paces from his Men. I overtook him in an Instant, and he turning toward me as foon as I drew near, Speak now, faid he, at Liberty, and fince no Body over-hears thee, tell me who thou art, and what thou hast to communicate to me for the King's Service, I thought I might fatisfy part of his Demand, by letting him fee my Face; and for that Purpose, thrusting up the Beaver of my Cask, Vol. IV. I am

I am Arfaces, answered I, and by that Name alone thou

mayest learn all I have to fay to thee.

Arsacomes was so surpriz'd at these Words, and at the unexpected Sight of my Face, that for all he had a great deal of Courage, he chang'd Colour, and appear'd as immoveable as a Statue. I would not take Advantage of his Amazement, but to give him Leisure to recover it, Come to thy felf again Arfacomes, faid I, and know him, whom neither the King of Scythia's Ingratitude, nor thine, hath been able to ruin. I live still in spite of his Orders, and in Spite of thine; and I live to dispute Berenice with thee: Endeavour to defend thy Pretentions with thy Life, and make thy felf worthy by that Action, of what neither thy Birth nor thy Services have been able te merit. Thou canst never hope to possess her quietly while Arfaces is alive, and thou oughtest to dispatch him out of the World, if thou wilt free thy felf of a more fortunate Rival, and of an irreconcileable Enemy. My Birth is now well enough known to thee, to believe thou shalt not wrong thy Dignity by this Combate, nor is there so little Honour to be gotten with Arfaces, but that thou mayest reckon this Encounter as one of the most glorious of thy whole Life. By these Words, I strove to draw him to a greater Distance from his Troops, yet he would go but very little further; and having fettled himself while I was speaking, after he had look'd upon me with a more resolute Countenance than before, Yes, faid he, I am ready to dispute Berenice with thee; and fince thou hast escap'd the Justice of the King her Father, I shall be glad to revenge his Quarrel, and make my Sword the Instrument of that Death which thou oughtest to have suffer'd for the Defence of thy Country. This cruel Reproach, to which I faw my felf unhappily expos'd, rais'd my Anger to the highest Pitch, and feeing that Arsacomes put his Hand to the Hilt of his Sword without moving any further, I drew mine with all the haste I could, and making it glitter in his Eyes, quickly shew'd him that to give me my Death was not fo easy a Matter as he imagin'd. I believ'd I had not much Time to fatisfy Revenge, and that I should soon have part of the Army upon me; wherefore defiring to Morten

shorten that Combate with an extraordinary Haste, I slew at Arfacomes with more Fury than Judgment, and with Two fortunate Blows gave him Two Wounds, one in the Body, the other in the Right Arm, which disabled him to fight, and put him in fuch Diforder, that rushing fiercely against him at the same Time, I threw him headlong out of his Saddle upon the Grounda Tho' the Sight of our Combate had already made a good many of those that beheld it come running towards us, I had Time enough to have flain Arfacomes, if I had had a Mind to it; but how great Interest soever I had in his Death, I was not able to give it him, being he was no longer in a Condition to defend himself; and seeing some of the Officers of the Army come thundring at me, I advanc'd a little toward them, with a Purpose to make my felf known, and with a Hope to moderate their Refentments by the Sight of my Face. I found more Facility in it than I expected, by the Prudence of Theodates, for he no sooner had seen them stir, but casting off his Helmet, and shewing them his bare Head, he made toward them with all possible Speed, crying, O Cleorestes, O Leotaris, whither run you? 'Tis Arfaces your General, and your best Friend.

The Name of Arfaces often reiterated, flackned their Speed, and turning toward him that spoke it, they knew him to be Theodates, to whom they bore a particular Respect and Affection. They were seiz'd with a marvellous Astonishment, when I coming up to them with my Sword in my Hand, and my Head quite unarm'd, Do you come (cry'd I) dear Friends, to take away the Life of Arfaces? If it be so, I refuse not Death, nor can I receive it from more welcome Hands, than those of my ancient Friends, and of my valiant Companions. These Words, and the Sight of my Face, stopp'd them short at first, and put them into a wonderful Irresolution; but within a while after, they made all other Considerations yield to their Affection, and putting up their Swords, they came to me with an Intention very diffe-

rent from that which before had drawn them.

This Accident had staid the March of the Army, and all the Officers leaving their Places, with part also of the Soldiers, ran thronging to that Spectacle; but the Name of Arfaces which spread from one to another thro' the whole Army, presently stilled all their Resentments, and wakening in them the Remembrance of the ardent Love they had born me, they ran all about me, to take my part against Arsacomes's Servants, and particular Friends. Cleorestes was the first who finding the Assection of the Soldiers, and incited to it by his own, got before all the rest, and cried, Long live our General Arsaces, and may his Enemies perish. Leotaris seconded him in his Cries, and in his Action, and immediately the Name of Arfaces ecchoed through all the Plain. I was almost overturn'd with the Croud of Officers, and Soldiers, some ask'd to see their General Arfaces, and some pressed to falute me. I stretcht forth my Hands and embrac'd them one after another; and calling them by their Names, I made them see I had dearly preserved their Remembrance. By little and little I was encompassed by the whole Army, and was fain to go all about without my Cask, and to shew my felf to those that were furthest off, who with loud Cries demanded the fight of their General. Never was there any Change of this Nature so sudden, nor so wonderful as that, and all that my most affectionate Friends could have wish'd to my Advantage, would not have come near to what Fortune did for me in that Encounter. In the same Place where a few Minutes before I had been alone against an Enemy that commanded a powerful Army, I saw my self triumphant, I faw my felf ador'd, and I faw my felf absolute over twenty thousand Men, whose Arms and Lives were at my Devotion. Let Arfaces (cried they confusedly) take the Command of us again, and let him lead us over all the World to ferve him, we'll obey no Body but him, and his Enemies shall be ours. Only Arfacomes's Friends and Servants terrified with this Alteration, too weak to shew how they resented it, and perhaps being in fear of their Lives, offer'd not to come near me; but in all that Confusion I was not forgetful of my Master, and being very confident he was not dead, I prayed Cleorestes, if

F

n

they had not done it already, that he would cause him to be taken from the Place where he was, and make as careful Endeavours be used for his Recovery, as I could have desired for my own. After I had given this Order, I entreated those that stood near, to afford me a little Audience, and having obtained Silence with much ado, I spoke to the principal Officers who came round about me, and to as many of the rest as were within hearing: My dear and generous Friends, (faid I) you by whom alone the Name of Arfaces has gain'd all the Honour it can boast of, you by whom I am now alive, and briefly, you to whom with my Glory, and with my Life, I owe all, and will acknowledge all; I should be unworthy of this Affection which is my chiefest Happiness, if I could abuse it, and if I should make use of your Goodness for the detence of an unjust Quarrel, and a Quarrel wherein you your felves had not some Interest. That which you had done for the King of Scythia, and that which I had done for him with your Assistance, was not so inconsiderable, that instead of Recompences he should give us Shackles, he should give us Punishments; and that after having unworthily wrong'd your General in his Person and in his Reputation, after having made him languish in a hard Captivity, he should fend him Executioners cruelly to tear away that Life which he fo often had prodigally hazarded for his, and for the defence of his Dominions. 'Tis true, my Birth had made me criminal in his Opinion; and if your Thoughts are not more generous than his, it will likewife make me fo in yours; but though I should endanger this Life which I hold from you, I can no longer be able to diffemble the Truth, and into what Necessity soever I can be reduced, I never will require Services from Persons to whom I am not known. It is true, my Friends, if you can be so after my Declaration I make to you, it is I heretofore was Artaxerxes the dear Brother, and the faithful Friend of your Prince Oroondates; but Darius's Son, and Matheus's Enemy; you are not ignorant what my Family and I have done against you; but if you have found, that in what I have done for this Kingdom at the Head of you, I have preferv'd the Hatred of an Enemy, I shall not think it strange if you

follow the Example of your King; and if according to the Intention he had to do so, you take away a Life which you have newly given me, nor had I kept it hitherto but in hope to recover, by your Assistance, part of that Honour, and part of that Empire which I lost while I was fighting here for yours; but I am only to blame to fay I kept my Life only for that, no my valiant Fellow Soldiers, I kept it also for Berenice; and if my being in this Country has been any way advantageous to the Scythians, they owe it to the Love I bear their Princess, I serv'd her in serving you, she has been pleas'd to approve my Services, and I thought I had rather merited her, than that ignominious Death the King would give me; but while he fends me Poison, and presents me with a Dagger to be my own Executioner, he also takes Berenice from me to bestow her upon Arfacomes, and 'tis by that way alone he deprives me of a Life which I defended in spite of all his Jailors, and his Hangmen. favour of that Fovourite, cruelly forces the Inclinations, and unnaturally imprisons the Person of that Princess, as he not long ago did the Person of your Prince, and by that Violence has driven the miserable Arsaces, either to find a Death in the midst of all your Swords, or to kill Arfacomes at the Head of all his Troops, and to demand of those very Troops the Happiness which his Enemies unjustly would rob him of. Behold, dear Friends, what I ought to fear, and what I ought to hope for from you; if you will have me live as Arsaces, I demand Berenice of you; and if you will have me die as Artaxerxes, I freely offer you my Breaft, and defire not to conferve that Life against your Wills, for which I must confess my felf indebted to you. I had not made an end of these Words, when there arose a confused Noise amongst the Soldiers, which at first might have been enough to beget Fear in a Person that had been much in love with his Tife, but I had not the Leisure to be strucken with it, for I presently understood the Resolution of all that Multitude. The Recital of this Adventure is indeed shameful to the King of Scythia, fince among so many thousand Men, of mean and obscure Birth, there were none whose Thoughts were not more full of Gratitude than his, and whose Know-

Knowledge of my real Quality was able to blot out the Remembrance of the Obligations they believ'd they had to me. Let him be Arfaces, (cried they) or let him be Artaxernes, he is still our General, he is the Friend, he is the Brother of our great Prince, we have no more War now against the Persians, and we are so much the more oblig'd to Prince Artaxerxes, if for all he is a Perfian, he has given us fuch Testimonies of Affection, as we never receiv'd from any of our own Country-men. Let him lead us (faid they presently after) whither his Interests call him, let him lead us to the Conquest of Berenice, and to the Revenge of those high Wrongs he has receiv'd, we'll ferve him without any Distinction of Enemies, and will never put any Difference between his and These Words and many others that were to the fame Sense were often repeated through the whole Camp, and by a thousand resounding Cries, and a thousand extraordinary Actions, all the Commanders, and all the Soldiers, testified that they longed for nothing fo earnestly as the Occasion of going to fight for my Quarrel.

I cannot but acknowledge that I felt an excessive Joy at so favourable an Event: I could not keep my felf from having great Refentments against the King, who after his unworthy Usage of me, and the cruel Design he had shew'd to take away my Life in an ignominious manner, had fet my Head at a Price, and ran to all the Extremities against me, that are wont to be used against the basest Malefactors, and against the greatest Traitors to a Kingdom. This Remembrance thrust me upon the Design of revenging my felf against him with his own Arms, and of making him know that a Prince disposses'd of his Dominions, was not yet so weak, nor so forfaken, but that he could in the Heart of his Territories, destroy that Peace which he himself had settled. My Love join'd it felf to my Anger with a more absolute Power, and my defire of Revenge was nothing near fo ftrong, as that of obtaining Berenice; I was defirous therefore, for the Satisfaction of both, to make use of the Happiness that offered it felf to me, and thought I ought not to neglect a Fortune, which I should never recover again while I liv'd, L 4

liv'd, if I should suffer it to escape; with this Intent, shewing a more chearful Countenance to the Commanders and Soldiers than before, Generous Friends, (said I) I know not how to oppose the Essects of your Goodness, nor resuse the advantageous Offers you make me; since you desire it, I entitle you to my Interests, and with a Considence like that of yours, I put my Life and Fortune into your Hands; I henceforth will acknowledge nothing but from you, and since you are pleased I should again take up the Honour I had heretofore amongst you, I obey, with a Protestation that I never will abuse it while I live, and that demanding nothing of you but a Mistress, I will always own you for my Masters and for

my Protectors.

After these Words, I rode about every where amongst them, and as I received the Oath which the Officers voluntarily made to me, I embraced them, and almost all the Soldiers after them. This Ceremony being ended, I fell into great Expressions of Kindness to Clevrestes, Levtaris, and the rest of my particular Friends; and Theodates, who was extremely belov'd and much confidered amongst them, receiv'd a thousand Civilities from them, and a thousand Praises for the Affection he had shew'd to me, we encamp'd that Day in that very Place, and that Situation appear'd very commodious for a stay of three or four Days, which was not unnecessary, to deliberate about the managing of my Affairs. In the mean time Arsacomes was in his Tent, attended as if he had been in his better Fortune; his Wounds were found to be neither great nor dangerous, and the Chirurgeons promis'd his Cure in a few Days; he wanted nothing but Liberty, which in that Condition would have been useless to him, and my Friends knowing how highly it concerned me to keep him fast, had taken Care to set Guards upon him. They judg'd with Reason that I could not secure my self of Berenice, but by keeping Arfacomes; and that as long as he was in my Power, the King could not force Berenice to marry him. Within in a few Days, though he was not absolutely cured, yet was he able to endure a Litter, and I heard by those that waited on him, that his Captivity was his most sensible Discontent. How great

n

n

D

m

bu

Ai

w

great Interest soever I had to keep him, I scorned to make use of that Advantage which I held from Fortune, and fince he had escaped my Sword, I believed my felf oblig'd in Honour, to restore him a Liberty, which he had lost only by the Defection of his Army. To this Consideration I added, that if he was generous he would remember my Carriage toward him, and that as I had not abus'd his Captivity to concern Berenice, so neither would he perhaps abuse his Liberty to take her from me. my Friends, and Theodates himself opposed my Intention, and judged it contrary to the Laws of Prudence; but they were not able to shake my Resolution, and after having pray'd them to give me leave in this Encounter which concern'd no Body but my felf, to make use of the Power they had given me, I went to Arfacomes, whom I had not feen fince he was wounded.

Although the Power I had over him, stifled all my Anger, I could not fee him without being mov'd, and I observ'd he changed Colour at my coming in; but not desiring any long Conversation with him, I quickly told him the Cause of my Visit, and took away all those Apprehensions he might have had. Arsacomes, (faid I) I come not hither to reproach you with the Injuries you have done me, I endeavoured to revenge them by a way which you have escaped, and all others were too dishonourable for me to use. I will not take any Advantage against you, by what the Army have done in favour of me, and when you are well enough to endure a Journey, you shall be free to go away at your own Time. I know I give my felf Death, in giving you Liberty, and that you will make no other Use of it than to deprive me of that Princess, who is the Cause of all our Differences; but that Knowledge is not able to alter my Design: Go see Berenice again when you please, but remember that a generous Man ought to win her Affection rather by his Services, than by her Father's Authority, and that the Recompence you owe to what I now do for you, is not to fuffer Berenice to be forc'd.

Arfacomes was going to reply, but I hearken'd not to his Answer, not desiring to hold any long Discourse with him, wherefore going out of his Tent, I commanded the Soldiers that guarded him, to retire. He, without any further Delay, made use of the Favour I had done him, and the next Morning causing himself to be put into a Litter, which Prince Oroondates had lest at the Army, and which he had us'd during the Cure of those Wounds he had received in the Battel, he went on his Way toward Isedon, but went full of Threat, and full of Refentment, not of the Favour, but of the Injury he had received from me.

I staid a few Days after his Departure upon the Banks of the River Hypanis, not being willing to fly to Extremities against the Father of Berenice, and Orcondates, without having well deliberated the Matter, and without having us'd all the Caution that might free me from Blame in the Opinions of my Princess, and of my Friends. For this Purpose, retarding the Motion of the Army, and making but very short Marches toward Isedon, before I engaged my self in a War to which I was instigated by my Love, I desired to let the King see I was Master of my Resentments, how just soever they were, and therefore I dispatched away a Messenger with a Letter to him, the Words whereof were these:

Arfaces to the King of Scythia.

I Will not put you in Mind, Sir, what I have done for you, and what you have done against me. It suffices that you remember you are beholden to me for your Life, and for the Security of your Kingdom; and that for my Recompence you have sent me a Dagger and a Draught of Poison; you have persecuted me as the basest of all Malefastors, and set my Head at a Price, as that of a Traitor, and of an infamous Person: This Usage must needs be very sensible to a Prince, whose Quality is not inferior to your own, but it is supportable to Arsaces, from the Father of Berenice,

and Oroondates; and if yet you stop the Course of your Craelties, I will lay down the Muthority I have found in the Place where I only jought for Sanctuary against your Perfecutions. I demand no Satisfaction for the Wrongs you have done me; and tho' perhaps I am in a Condition to right my self, I will forget them all, as you have forgot my Services, provided you remember that the Princess Berenice is your Daughter, and that you force not her Inclinations, in Favour of a Man, whom if I would, I could have made to lose his Pretensions with his Life. She is of a Birth not fit to be used with Violence for a Subject, and mine is not so despicable as to make her blush for having preferr'd me before Arsacomes. Perhaps you may have some Consideration of it; and if all Generosity be not utterly extinguished in the Heart of a King, you will remember, I am still that same Arsaces, who has lost your Friendship only by his Misfortune, but who gain'd it by his Blood and by his Services.

The Man I fent to the King with this Letter, arriv'd at Isedon Two Days after Arfacomes, and found the King in Troubles and in Passions which it would be impossible to describe. He partly shew'd them by his Usage of my Messenger, whom he caus'd to be hang'd as soon as he had read my Letter. And not doubting but this last Offence, and his cruel Obstinacy, would utterly take away that Remainder of Respect I yet bore toward him, he gave Order to raise Men, and endeavour'd to gather fuch Forces as might enable him to defend himself. He had receiv'd Arsacomes as his Son; and after having comforted him for the Difgrace he had receiv'd, by all the sweetest Hopes he could possibly give him, he had presented him to the Princess as her Husband, and had given her no longer Time to resolve upon that Marriage, than till he were perfectly recover'd of his Wounds, which they hop'd he would be within a very few Days. Let not thy Artaxerxes think, said he to her, to terrify me by the Infidelity of my Subjects; the Traytors that ferve him, shall perish with him, and thou shalt see his Destruction, as he shall see thy Marriage. The forrowful Princess answer'd those Threatnings only with her Tears; and when the was forc'd to reply, It is not my Delire,

Desire, faid she, that Arfaces should return in Arms, to take Satisfaction for the Juries you have done him; and tho' I should be freed by those Ways, I know well enough what I owe to you, never to give my felf to him without your Confent; but it shall never be with mine that Arfacomes shall be my Husband, nor can you give me to him, without giving me to my Grave. You are unworthy, reply'd the King, I fay you are unworthy of his Constancy toward you; and if he were not blinded with Affection, for all you are a King's Daughter, he would despise you for your indiscreet, and obstinate Fondness of his Rival. If he were generous himself, added the Princess, he would remember the Favour he receiv'd from his Enemy, and would confider that if Arfaces's Vertue had not carried it above his Interests, and above his Anger, he would have facrific'd a Life fo tatal to his own, and a Life which he before had faved. She used almost the same Discourses to Arsacomes, when he went about to entertain her with his Passion; and as confident as he was, the fometimes made him blush with Reproach. In the mean Time I was ignorant of my Mellenger's Destiny, and had advanced but little toward the Town, looking for his Return; but I expected it in vain, and heard no News of him but in the Manner I am going to tell you.

Having put my Life into the Hands of the Scythians, I took but little Care what Guard was kept about my Person, but they all of them took a great deal, and with an extreme Affection testified how much they were concern'd in the Safety of it: Yet one Night when we were encamp'd by a Wood Side, some 5 or 600 Furlongs from the River Hypanis, the Soldiers that were upon the Watch did not fo well perform what their Officers had given them in Charge, but that a little before Day, Two Men cutting the Backside of my Tent, and easily making a Hole wide enough to afford them Passage, came without Difficulty into my Chamber: By good Chance, I was wont, while I lay in the Field, to have Candles always burning by me, and 'twas by their Light that those Fellows having observ'd all the Parts of my Chamber, drew near to my Bedside to execute their Resolution. They were

fe H

M

Pi

It

were beginning to pull open my Curtains, when by fome Noise they made in that Action, I awaken'd in a Start, and prefently looking about, I spied those Two Men with their Swords in their Hands, in a Posture which made me fufficiently know their wicked Defign. A fudden Cry I gave at Sight of those Villains, frighted them fo, that I had Leisure to leap out of Bed; yet seeing me without Arms, they recovered Courage, and went to profecute their Intent of taking away my Life, but I was already gotten on the far Side of a Table, which fav'd me from their first Blows, and had catch'd up a Sword, wherewith I thought I should be able to dispute my Life against them; nor was I deceiv'd in my Belief, for with the first Thrust I made, I ran it up to the Hilt in the Breast of him that was next me, and laid him dead at the Feet of his Companion: The other was fo terrified at that Execution, that he lost Heart; and seeing the Hole he came in at, endeavour'd to have fav'd himfelf by Flight, but I opposed his Passage, and presenting him the Point of my Sword, Stay, Miscreant, said I, stay, and fince thou hast dar'd to venture upon fo great a Design, see if thou beest able to make an End of it. cowardly Wretch was quite daunted at these Words, and throwing down his Sword, fell upon his Knees before me, Ah! Sir, said he, if you be that Great, that Generous Arfaces, who can pardon, as well as conquer, give me my Life. Thou fhalt have it, faid I, tho' thou hast not deserved it; but tell me_____. I was going to proceed, when those that lay near my Chamber, being waken'd with that Noise, came running in one after another, and finding me with my Sword in my Hand, a Man upon his Knees before me, and another breathing out his Life with his Blood, which ran all about the Floor, they fell into a great Admiration; instantly they drew their Swords, but I commanded them not to ftir; and having told them the Truth of that Adventure in a few Words, I examined the Fellow in their Presence: He was fo frighted, that he was hardly able to open his Mouth; but after I had hearten'd him a little, by the Promise of his Life, which I often repeated, Sir, said he, I think the Cause of this Attempt is not unknown to you;

CASSANDRA. Part IV.

the King sent us to have killed you, and besides the Five Hundred Talents he had offered to whosoever should bring your Head, he gained us by particular

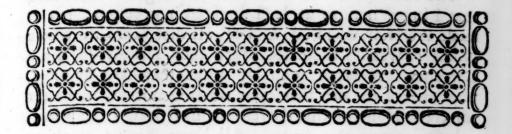
Promises of an excessive Recompence.

254

Oroundates could not suffer Arfaces to continue his Discourse, without trembling for Horror, nor without detesting the Cruelty, and the abominable Unworthiness of the King his Father, in very resenting Words, which he would not have put an End to of a great while, if Arfaces who desired to do so to his long Narration, had not taken him off to go on with it on this Manner.

The End of the Fourth BOOK.





The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK V.

B E not afflicted, Brother, at my Recital of the King's Cruelty, but employ that Goodness which makes you fall thus into Passion against him, to pardon the Things my Refertment made me undertake; which certainly, how much soever I was concern'd,

and what Indignities foever I had fuffered, I should never have been overcome to do against a King that had given you your Birth, if in all his Actions he had not treated you as the most odious of all his Enemies, and had not endeavoured to blot out all the Characters of that Respect

Respect which your Friends would have paid him for

your fake.

The Attempt of this Assassination taught me nothing that I knew not, or at least doubted not before; but it made the Hair stand on End of all that heard it, whose Number was so encreased, that they already fill'd my Chamber. Theodates who lay in another hard by mine, was one of the first that came running thither, and after him, the Noise of this Adventure had drawn the principal Officers of the Army. All began highly to abhor the King's Proceedings, to term him cruel and ungrateful, and the Ways he took, unworthy of a King, and unworthy of the old down-right Simplicity of the Scythians. After that the Tumult was appealed, I question'd the Man, and asked him particular News' concerning the King, Berenice, Arfacomes, and the Messenger I had fent. He told me how my Messenger had been hang'd, the Things I have already related to you of Arfacomes and Berenice, and the King's final Resolution to force her to that Marriage, as foon as Arsacomes was quite recover'd.

I was much more fensible of this News, than I had been of the Designs they had against my Life, and I refolved to oppose that Violence, with all the Powers Fortune had put into my Hand; and in this Determination, turning toward my Friends, My dear Companions, faid I, the King makes use of all things for my Destruction; and fo he may but ruin me, he thinks not Scorn to give himself over to all the most shameful Ways that can be imagined; truly I cannot but blush for him, remembring how passionately I have honoured him, and remembring that he is the Father of my Princess, and of my Friend. In Consideration of that Remembrance, I would pass over all the Injuries he does me, if his Cruelties were directed to me alone; and perhaps I should be Master enough of my Anger, but I cannot be so of my Love. I forgive the King all the Attempts he has made against my Life; but if I may be assured of your good Wills to the utmost, I will not suffer him to execute the Resolution he has taken to sacrifice Berenice to the Hatred he bears me, and (contrary to all divine and human Laws) to force a free-born Princess, and a Princess confiderable.

Ca

af

m

W

up

ma

W

the

tha

bu

die

tha

Fri

par

we

siderable enough to be fecure from all manner of Violence. We'll serve you (reply'd those generous Friends) what Defign foever you can have; and except Oroundates our natural Prince, we will acknowledge no Body when your Interests come in Question. Carry the King this News, faid I, (turning towards that Fellow) and tell him he shall shortly have a gallanter Way to kill me, than this he employ'd you in. He shall see me before his Walls, at the Head of his fame Army, wherewith I conquered his Enemies; and he may procure my Death by open War, with less Dishonour than by the Hands of Murtherers. Tell Arfacomes, that if I had pleased, I could have hinder'd his Marriage; that I'll have another Encounter with him for that Life which he abuses, after having receiv'd it from me; and that fo long as I am in the World, he has little Reason to hope he shall posfess Berenice; and if thou art so happy as to see that Princess, and faithful enough to discharge a Message to her, fay, That the Respect I owe her, cannot hinder me from opposing the Tyranny of her Father by the Way of Arms, and that a whole Army of valiant Men will perish with me for her Quarrel, or restore her that Liberty whereof she has been unworthily depriv'd. After these Words, I fent back that Man, giving him a Convoy to carry him fafe a good Way from the Camp, though all they that were with me, urg'd very earnestly to have him led to the Gallows. Within Two or Three Hours after, I made the Army difencamp, and when I had told my Friends my last Intention, we march'd directly toward Isledon, without considering any longer. We liv'd upon the King's Country, just as we had done when we march'd there for his Service; and when the Towns that were in our Way, fent out towards us to learn what they should fear, or what they should hope, I declared that I was not their Enemy, that I demanded nothing but free Passage, and some small Subsistance that my Soldiers might live, whom I had not Means to pay, and that if they would grant it me, I would use them as my Friends, and as my Brothers. By this Way we gain'd part of them, and all the open Country, which being too weak to oppose us, chose much rather to contribute to-

fo

tl

de

th

m

ar

y

pl

mi

of

ca

m

in

th

hi

th

bu

ward the Maintenance of the Army, than draw the Power of it against it self. 'Twas by this Order we sub. fifted; and after we had furnish'd our selves with those Things that were most necessary for us, we prosecuted our Course, and arrived without any considerable Obstacle within a Day's March of Isedon; what do I say within a Day's March? Rather within Sight of the very Walls: And certain Scouts whom the King had fent out to discover, and who hards stay'd for ours, no sooner faw themselves charg'd, but they left the Field, and fought their Safety behind their Ramparts. I in many Occasions had known the Strength of the King of Scythia, but at that Time I admired at his Weakness; and not confidering that his Choler having blinded him, had taken away the greatest part of that Care he ought to have had for his Defence, I thought the Gods, whom his last Actions had exasperated against him, had contributed to his Weakness, and had opposed the Levying of his Troops, fince he had none to form a Body of an Army able to keep the Field against us; and that he was con-Arain'd at our Approach, to shut them up within his Walls. True it is, that he was furpriz'd by our sudden Coming, and that in the little Time we gave him, the Levies he had fent to make in the Provinces, could not be got ready to do him Service. He thought nevertheless, that he might well enough stay for them, and that the Town being strengthened as it was with a great Number of Soldiers, might endure a Siege long enough to afford them Leisure to get on Foot, and to advance to his Relief. He also doubted whether I would adventure to beliege him; and though after the Things I had done for his Service, he had no Reason to despise me, yet could he not fear a Man over whom he had formerly had so great a Power; a Man that commanded none but Troops composed of his own Subjects, and a Man that had no other Foundation in the World, than that of some revolted Forces; or to say better, he knew that he had the better Part of me in his Custody; and that being Master of Berenice, he had the Power in his Hand to make me stoop to what Conditions soever he would impose. However it were, we without receiving any Hindrance, Hindrance, encamp'd within fight of the City Walls, and though, according to the usual Custom, our Army was not strong enough to undertake a Siege of that Importance of the heart of the Kingdom, I passed over that Consideration, and believed I might make use of the Diforder the King was in, to labour for the Liberty of Berenice

The next Day he made eight hundred Horse fally forth upon us, under the Command of Prince Carthasis his Brother. They broke through the first of ours very vigoroufly, and advanc'd with a great deal of Courage toward the rest, when I came in to their Relief, with those Men that happen'd to be on Horseback with me, and our number encreasing in a little time, we gave them fo fmart a Charge, that after a light Resistance, they turned their Backs, and their Fear redoubling at the Name of Arfaces, which our Soldiers repeated every Moment, they forfook their Commander, with a very few that stuck to him, in the middle of one of our Squadrons, where but for my arrival he had been in a great deal of Danger. Those that had staid with Prince Carthasis, having often nam'd him, to move our Men to some Respect of his Person, I cast my Eyes upon him as I came in; and having known him by feveral Marks, I commanded all those that had encompassed him to retire, and putting up the Beaver of my Helment, I made my felf known to the Prince, and drawing near to him with a Countenance which had nothing in it of an Enemy: Ah! Sir, (faid I) is it possible that you should labour your felf for the Ruin of Arfaces who has fo much honoured you! Carthasis discover'd his Face by my Example, and looking upon me with an Action as obliging as mine: I never will labour (answered he) for the Ruin of Prince Artaxerxes, but he knows well enough that I cannot disobey the King's Order, nor refuse the Employments he gives me, with Honour. I found that in speaking those Words, he was fain to force himself before those that were with him; and not being willing to render him suspected by my Endearments, I forbore them for the same Consideration. I am your Prisoner, (added he) but I hope you will give me fair Quarter, and my Captivity

1

ai

n

de

ra

V

th

fic

Pe

tivity will be supportable, being fallen into the Hands of fo generous an Enemy as the valiant Arfaces. You shall not only be free, (replied I) but you shall ever be Master in all Places where I have any Power, and I would oppose your Return, to entreat you to Command here among us, if I did not know you would reject that Offer, I will not engage you in a Conversation that might make the King your Brother jealous of you, but will content my felf with conducting you to your Gates, to repay you a part of what I received of Prince Oroundates at our first Encounter. Carthasis would not have yielded to that Civility, and even refused the Liberty I offered him; but he was not the strongest amongst us, and so was fain at last to submit to the Law we had imposed. Although I was not ignorant of the particular Obligations I had to him, I thought fit only to make him judge by my Actions that I was not ingrateful for them, and not to mention them before those that were with him, who perhaps might have made Reports of it, that would have been disadvantageous to him. Before we parted, after he had hearken'd attentively to the Complaints I made to him of the King, I confess (said he) you have most just Occafion to refent his Actions, and that he carries himself very ingratefully, and very cruelly toward you; but in fine, what is your Intention, do you mean to uncrown Berenice's Father, and will you kill the Subjects, and possess your felf of those Dominions which ought to be the Inheritance of Prince Oroondates? No, (replied I) the Interests of Berenice and Oroondates, shall ever be inseparable from mine own, and tho' I were excufable enough, yet I should make my self some Reparation for the Injuries I have received from a Prince who declares himself their Enemy, and not their Father; I have not the least thought of fuch a Purpose, on the contrary I much rather believe I secure these Dominions to Oroondates, which Arfacomes, and Stratonice would supplant him of; and in short, my utmost Resolution is that of procuring Beremice's Liberty. I only demand that she be not forc'd to take a Husband unworthy of her; and to let you fee this is no false Pretence, wherewith I would cover my RefentResentments, I'll lay down my Arms, if you'll but pass your Word for the King, that Berenice shall be free in her own Intentions. I will not give you my Word for any Thing (answered the Prince) which I am not able to make good; but I promse you I will employ all the Power I have with the King to work him to it, and that within three Days I'll let you know his final Determination. You do me a Favour (said I) which I durst not have demanded of you, and since after the Destiny of my last Messenger, I had no way lest to learn the King's Resolutions, I accept the Offer you are pleased to make me, and conjure you to remember it. After some other Words we parted, and having brought him within a Bow-

shoot of the Gate, I retired to our Tents.

y

-

-

-

1,

lf

lt

r

h

n

0

ee

y

The Opinion of my most passionate Friends was, that I ought no longer to spare the King, who laboured for my Destruction so many ways, and who, if I gave him the Leisure, would make some or other of his Enterprizes take effect; but I gave no ear to their Advice, and refolved not to come to Extremities, till the Extremity of my Affairs. For this purpose, I made our Troops lie still, and suffered them not to do any Act of Hostility against their Country, protectiong the Goods and Houses, which the Inhabitants of Isledon had without the Town, and not permitting the least Hurt to be done to any Thing that belong'd to them. I also set forth Manifests whereby I declar'd, that I was not their Enemy, that it was no intent to hurt them had made me take up Arms, and that by all my Actions I would let them fee I had loft nothing of that Affection I had born them, that I only demanded of them the Liberty of their Princess, and that I conjured them not to fuffer the Daughter of their Soveraign, and the Sister of Prince Oroundates to be forced for a Man unworthy of her, and a Man who in all the Favour and Authority he had enjoyed, had never given them any Testimonies of Affection.

To these Words, I added many others able to justify my Intentions towards them, and to make some Impression in their Minds, and in the mean time I expected the Performance of Prince Carthasis's Promise, and begg'd

earneitly

earnestly of the Gods in some degree to appease the King's Anger, and to give us some Means to avoid those Missortunes, whereinto his cruel Obstinacy was going to precipitate us. The three Days within which the Prince had promised I should hear from him were already past, as also part of the Night that followed them; and I began to complain of Breach of his Word, when a little before Day they brought a Man into my Tent, who presently made himself known to me for one of his Servants. Carthasis had taken care himself to get him out of the Gates by his Authority, for fear he should have been searcht, and the Letters taken which he had about him. As soon as he was come in he delivered them to me, and having open'd them with great Impatiency, I read these Words in the first:

Prince Carthasis to Prince Arsaces.

SIR,

I have forgotten nothing that I owe to your Friendship, and to the Remembrance of your first and last Obligations; but my most sensible Grief is, that I have had too little Credit with the King, as not to be able to shake the least of his Resolutions; all that endeavour to d shake the least of his Resolutions; all that endeavour to d shade him from them, pass in his Opinion for his Enemies, and I wanted but very little of being put into that number. In fine, he will have Berenice marry Arsacomes, and though that Princess tells him, she shall meet her Funeral in that Marriage, she has no longer delay granted her than the remainder of this Night, and the Day sollowing is destin'd without fail for those unjust and cruel Nuptials; 'tis with an extreme Sorrow I send you such unwelcome News; think of the Means you have to prevent it, and never doubt of my Fidelity, since you are too generous to desire any Proofs of it that are contrary to Virtue.

I was

]

no

be wii

nec

at t

fibl

was

and

nor

Mis

char

did

noth

How

fhall idle Life

I fuff

,

y

è

15

20

t,

Æ

14

e-

00

and

I was so exceedingly transported at the Reading of this Letter, that if I had not hop'd the other was from my Princess, I should never have had the Patience to look upon it; and scarce was I able in the Rage that blinded me, to know her lovely Characters; yet did I cast my Eyes upon them, after I had kiss'd them, and with inward Motions that were altogether extraordinary; I read these Words:

The Princess Berenice to Prince Arsaces.

HE Hour of my Death is near, my dear Arfaces, and to Morrow must be the Day of my Funeral. I write these Words, not so much to tell you this ill News, as to protest to you, that I will persevere to my very Grave in my first Resolution. Take Comfort in a Misjortune you cannot divert, and be at least assured, that if Berenice cannot be yours, you shall never have the Discontent to see her live with Arsacomes.

It is most certain that if my Anger had not strengthned me, I should have fallen into dangerous Faintings at the forrowful reading of this Letter, and all the Senfibleness I had ever shewed in my most cruel Afflictions, was a Matter of nothing in Comparison of this last; and indeed I had never been so near to my Destruction, nor had I ever had so great Reason to fear my utmost They that faw me then, faid I was fo Misfortunes. chang'd that it was not possible to know me, and that I did Actions fo different from my ordinary Carriage, as nothing but my Rage alone could have made excufable. How (cried I with a furious Action) shall I live, and shall Berenice be in the Arms of Arsacomes? Shall I stand idle at the Head of twenty thousand Men, while my Life is facrific'd within these Walls; and briefly, shall I fuffer my adored Princess to be violently taken fron me,

Ъ

la

ti

uí

I

of

cai

ren

and

ftir

thr

our

mal

terp

Frie

whi

adva

bein

Dive

end !

shall

ly th

not c

where

utmoi

pany.

you p

Vo

and that unworthy Rival to triumph over my Happiness, and over my Reputation? Ah! no Arfacomes, thou shalt not so easily effect so high an Enterprize, I can tear away that Life, for all these Ramparts, which I could have taken from thee at the Head of thy Army, and this nuptial Torch, shall without doubt be that which must light thee to thy Burial. No, King of Scythia, thou shalt not have the Satisfaction, to have so cruelly made an End of the Remnants of miserable Darius; and that which thou hast not been able to do by Poison, by the Weapons of thy Guards, and by the Swords of thy Aslassinates, shall not be executed by the Violence thou usest against Berenice. No, my dear Princess, I'll not abandon you in the Extremity you are brought to for happy Arfaces; I fay happy, fince they that think they labour for his Ruin, labour for his Glory, and for his Fortune; and that the Constancy you shew in his Favour, is a thousand times more dear to him, than all the Mischiess which his Enemies prepare him can be terrible. Fear nothing, virtuous Princess, while Arfaces is alive, and believe there are no Walls fo strong, as to keep a desperate Lover from coming to you. While I was speaking these Words, my Tent fill'd with a good number of my chiefest Friends, and of the principal Officers of the Army, whom defire of hearing the News I had received, and that of the Atfliction I express'd, brought thither.

The fight of them comforted me very much, and not being willing longer to defer demanding the last effect of their good Will. Now it is, (faid I) my brave and generous Friends, that Arfaces challenges the accomplishment of your Promises; he has but a Minute more to live, unless his Life be prolong'd by your Assistance. All that you have done for me hitherto, is but a Preparative to what I desire of you to Day; and that which I defire of you to Day is of fuch infinite Consequence, that if you will fusfer me to cast my self at your Feet and embrace your Knees to obtain it, you shall see me abase my felf to all manner of Submissions to work upon you. Behold, (faid I, shewing them the Letters I had receiv'd, which Theodates began to read aloud) behold to what Estate my Assairs are reduced, and how much Time I have

f

0

1-

I

it

1-

y

u.

ı,

at

I

ve

have left to make use of your Friendship. You know I have deterred it as long as possibly I could, and that even contrary to your own Counsel, I have conserved a Respect toward the King of Scythia, for the Loss whereof his Cruelty would have dispenc'd with me sufficiently. How all Considerations are quench'd in the Despair into which he has thrown me, and being no longer in a Condition to have any of my own Safety, I must at length cast away all those that have till now imprudently withheld me. I would have faid more if that Company of generous Men had suffered me, and if they had not interrupted me altogether, crying that I should lead them whither I would, and that I should presently declare what I intended, with a perfect Assurance that it should be executed, or that they would all perish to the very last Man. When I saw them in that courageous Resolution; My dear Friends, (faid I) fince you will have me use that Term, to Day I will assault this Town; not that I defire the Ruin of it, or that I would shed the Blood of your Countrymen, and of a People to which I neither can nor will bear a Hatred, but I will this Day pull Berenice by meer force out of the Hands of a cruel Father, and of an unworthy Husband, to whom they have deflined her. For this Purpose, I my self will fall on with three thousand Men, at this next Gate, and having open'd our Passage by the Violence of our Rams, I hope I shall make my Way to the Palace for the Execution of my Enterprize. To make it the more feasible, you, my gallant Friends, must begin the Storm in three other Places, which shall be assign'd to three amongst you. You shall advance with your Rams, and present your Ladders, but being I defire your Assault should only serve to make a Diversion, and to draw the Resistance thither, to the end I may find the more Facility on the other Side, you shall not need to prosecute your Attempt more obstinately than Necessity will require to amaze the Enemy, not desiring (as I have told you) to expose this City, where I have a great many very dear Friends, to the utmost Calamities and Misfortunes which usually accompany the taking of Places by Force. Go therefore, if you please, to prepare, and put all Things in the Readi-Vol. IV. M

ness that will be needful for this Design, but I conjure you let it be done with all the haste that can be possible; and since 'tis upon it alone my Life depends, as you desire the Gods should favour you, take some Care for the Sasety of him, whom you have judg'd worthy of your

Friendship.

Leotaris, with two thousand Men, shall attack the Gate of the Issedons, Cleorestes with a like Number that of Serey, Mazentes that of Mars, and Prince Theodates, if he please, shall stay at the Head of our main Body, which he shall draw up into Battalia, and keep in Readiness to re-inforce the Assault where there shall be need of his Assistance. Although this Resolution proceeded from my Despair, yet nevertheless it was approved, and all these valiant Men ran to execute the Orders I had given them, with fo much Affection that I conceived a marvellous Hope of the Success of my Enterprize. I will not detain you longer in the Recital of our Preparations, nor with that of the Thoughts wherewith I was then tormented; to be brief, within two Hours after the Sun was up, all the Engines for Battery were ready, and all the Squadrons prepared to march against the Town. They drew near to it in gallant Order, and divided themfelves according to the Quarters that were assign'd them. They that faw them appear from the top of the Walls, trembled at that Object; and the King himself, who was told of it, judged quickly he should have other Employments that Day than that of the Marriage for which he had appointed it. The three Commanders having taken the Ways to their feveral Places, fell on at the first Entrenchments of the Town, and though they found tiem guarded with some Men, they assaulted them so vigorously, that after a faint Resistance, and a very Inall Loss, they made themselves Masters of them; and coming up to the Moat, began, at the Mercy of a Shower of Arrows that pour'd upon them, to cast in Bavins, and to endeavour to fill it up with an admirable Resolution.

They had been fighting above half an Hour, and the greatest part of the Garrison was run to the Desence of those Ports; when I, at the Head of my Battalion, making those that had the Conduct of the Engines to ad-

without

vance, fet forward with a wondrous Confidence drawn from the Looks of those that accompanied me, in which I read an unalterable Resolution to conquer, or else to die for my Interests. I confirm'd them in that generous Defign, by all the Words my Passion could put into my Mouth, and finding them as forward as my felf, we advanc'd toward the Gate, in a fashion that froze the fearful Hearts of those that were there to defend it. I had chosen that Port as most convenient for my Design, and though it was fortified with some Works that were reafonable good, it was yet the weakest of any about the Town, because of the excessive Hardness of a Rock in that Place, into which it was impossible to cut a Moat. Wherefore after being Masters of the Out-works, one might easily march on Horseback to the very Gate, there being nothing to oppose the Passage of the Rams, nor of the Cavalry. I instantly summon'd the Out-works by a Trumpet, and having let them know it was Arfaces that assaulted them in Person, my good Fortune had made that Name so terrible, that nothing but their fear of the King kept them in any manner of Defence. But scarce had they seen me alight, with a good part of my Men, to advance with our Swords towards their Entrenchments, when after having shot a few Arrows, which hardly wounded any of our Men, they retired in Diforder toward the Gate. There they made some slight Refistance, but when they saw us get on Horseback again to fall upon them, and that instead of making our Rams advance, we prepared our felves to break into the Town along with them, they quitted the Gates, and having shut them, left us free access, without any other Hinderance than that of their Arrows which play'd upon us from the top of the Wall.

They shot so great a number of them, that our Approach was very difficult, and dangerous, but I gave order to our Archers to aim at those that appear'd upon the Battlements, and at the same time covering our selves with our Shields, we drove our Rams very impetuously against the Gate. A great many of our Men sell in this Assault, I had two Horses kill'd under me, and most of those that made the Rams play (whereof divers were

t

y d

r

d

e

of

a-

d-

e,

M 2

without Arms) lost their Lives in that Service. Yet those that remained, persisted so firmly in their Office, and I encourag'd them fo well, keeping still at the Head of them, that in spite of all Resistance, they came up to the Gates, batter'd them in Pieces, and open'd us as large a Passage as we could desire. Then did I get again on Horseback the fourth time, and rushed on with my Sword in my Hand into the middle of those that defended the Entrance, in which Action I was fo bravely feconded, that within a short time, part of my Enemies being flain, and the rest put to flight, I had free Way into the Streets, and began to enter them with Facility enough. Some Soldiers that were either obstinate, or interessed in Arsacomes his Party, found their Death in the Point of our Weapons; but as foon as ever I believed my felf Master, I, by a Trumper, commanded the Inhabitants to retire into their Houses, promising they should receive no Hurt either in their Goods or Perfons; and at the same time gave order from one to another thro' all the Squadrons that followed me, that none should dare to kill either Citizens or Soldiers, except those who by their wilful Resistance drew their Death upon themselves.

By this Command I fav'd the Lives of many thousands, who would have lost them in the first Fury of our Soldiers; but yet the Town was in a general Consternation, and notwithstanding all the Endeavours that were used to beget an Assurance in the Inhabitants, there was no Possibility to hinder the confused Noise that was heard on all Sides, nor the Cries of Women and Children, which refounded every where in a very lamentable manner. The King, who from one to another had heard that I was Master of the Town, strucken with a mortal Grief, and fancying the Mischief to be greater than it was, because he was conscious he had given me Reason enough to cast away all Confideration of him, had left those Places whither the Noise of the first Assaults had drawn him, and being followed by Arfacomes, Prince Carthalis, and many of his Men, had refolv'd to die fighting, and not furvive the Shame, which a Stranger alone, and abandoned, made him fuffer in the middle of his Dominions.

While

While he was coming toward me, I was advanced as far as the Palace, where I heard he had left the Princess guarded, and having open'd my Way with my Sword through them that strove to stop it, I was got at last to the Gates thereof, and feeing them defended by a great number of Soldiers, I flew in amongst them, and made my Passage free, by the Death of those that would have hindred it. When once I had entred the Court, I alighted, and having commanded as many of those that were with me as I had need of, to do the like I left the rest at the Gate, with Orders to stay there till my return, and went up the Stairs with my Sword in my Hand, my Arms befinear'd with Blood in many Places, in a Posture that struck Fear into all that were in my Way. I met no Obstacle till I came to the Princess's Lodgings, where they the King had lett to guard her, hoping for no Pardon from him if they abandoned her, perfitted in a Resistance which was tatal to them, and which made the greatest Part of them fall at the Doors which they defended. At last that of my Princess's Chamber was open to me, and as soon as I had set my Foot within it, I faw her in a Corner of the Room, as much affrighted as if our Delign had been against her very Life. True it is that such a Spectacle, the Fight that had been at her Chamber Door, the Blood whereof ran all about, and the Sight of a great many dead, and dying, was up, all the Engines for Battery were ready, and Soldiers, were sufficient to beget a Fear in her, neither did I think it any thing strange, but judging that I had no Time to lofe in Words, I only faid, Madam, you are free, nor shall this be the Day that you shall marry Arsacomes. After these Words, (to which I neither receiv'd, nor expected any Answer) I took her in my Arms fainting, and almost in a Swoon, and commanded Criton to do the like to Cillenia; then going out again with that precious Burthen, and no longer finding any Hinderance that could retard me, I went down into the Court the fame Way that I came up. In the mean time the Princess's Spirits were absolutely gone, which I not perceiving, put her into the Arms of one of my Men, while I got on Horseback, and received her from him again, without M 3

without observing it; so much was I transported in the Condition I then faw my felf, and so extremely taken up with the Thought of what I had yet to do. Scarce was I out of the Palace-Gate, when I faw the King accompanied by Prince Carthasis, Arsacones, and many others, but their Number was little able to dispute the Victory against me. He had no sooner known me, and seen the Princess his Daughter in my Arms, but advancing before all his Men, after he had often call'd me Traitor, he darted a Javelin at me which he held in his Right-hand, and which came whizzing over my Shoulder. I trembled for fear of Berenice; but that was not able to make me lofe the Respect I bore to the King's Person, wherefore having given my Men a command only to defend themselves, and to make the Retreat after me; King of Scythia, (cried I) I will neither have thy Life, nor thy City, but leave them both for my Princess. Arsacomes may live also, fince I cannot give him his Death without Advantage, but he shall live without Berenice: At these Words, calling to those of my Party to open and give me Passage, I put on my Horse in the midst of them, covering my Princess with my Shield, and crying to my Men to follow me, fince I had gotten what I defired. "I returned to the Gate by which I came in, without ony other Difficulty, except the Croud of my own Soldiers. They all followed me out, and whether it were that they were glad to receive the Command of sparing their Countrymen, or that really they bore that Respect to me, I could not have wish'd a more exact Obedience than they shew'd in that Encounter.

I was out of the Gates, and retiring toward our Camp with a Satisfaction which you may better imagine than I express, when I perceived that my Princess was in a Swoond, the Knowledge whereof did extremely moderate my Joy; and though I very well judg'd that it was but a Faintness caused by her Fear, out of which she would easily come to her self again, and that thereby I gain'd the Liberty to steal Favours which had never been granted me, yet could I not see her in that Condition, without falling into a mortal Sorrow; and I rode back to my Tents with a Countenance which did but little testify

testify the fortunate Success of my Enterprize. In the mean time I had fent to Leotaris, and the other Commanders, to draw off from their Assaults, and within a little while the Town was left free, and in the same Condition it had been the Day before. As foon as I was come into my Tent, and had laid my Princess upon a Bed, I cast cold Water often upon her Face, sent for Physicians, and all Persons that were able to give her any help, but their Assistance was not necessary, for either the Water or Time brought her to her self again. No fooner did she open her Eyes, but she saw me by her upon my Knees, having my Lips tast cemented to one of her fair Hands. She look'd a while about the Chamber, and prefently after, having turn'd her Eyes upon my Face, upon Theodates, and upon Cyllenia who stood by her, she knew the Truth of that Adventure; and sitting up, after she had pull'd away her Hand from between mine; Arfaces, (faid she) what have you done? I have done what you have Reason to expect from my Affection (answered I) and I have drawn you out of the Arms of that unworthy Husband they intended you. Yes, (faid Berenice) but you have also pull'd me out of my Father's.

The Princess had no sooner spoken these Words, but a Chilness ran through all my Veins, and my Astonishment was fo great, that not being able to make any Reply, I only fix'd my Eyes upon her Face. All they that were in the Room observ'd my Confusion, and the Princess making use of my Silence to proceed: Arfaces, (continued she) since you have satisfied your Love, satisfy my Honour also; I am not offended at your Action, but if you have lov'd me, I befeech you in the Name of all the Gods, to restore me my Liberty. If her first Words had astonished me, these last pierc'd my very Heart, and giving me that Sense again, which her former ones had taken from me, they likewise gave me the Strength to express it. How, Madam, (said I) do you demand your Liberty of me, and are not you free, are not you Soveraign amongst us, whereas before you were a Captive, and a Prisoner in that Place from whence I have delivered you? 'Tis true, (added the Princess) I was a Captive, M 4

and I was unfortunate, but that Captivity, and those Misfortunes were better becoming, and more advantageous to Berenice, than this Liberty you have restor'd her, or this Empire you have given her over you; and if you will have me make Use of it, it shall only be to conjure you to send me back to the King my Father.

This Discourse absolutely kill'd me, or at least it left me a Life much worse than Death it self, and gave me a Desire to put an End to't before the Eyes of that cruel Princess. What, Madam, (reply'd I, quite transported) would you have me fend you back to the King, and put you again into the Power of that Arfacomes, to whom you had fo great an Aversion, and who this Day should have been your Husband? Has half a Day been able to make fo great a Change in your Mind? And do you now reject Arfaces to prefer that Arfacomes whom yesterday you hated worse than Death? Arfaces (answer'd the Princess, with a more resolute Voice than before) never was more dear to me, and Arfacomes never more odious than at this present; and if you well remember the Hopes I have given, you cannot accuse me of a Change, which neither half a Day, no nor my whole Life ever made me capable of. I promis'd you I would never love any Body but your felf, I promifed you that I would marry Death rather than Arfacomes; but I never made you hope, either by my Discourses, or by my Actions, that I would fly from my Father's Arms to follow you, and that I would licence my felf in Favour of you, to do shameful Actions, and such as are unworthy of a Princess.

I never demanded any Proofs of your Affection, interrupted I, which the strictest Severity could condemn;
but what other Remedy could I apply to so pressing an
Extremity, and what Means had you to avoid that Misfortune, which you your felf had given me Notice of?

Death, reply'd the Princess, which shall ever be less cruel to
me, than the Shame you have prepared me; and tho' I gave
you Notice of my Missortune, I did not demand Remedies of
you which you could not give me without ruining me. I only protested to you that I would never be but yours, and that
Promise shall be inviolably performed. And which Way do

you

0

tu

to

D

W

it

ar

tuc

YOU

fin Lij

kno

you keep that Promise (said I, quite transported) if you command me to restore you to Arfacomes? Tou shall not restore me to Arsacomes, (added the Princess) but only to the King my Father, whom my Honour Suffers me not to for-(ake without his Consent; and if the King give me to Arfacomes, I by my Death can oppose his Tyranny without offending my Reputation. Ah! Madam, (cry'd I, stepping back a little, and lifting up my Hands and Eyes to Heaven) I had rather leave you to Arfacomes, than leave you unto Death; and if one of us must die, 'tis only. this forfaken Arfaces, this Arfaces who no way but by dying can justify the Cowardise that will reflect upon him for quitting you to his Rival. Yes, Madam, I am ready to give you the cruel Proofs of my Submission which you demand; and if you yet defire any others, you shall see me run to them with the same Resignation. Let's be gone from this Place, which is more odique to us both, than the Prison from whence I deliver'd you; let's be gone from this Place, so fatal to your Reputation; and fince you find so much Shame, and so much Missortune in the Company of Arfaces, let's go again to the King of Scythia, let's go and receive Arfacomes; I am ready to facrifice my Interests, to facrifice my Life to the Glory of that Rival, that I may ferve Beremice to the utmost, as ungrateful, and as much changed as she is; and it shall never be reproach'd to me, that either her Ingratitude, or her Change, dispensed me from the Obedience I owe her. With these Words, I commanded a Chariot to be made ready; but tho' my Grief, or rather my Dispair, was visible in my Face, and that my Princess was deeply touch'd with it, yet was the not shaken in her Resolution; only she let me see by her Tears, that it was not without Sorrow she parted from me: And having look'd upon me a while without speaking, You are ungrateful your self, said she, to accuse ber of Ingratitude, and of Change, who for all you are so Great, for all you are so worthy to be lov'd, loves you better than she ought, since se loves you better than ber Quiet, and better than ber Life. The Event perhaps will make my Intentions better known to you than they are; and you without doubt will learn, to least in boot Mig adw male of

that the I prefer my Duty before your Satisfaction, I'll prefer my Grave before any Man in the World except Arsaces.

In another Season this Discourse would have been fufficient to content me; but in the pressing Extremity I was then reduc'd to, there was little Probability I could be fatisfied with Words; neither did I forbear to testify enough by my Actions how little Effect they had wrought upon me, and how firm a Constancy soever I affected, to shew her to my latest End, that I made no Difficulty to obey her: I could not be Master of those impetuous Motions that drove me headlong into Rage; and not being willing to fay any more to Berenice, that could make her believe I waver'd in the Execution of her Commands, I turn'd towards Theodates, and those gallant Men that had feconded me fo bravely. Ah! My generous Companions, (faid I, with Tears in my Eyes) how unprofitably have I employ'd your Valour, and how vainly have I engaged you, to shed the Blood of your Countrymen, and your own! You, out of your extraordinary Generosity, have link'd your selves to the Interest of a poor Stranger; you have marched chearfully against your King, for the Establishment of my Repose, and of my Fortune: You have feen the Walls of the Metropolis of Scythia, nay you have made your felves Masters in a few Moments, of a City, the Taking whereof, my Men less valiant, would have required whole Years; and briefly, by the Effects of a prodigious Courage, you have given me this Princess, for whose Sake alone I had accepted your Assistance: But, O Gods, how little do I profit by all you have done for me, and how cruel, how fatal will the Fruit of your Victory be to me? Ah! how much more happy had I been, to have fallen by the Sword of Arfacomes, or to have lost my Life before the Gates of Ifedon, than to give it up now to the Inhumanity of Berenice!

While I was lamenting in this Manner, and drew Tears of Compassion from all that heard me, I saw the Chariot coming, which I had given Order for, to carry back the Princess. That Sight re-doubled my Affliction, but struggling with my utmost Power to get the Mastery of it, in an Occasion wherein I stood in need of all my

Forti-

Fortitude, I drew near to Berenice, and offering her my Hand, with a forc'd Constancy, Come, Madam, said I, let's go back again to the King your Father; stay no longer here in the Camp, and in the Tent of his Enemy; all Things are ready for your Departure, and you are as free as you can desire.

Berenice's Tears which she shed in great Abundance, would not suffer her to reply; but only taking my Hand, which I had presented her, she went out of the Tent in such a Condition as made me know it was not without a great deal of Reluctance she gave her self up to the severe Precepts of her Duty: When she was gotten into the Chariot, and Cyllenia with her, she strove to break the Silence she so long had kept; and looking upon me with drowned Eyes, You shall quickly know (said she) that without Inhumanity you cannot accuse me, and that the Action you see me do, ought rather to draw Pity from you, than those cruel Reproaches you have used.

Farewel Artaxerxes, (pursued she, forcing her Modesty to embrace me) leave the Care of my Destiny to me, and remember that if Berenice live not for you, she will not live for her self. With these Words, after she had expressly commanded me not to stir out of my Tent, and to give her only a small Convoy to the City-Gate, she turn'd her Eyes from me, and bidding the Charioteer drive away, departed, and carried with her all my Joy, and all the Hopes I had conceived. Theodates took the Care to conduct her, and following at a little Distance, lost not Sight of the Chariot till it entred into the Gates.

O Gods! in what a fad Condition did I remain after she was gone, how sull of Sorrow were my Words, my Actions, and my Thoughts? All my Friends endeavour'd but in vain to comfort me, and when I had endured their Persecutions a good while, I pray'd them toward the Evening to leave me alone, and having persuaded them to it with much ado, I pass'd the small Remainder of that Day, and the Night following, in Torments that cannot possibly be conceiv'd. All that the Consideration of the greatest Miseries can produce in a Heart, all the utmost Cruelty, all the utmost Violence that can enter

in a Man's Thoughts, was Gentleness, and Mildness in respect of what mine made me suffer. In the Beginning, they tended all to Fury, and following the first Motions of my Anger, I let my felf be impetuously carried away by my Passions. Why do I complain, (faid I) why do I weakly shed Tears like a Woman, since I have the Force, fince I have the Courage of a Man, and fince I still have Arms in my Hand, to make part of my Miseries fall back upon the Heads of my Enemies? Let's no longer deliberate upon a Matter, which my just Indignation ought to have refolv'd; and since we must necessarily perish, let us make whatsoever contributes to our Ruin perish with us. I have still the same Forces which this very Day made me Master of this City, where my ingrateful Princess, and my barbarous Enemies are thut up. The Valour of my Companions is not cool'd fince Morning, and I have Courage enough my felf, to execute in this highest Pitch of Despair, what I have executed once already in my more moderate Resentments; Let's go therefore, and employ both theirs and mine for my final Revenge; and fince we must run to our Grave, let us make a ruined Palace, and a defolate City our Monument: Let us once more force our Entrance into the Gates of this hated Town; but let us use our Victory otherwise than we did before; let's wash the Streets of it with Rivers of that Blood, for which we have undefervedly been lavish of our own; let's carry a Thoufand Deaths (if it be capable to receive fo many) into the Breast of unworthy and unthankful Arsacomes: Let's facrifice that Victim to ingrateful Berenice, which is but too justly due unto my Love; and to fatisfy our felf by a compleat Revenge, in a Season when all Respect, and all pass'd Considerations ought to be extinguish'd in us, let us bury the King of Scythia, I fay the King of Scythia himself, in the Ruins of his Capital City; let us pour forth to our lawful Anger the Blood of that barbarous King, who by so many unworthy Means, has fought our Destruction; and if Berenice be offended at that Revenge, let us make her Satisfaction by employing our own Hands to give her this Life, which she for triwial Scruples has fo ungratefully abandoned; let's never

C

ai

th

Sc

stand considering in this Design, but run to execute it without deferring any longer. It is not necessary to stay till it be Morning, the Night is much more proper for the Execution I intend; its gloomy Horror is far more fuitable to that of my afflicted Soul, and the Darkness of it will ferve to blind that Pity which might perhaps be caused by the Sight of dismal Objects. In this impetuous Torrent, which hurried me away, I started up in my Bed, fully persuaded and satisfied in the Resolution I had taken: I had nothing in my Mouth, and in my Thoughts, but Death, Blood, Fire, and all the most dreadful Imaginations that can be fancied, and I found fome Sweetness and some Comfort in the Satisfaction I hop'd for. I was already opening my Mouth, to call for those that were necessary for the Orders I meant to give, when a more gentle Spirit than that of Revenge, crept infenfibly into my Heart, and moderated the Violences of it with more Success than I expected. It first made me partly to abhor the Things I had refolv'd on, and then it endeavour'd to diffuade me from them by all the Reasons it could reprsent. By little and little, Tenderness stole into the Place of Anger, and I felt my felf mollified by Reflections that were too powerful to be opposed.

It is true, (faid I to my felf again) there is a Necesfity thou must die, but thou must die as thou hast lived, and not fuffer thy Death to cast a Scandal upon thy Love, nor upon thy former Actions. 'Tis nothing but thy Life, and thine alone that's due to thy Misfortunes; and the Gods do justly demand it of thee, fince thou hast shamefully conserved it, after the Loss of all thy Friends: The People of Medon, this poor People, in whom thou hast found nothing but Assection towards thee, is innocent of thy Miseries, nor canst thou sacrifice it to thine Indignation, without blafting thy Fame with Cruelty and Ingratitude. Arfacemes indeed is perhaps worthy of Death, but thou oughtest to leave him a Life, which thou hast fav'd him more than once, to keep the Glory of thy Actions entire to the End of thine. The King of Sothia would destroy thee, but he's the Father of Berenice and Oroundates; and if the Gods had given thee a Thousand

Thousand Lives, thou oughtest to lose them all, rather than attempt any thing against his. Rather ask Pardon of thy Mistress, and of thy Friend, for the cruel Thought thou hast had against their Father, and blush at that paricidial Design, which renders thee the most criminal of all Men living: No, (added I, within a while after) 'tis not by violent Ways that thou must satisfy thy felf; Berenice disapproves them, and I ought no more to interest her, nor hers in the Effects of my Dispair. die in fuch a Fashion as may be obliging to Berenice, and obliging to the King of Scythia; let's at the End of our Life take up that Respect again, which we seem'd to have lost; and let us order it so, that my Mistress, and my Friend, may in the last of my Actions, find Reparation for the Discontents I have given their Father. This last Thought drew me into a Design that was more pleasing to me than all those I before had fancied, and after having a little examin'd it, I fix'd upon it fo firmly, that nothing was able to divert me.

The Day beginning to appear, just as I had settled my Resolution, I got out of Bed, and calling for Paper, wrote these Words, with an Intent to make them be de-

liver'd to Theodates.

Arfaces to Theodates.

In I too dear and too generous Friend, one of the most sensible Griefs that accompany me to my Grave, is that of parting with you for ever, after having engag'd you, and so many gallant Men after you, in a Party destructive to your Repose, and to your Fortune; neither in the Reasons I have here to die, should I have ever resolv'd to forsake you, if I did not know that I leave you in a Condition, wherein you are able to make an advantageous Peace, both for your self, and for the rest. The King of Scythia who demands nothing but the Death of Arsaces, and whom the Death of Arsaces stall have satisfied, will grant you all the Conditions you could ask, and so long as you have Arms in your Hands, you may make them your selves with all manner of Advantage. Pardon me the Troubles whereinto the Miseries

have

of my Life have cast you, obtain the same Pardon for one of our faithful Friends, and love the Memory of Arsaces, since if he could have lived, he would have lived that he might have been always yours.

I left this Letter upon my Table, with a Command to one of my Servants to give it to Theodates within Two Hours; and at the same Time calling for my Arms, and a Horse, I got upon him, not suffering any Body to go along with me. I even refus'd the Attendance of Criton and Leotaris, with many others, being come to the Door of my Tent while I was taking Horse, I opposed the Offer they made to accompany me, and entreated them so earnestly, to afford my Sorrow an Hour's Solitariness, that not being able to deny it, they left me at Liberty. I first took a little Circuit to hinder them from knowing what Way I went; and when I was out of their Sight, I turn'd toward the nearest Gate of the City, I quickly heard the outmost Corps de Garde, and found Soldiers in those Places from whence I had driven them the Day before. I defired those that bad me stand, (putting up the Beaver of my Head-piece but very little) that they would carry me to the King, to whom I had a Matter of Consequence to impart; and they having led me to the Gates, those that were there upon the Guard, feeing but a fingle Man, made no Difficulty to let him in.

Having ask'd the first I met where the King was; He is at the Temple of Tellus, said they, where the greatest Part of the Court is assembled, and where the King intends this Morning to celebrate the Marriage of the Princess with Arsacomes. Scarce was I able to forbear discovering my self at this Answer; but my Helmet cover'd the Alteration of my Countenance, as it also disguised my Voice; nor was it thought strange, that passing for a Man who was come over from the Party of Arsaces, to give the King some Intelligence, I should keep my Beaver down, and desire to be unknown to every Body but the King himself, to whom they were leading me. I came to the Gates of that satal Temple, where my Funeral was preparing: And tho' one would

have thought, that in the Condition the Town then was, the People should rather have been manning the Walls, than in that Temple; yet was the Croud fo great there, that if they that carried me had not employ'd the King's Authority, I should hardly have gotten Passage. King had not been long come to the Temple, and he was gone thither so early, for fear his Intention should be hinder'd by some new Accident. Neither the Respect I had shewn towards his Person, and towards his Town which I had quitted to him, after I had made my felf Master of it, nor the last Proof I had given him in sending back the Princess, had been sufficient to appeale him, or to arm him against the Incitements of the Queen, and Arfacomes; but knowing very well that I was in a Condition to overthrow all his Designs, if he deferred them any longer, he had a Mind to hasten the only Revenge he was able to take of me, for fear I should prevent him, and should a second Time deprive him of the Means he had to effect it. For this Purpose, neglecting the Defence of his City, and trufting it to the Hands of others, he gave himself over wholly to his Anger, and was much more eagerly fixt upon his Defire of punishing Arfaces, than upon that of protecting his People, and conserving his Dominions. All the Princess's Tears, and all her Relistance was but unprofitable; she had vainly begg'd of the King for some Delay, and that Prince abandon'd to his Wrath, without giving Ear to her earnest Prayers, had caus'd her to be put into his Chariot, and had carried her himself to the Temple, whither Argacomes was gone before, with the Queen and all those of his Party. As foon as ever the Priest had appeared, the Princess casting her self at the King's Feet, had prorested that fhe would rather die there, than yield the Confent that was demanded of her; she had conjured him by a Flood of Tears, to recede from his cruel Determination, to have Regard unto the last Effects of her Respect and Duty, which had made her forfake Arfaces, to put her felf again into his Hands: But her Tears and Prayers were all to no Purpose; and when once she had found that nothing in the World was able to mollify him, fhe had turned toward Arfacomes, who full of Hopes, permitted

Se

fi

no

W

for

 $H\epsilon$

2

Ar

thy

hol

cab

exp

Def

mitted the King to press her in his Favour; and looking upon him with Eyes enflam'd with Anger, Think not, wicked Man, (had fhe faid) that this Authority which thou unworthily abusest, can ever be able to change my Inclinations; with what Violence foever they are opposed, I will never look upon thee as other than as my mortal Enemy; and thou well may'ft make me fuffer Death, but never make me to become thy Wife. comes left the Care of answering these Words unto the King, and he was going to do it with a Sharpness that made all the Company tremble for that poor Princess, when I prefented my felf before him, and preventing the Reply he was about to make, Stay, (cried I to him) flay King of Scythia, and be not so hasty to dispatch a Sacrifice, whereof I am the principal Victim. With thefe Words I made an End of opening my Passage to him, and casting my Helmet at his Feet, discover'd the Face of Arfaces to him, and to the whole Assembly. I know not whether Fear or Amazement feiz'd first upon the King; the Remembrance of the Day before, coming prefently into his Mind, made him believe I had entred the Town again in Arms, and that having forc'd the Gates a fecond Time, I came now at the last to cross his Defign, and take Revenge for all the Injuries I had received.

I read his Apprehension in his Countenance, but I fuffered him not long to continue in it; for looking upon him with an Action much more resolute than his, Settle thy felf (faid I) and do not fear the Sight of a fingle Man, and of a Man whom all thy Cruelties have not been able to make thine Enemy: I neither come with a Power, nor with an Intention to take Revenge for fo many unspeakable Wrongs; I only bring thee a Head, which is necessary for thy perfect Satisfaction, and a Head which with Berenice thou should'st present to Arfacomes. Behold my Arms, which I throw down at thy Feet, (purfued I, letting fall my Sword) and behold at last this Arfaces, to whom thou bear'st so implacable a Hatred, who comes both alone, and unarm'd, to expose himself to all Indignation; but as it is with no Defign to hurt thee, fo neither is it with any to appeale

fe

fe

ro

pl

CO

th

fre

D

D

me

ma

jeE

aga

eve

W

to

cef

mo

wa

pease thee that he here presents himself; he demands no Reparation for the Injuries thou hast done him, nor does he pretend to any Favour by those thou hast receiv'd from him, and he would be asham'd to receive Life from them, to whom he has been accustomed to

give it.

Pour forth all the Effects of thine Anger upon this Artaxerxes, the Son of Darius, who with thine own Forces has assaulted thy Walls, has forc'd thy Town, has pulled thy Daughter out of thy Arms, and has reduc'd thee thy felf, once more to be beholding to him for a Kingdom, and for a Life which he hath fo often preserved; but spare Berenice who is not guilty of Arfaces his Crimes. Revenge not foreign Wrongs upon thine own Blood, and fince it has no Affinity with that of Darius, wreak upon that of Darius alone, what soever of greatest Cruelty thy Rage can think. Arfaces has deserv'd Death, but Berenice has not deserv'd the Punishment thou inflict'st upon her; or if she had deserv'd it, 'tis only for having forfaken me, and for having exposed her self a new to the Mercy of her Enemies. Let alone the innocent Berenice then, and overwhelm the Criminal Arfaces; thou could'st not desire more Facility for this Revenge, to which thou hast run headlong by so many base, and shameful Ways; and besides the Conservation of thy Life, and Kingdom, thou hast yet this last Obligation to me, that I my felf have deliver'd thee a Person whose Ruin thou so often hast in vain attempted, and that I have fav'd thee the Labour of feeking out new Murderers, to give Death to the greatest of thine Enemies. While I spoke on this manner, the whole Assembly listen'd to my Words, and with a marvellous Attention expected what would be the Isue of that Adventure. I will not tell you what Berenice's Thoughts were at this last Expression of my Love, nor what were those of Arfacomes, fince they were the the King's that first manifested themselves. If he had been astonished at my Sight, and at the beginning of my Discourse, he was no less at the Knowledge of my strange Resolution, and he saw so little likelihood to hope, that commanding a potent Army, wherewith I was in a manner able to dispose of his

his Destiny, I should abandon all the Means I had to frustrate what he had determin'd, to come and expose my felf alone to his Mercy, that he could not fuffer his Belief to credit what he faw. Wherefore he remain'd a great while in doubt of the Truth, but when he beheld me alone, without Cask, without Sword, in the mid'ft of a throng of his own Followers, and that he heard no Noise at all in the Streets, that could make him fear the coming of his Enemies, he began at last to believe, that my Love had brought me to that Resolution, and that my Despair making me despise my Life, had made me also neglest the Means I had to preserve it. This Assurance fettled it felf in his Mind with Joy, and his Fear was no sooner lull'd asleep, but his Anger was awaken'd again. The fight of his Enemy, and the Fierceness of his Words, kindled his Wrath afresh with all its Violence, and he had scarce had time to recover his first Apprehensions, when he open'd his Mouth to give it vent. Yet wicked Wretch, (cried he) thou shalt die, and this false Generosity which thy Despair hath inspir'd into thee, shall not fave thee from my lawful Fury. Yes, I will die, (replied I) and if I would not have died, I would have come with a Power that might have defended me from thine. Boast not of an Advantage, which thou holdest from no Body but my felf, nor threaten me with a Death, wherein thou only ferv'st for the Minister of my Despair.

I rather serve the Justice of the Gods, (answered Matheus) and all Kings who are interested in my Quarrel; but whether it be from the Anger of Heaven, or from thine own Despair that I have this Occasion to Revenge me of thee, thou shalt not see me neglect it, nor for many Considerations, spare him that hath seduc'd my Subjects, and that led an Army of Rebels, and Traitors, against their Prince, into his City, into his Palaces, and even against his own Person. He had hardly ended these Words, making sign to his Guard to encompass me, and to hinder my getting out of the Temple, when the Princess who till then had heard us without Interruption, mov'd from the Place where she stood, and coming toward me with a Countenance animated with an extraor-

dinary

I

ac

in

do

th

th

yo

for

ing

ful

th

COL

day

COL

not

die

die

kin

For

Dea

me

date

my

cur

com

gall

mor

tent

Arfa

as to

will

agai

you,

war

conj

dinary Confidence; You shall not die alone Arfaces, (faid she) and since you have been so little fearful to afflict me, in lavishing a Life that was dearer to me than my own, you also shall have the Grief to see me run to a Death, which I owe to nothing but your Despair. ought to have expected the Event of what I had resolved to do for you, if I had been so base as to have given my felf to Arsacomes, that Baseness would have been enough to have cured you, and if I had preferred Death before him, you might have followed me to the Grave, without the Blame of having thrown me into it. By these Words, and by my Princess's Action so different from her Humour, and from her usual Moderation, I knew the Greatness of her Affection, better than ever I had done before, and forgetting all that I had taken ill from her, I gave my felf up again totally to my Love. Ah! my dearest Princess, (said I) what a Thought is this of yours, and with what a Reproach do you aggravate my Sorrows! I defended my Life as long as I believ'd you car'd for it, and you know that after the Losses I have suffered, nothing could have made me think of its Preservation but the Opinion I had that it was not indifferent to you. That was it that made me oppose the King your Father's Arms, which after the Ruin of my Family I should have welcom'd into my Breast; that was it that fet me at the Head of an Army; and in short, that was it that has made me do many Actions, which could not have been expected but from a Person that had been much in love with his Life. Yes, Madam, I did love it, while I flatter'd my felf with a Conceit that it was dear to you; but when I saw you help towards its Destruction, by forfaking me to put your felf again into those Hands from which I had delivered you; I believed I ought to follow your Inclinations, and not leave a Thing in the World, that might be an Obstacle to your Repose. After my Death, you may live in a greater Tranquility than you have done hitherto; and the Gods to whom your Virtue, to whom your Person is dear, having afflicted you till now, only to punish me by the part I bore in all your Sufferings, will cease to torment you any longer, when

you

you no more can be infected by the contagious Afflictions

of miserable Arsaces.

The Princess had not Patience to let me go on with this Discourse, but hastily interrupting me; Cease to offend me (said she) with your Reproaches, and do not accuse me of a Change, whereof all the Consideration in the World shall never make me capable; 'Tis true, I would needs come away from you, to put my felf again into my Father's Hands, 'tis an Action which I yet would do, and which I cannot repent of, but 'tis not an Action that should make you believe you are less dear to me, than you have been formerly. If I could have staid with you with Honour, I would not have left you, neither for Arfacomes, nor for a thousand Empires; and in returning to my Father, to whom the Gods and Nature hath submitted me, I did not use a less Violence upon my self than that you suffer'd, nor expose my felf to lighter Discontents than yours; if I had ceased to love you Yesterday, I would not have begun again to Day; and if I could have disposed my self to live without you, I would not now dispose my felf to die with you. You shall not die, dear Princess, (replied I violently) you shall not die, nor can you continue in that Thought, without making my Death terrible to me; you shall live for a better Fortune than that you yet have met with; and if my Death cause any Sorrow in you, as your Goodness makes me hope it will, Time, the Friendship of Prince Oroondates, whom the Gods will bring home to you again, and my ardent Request, at this last Minute of my Life, will cure you of it. I will not pray you to live for Arfacomes, you deserve a happier Fortune, and you have too gallant a Spirit to stoop to a Person unworthy of you; moreover I believe my Death will change the King's Intentions in favour of you, for purposing to give you to Arfacomes, not so much with a design to make him happy, as to make Arfaces miserable; he, by Arfaces's Death, will lose those cruel Resolutions, which he had taken against you, only out of his Enmity to me; he loves you, tho' he has hated me, and the end of his Hatred toward me, will waken his Affection to you again. I would conjure thee to it, King of Scythia, (continued I, turning

ing towards him) if I believ'd the latest Word of a Prince who abandon'd all his Interests to serve thee, who fav'd thy Life with the Peril of his own; who fought for thy Dominions, instead of defending those he was born to; and who, to compleat his Services, gluts thee even at the Price of his very Life, in the Greediness of thy last Defires, were able to work any thing upon thee. I up. braid thee not with what I have done for thee, and thine, tho' it be considerable enough to deserve some Place in thy Remembrance: All I could possibly do, was due to the Father of Berenice, and Oroondates; and the Gods are my Witnesses, that all thy Ingratitudes have never been able to make me repent it, but by that Memory I may well demand the Repose of Berenice of thee. I was yet in a Posture to defend her against Arfacomes, if I would longer have defended her against her Father, and she her felt was in a Condition to dispose of her own Affections, if she had not preferred her Respect and her Obedience to thee, before her Quiet, nay before her Life it self. If thou art born of Royal, or if thou art born of Noble Blood, all the incitements of Geneorsity sue to thee in her Favour, and tell thee that so pure a Virtue, and so perfect a Refignation, ought to drive all the Cruelty out of thy Mind, that harbours in it against this lovely Princess. While I spoke these Words, I fixt my Eyes upon Matheus's Face, where, by an unlook'd for Effect, I obferv'd a very strange Alteration. You have wondred, without doubt, how in the Condition I then was, we had the Liberty of fo long a Conversation, without being interrupted by the King's Anger, who in Probability should not have suffer'd it with Patience; but you will wonder a great deal more, when I shall tell you, that after having given a peaceable Audience to the Princes's Words, and likewise unto mine, he found Things in them that were powerful enough to stop the Impetuousness of his Displeasure. As soon as Reason began to find some Admittance into his Thoughts, it made him look upon all his Actions, with a different Eye from what he had done before. He admir'd the Contempt I show'd of Death, in feeing me expose my felf to it so voluntarily, when I had so great a Strength to have secured me from

h

E

hi

fe

he

lu

(fa

0

ry

Wa

tor

he)

det

Respect, from which he thought I might lawfully enough have been exempted; he remembered that having made my self Master of his City by the Right of Arms, I had left it free to him, and that having desired no other Advantage by that happy Success, but the Liberty of my Princess, I had sent her back to him again the same Day; and if in what I said he found something that was sufficient to offend him, he attributed it to a Greatness of Courage which he could not disapprove. From this Consideration, he returned to that of my former Actions, and recalling to mind all I had done for him, he met with nothing that did not move his Heart to Love and Tenderness.

He for a while resisted these new Motions; but in the End, he was neither of Brass nor Marble as obdurate as he was; and tho' the Interest of Stratonice, and Arsacomes, who observed his Irresolution with mortal Apprehensions, with-held him for a few Moments, yet was he fain at last to yield to Compassion, and to Remmembrances which he was not able to relift. The first Token he fhew'd of it was a Sigh follow'd by some Tears which all the Assembly saw run down his Cheeks, but presently after he turned on the other side, either to hide his Weakness, or to call back his former Resolutions, but there was no more room for them in his Heart, and all his Thoughts were so changed already, that he no longer had Power, no nor so much as an Intention to defend himself. O Gods! cried he, lifting up his Hands and Eyes to Heaven, and stopping at those Words, he fix'd his Eyes upon the Ground, and kept Silence yet for some few Moments; at last he rose up from the Chair where he fate, and looking upon me with a Countenance abfolutely mollified, or rather full of Confusion; Arsaces, (faid he) generous Arfaces, you are my Conqueror; but, O Gods! how ought I to hope you will use your Victory? I was fo furprized at this strange Alteration, that I was not able to reply, and within a little after, coming toward me with open Arms: Might I hope, (continued he) that after fuch high Provocations, and fuch Crimes : s deserve no Pardon, Arsaces can have the Goodness to

1

t

1-

n

e-

y

11

at

s's

m

of

ne

on

ad

of

ly,

om

it.

I

of

te

be

fu

the

of

Ser

Ia

dec

aga ill d

as t

Arn

mak

thin

thee

vent

by th

V

A

forget them, and that by the same Generosity which has overcome me, he for the fake of Berenice, and for the fake of Croondates, would restore me that Friendship, which once I priz'd at fo high a Rate, and which my Cruelty has forfeited! These Words giving me a full Affurance of his Change, did also disperse all the Resentments I had against him; and not knowing in that sudden Revolution, how to find Terms capable to express my Thoughts, I contented my felf with declaring them by my Actions, and to let the King fee, by casting my felf at his Feet, that I should ever receive the return of his Friendship as an invaluable Favour. Ah! pursued he, feeing me in that Posture, and judging by my Action that I was readily disposed to all he defired; if it be true that Arfaces pardons me the Indignities I have offer'd him, I shall esteem that Effect of his Generosity, above all the rest wherewith he hath oblig'd me. No, (faid he, taking me in his Arms, and embracing me with a very passionate Gesture) Arsaces could not be conquer'd but by himself, and in this Victory which he wins over his just Refentments, he appears more great and more glorious than in all those others he hath obtain'd to our Advantage. In fine, most great and most generous of all Princes, you triumph over us all manner of Ways; but tho' you have reap'd small Fruit by all your former Victories, the Prize of this last, shall be a firmer Assection than that I lov'd you with before, a Purpose to share my Dominions with you, or elfe to lose them for the Recovery of yours; and finally, Berenice, the Cause of our greatest Contestations, I will joyfully accept him for my Son, who was the Son of Darius, and if the Father were yet alive, I would demand that Alliance of him, with an inviolable Peace, as the most happy Fortune that could The King had not the Leisure to profecute his Discourse, for the Noise which Stratonice, Arsacomes, and those of their Party made at a Declaration that was fo cruel to them, would not fuffer him to continue it. The Queen, with a transported Action, stepping forward toward the King, and forgetting her Modesty at so senfible a Blow, What, Sir, (faid she) will you take away Berenice from Arfacomes, to give her to the Son of Darius ? The

The King, to hinder her from faying more, replied, Madam, it is not without Trouble that I am constrain'd to displease you, I want not Recompences for Arsacomes; but I cannot without being the basest, and most contemptible of all Men living, dispose of Berenice to any Body but Artaxerxes. Artaxerxes cannot have her (added Arfacomes) so long as I am alive, and I know too well what Kings owe unto their Promise, to fear that that which your Majesty has given me should be violated in favour of him. That which I promised you (replied the King) as an Honour that was above you, is not capable to engage me, and having no Right to pretend to it, neither have you any to demand the accomplishment of it. How great Interest soever I had in this Discourse, I kept Silence out of Modesty, seeing that the King defended my Party very well; but Arfacomes, whose Grief transported him, lost part of his Respect, and without confidering that which he owed to the Presence of his King; I shall know how to maintain my just Pretensions (said he) both against Arfaces, and against all Men living. Berenice is mine by a Promise that cannot be revoked, nor shall she be taken from me without Effusion of Blood.

All this while I had continued silent, but then I thought I both might, and ought to reply. Neither thou, nor I, (said I) are worthy of Berenice; but if either of us may pretend to her, Artaxerxes both by Birth and Services, hath more Right than Arfacomes: Yet will not I abuse the King's Favour as thou hast done, but tho' it declare on my behalf, I am ready still to dispute Berenice against thee with my Sword. Hitherto thou hast very ill defended her, and hast not been able to defend so much as thine own Life against me single, at the Head of thy Army; but if that Trial thou hast had of my Forces, makes thee believe they are too hard for thine, put on thine Arms, and here I offer to maintain my Rights against thee with my Sword alone.

Arfacomes was going to reply if the King had not prevented him, I will be Master (said he) in my own Kingdom, and in my own House, since Arfaces who was so by the Right of War, is content to leave me my Autho-Vol. IV.

rity. You are my Subject Arfacomes, and I have Power to do otherwise with you, than with the Son of Darius; I command you therefore to obey me without murmuring, and I entreat Prince Artaxerxes to leave me the disposing of my Daughter, without offering to dispute her against you; fince he alone is able to cross the Power I have over the Scythians, I shall know well enough how to maintain the Promife I make him against all others. While the King was speaking on this manner, all the People in whose Memory the Affection of Arfaces was not yet extinguished, who in this Reconciliation saw an End of the War, and of those Miseries they had fear'd, and who in my last Actions had found how I had spar'd them, after a clapping of Hands, which made the Temple ring, cried out aloud, that it was to Arfaces their Deliverer, and their Protector, that their Princess ought to be given; and this Action added to the King's Words, stirr'd up so great a Rage, and fo much Confusion in Stratonice, and Arfacomes, that after a threatning Murmur, they went out of the Temple in a very different manner from their coming in.

I will not tell you, fince that Recital would be too long, with what Expressions the King confirm'd the Hope which he had given me, what Thanks I returned him, nor what were the Words and Actions of Berenice; all these Things passed in transports of Joy; but in the height of all the King's Endearments, I cast my felf once more at his Feet; and after he had done his Endeavour to raise me up again, I protested to him, that I never would cease to embrace his Knees, till he had granted me his Pardon for Theodates, and for all the Officers and Soldiers of our Army. The King was incenfed against them with a great deal of shew of Reason, but being he with Repentance acknowledged his unworthy Usage of me, he thought that to make Reparation he ought to refuse me nothing; and after having granted me the Pardon I requested for them, he would needs have Prince Carthasis his Brother to go presently and carry them the News. I was very forward to accompany him in that Action, and getting on Horseback with him, we were followed by a great Number of the Inhabitants, who

went

1)(

th

he

lo

to let

nic

and

to

tha

blu.

beli

went thronging with us to the Camp. As the Grief of Theodates, and of my other Friends, had been great at the Reading of of my Letter, their Astonishment was not less when they saw me come in such an unexpected manner; they were already getting on Horseback to seek me every where, but when they faw their Fears fo happily ended, they fell from one Extremity to another, and by the Excess of their Contentment testified that of their Friendship toward me. Prince Carthasis having declar'd the King's Pardon to them, and told them in a few Words the Truth of that Adventure, after they had admired my Resolution, and the strange Event of it, they left the Camp, and upon the Prince's Word went along with us into the Town, where they cast themselves at The King receiv'd them very handthe King's Feet. fomly, and instead of condemning Theodates, having praifed his Affection to me, he promifed him he would conferve no Remembrance of it, but to esteem him the more, and to the rest confirm'd the Pardon he had granted them. I was fettled again in the Palace in my former. Lodgings, and in the Court: I will not fay in my former Condition, but in another much more glorious, and much more considerable. To the Remembrance of Arfaces's Services was added that of Artaxerxes's Birth, and to both, the Confideration of the Credit I had among the Soldiery, and of what I could do as a Friend, and as an Enemy. The Queen being pressed with Discontent, came not to the King, and Arsacomes keeping retir'd in his Lodging, vented his in Threatnings, which were told the King; but he who was unwilling to ruin one whom he had lov'd fo well, and to whom he had given fuch lofty Hopes, fent for him two Days after, and spoke to him in these Terms : Altho' I am not obliged, Arsacomes, to justify my Actions toward you, yet am I willing to let you fee that it is not out of Inconstancy I take Berenice from you; the is but too justly due unto Arsaces, and I have but too obstinately resisted to do what I ought to have done fooner; I in your Favour have done Things that will for ever dishonour my Memory; you should blush at them for me, if you loved my Reputation, and believe as I do, that the greatest Reparations I can make N 2 e to

e

f

-

n

-

e

t

0

12

to Prince Artaxerxes, are not able to blot out the Remembrance of my Cruelties. Moreover in yielding Berenice to him, you yield her but to the Son of Darius, the greatest of all the Monarchs in the World; and but to him, who besides the general Obligations you are particularly oblig'd to for your Life. If the Gods had given me another Daughter, I protest I would not disdain you for my Son-in-Law, altho' you are my Subject; and if you can be fatisfied with my good Will, I'll keep you always near me in the same Condition you have been, I'll recompence the Loss of your Hopes with new Preferments, and with new Dignities; and except Berenice, there shall be nothing in my Kingdom you may not pretend to. And except Berenice, (interrupted audacious Arfacomes) there is nothing in your Kingdom which I do not disdain; if a King fails of his Promise to me, I shall neither fail of Courage, nor of Friends to dispute it to the last Moment of my Life. Thou oughtest then (replied the King, exasperated by that Answer) to have disputed it when thou wert at the Head of an Army, where Arfaces all alone took from thee all the Rights thou hadft to it, and had also taken away thy Life with them, if he had not been too generous to make his Glory give Place to his Interests. Thou oughtest to have defended her here within our Walls, whence Arfaces carried her even before thy Face, thou not attempting any Thing to hinder him; and tho' my Promise had engag'd me toward thee, thou knowest I lost the disposing of Berenice, from the Time she ceas'd to be within my Power; thou shouldest have fetcht her again out of the Hands of thy Rival, at the hazard of thy Life, if thou wouldest have been worthy of her, and not have staid till he restored her into thine Arms himself; if thou hadst had the least Sense of Honour left in thee, thou would'st not so shamefully have been beholden to thine Enemy for her; and tho' I were not at all oblig'd to Arfaces, I should not be just if I gave Berenice to thee after thou hadst so poorly disputed her.

Arfacomes, confounded and stung with these Reproaches, stood a great while before he could find an Answer; but in the End, he began to reply, and losing

211

b

h

p

h

 \mathbf{B}

ne

th

W

m

R

W

of

of

Cr

Fo

had

of

Ab

lion

l

1

)

,

S

0

11

0

e

1,

u

n,

re

d

er

to

0-

e,

ou

hy

ve

ed

aft

ne-

nd

be

rly

e-

an

ing

all

all the Respect he had yet remaining, flew out into such irreverent Speeches, that the King being extremely incens'd, after he had protested that nothing but the Queen's Consideration hindred him from chastising his Insolency, commanded him to get out of his Presence, and never to appear before him any more. Arsacomes withdrew in a desperate Rage, and with such Threats as would have been punished with Death in any other Body but the Queen's Brother.

Prince Oroundates, who had hearkned to Arfaces's last Adventures, with a Countenance that sufficiently express'd how much he was concern'd in them, broke Silence then, and with an Action like that of a Person who coming out of a long and dangerous Perplexity begins to recover a little Breath; Ah! Brother, (faid he) how you have made me fuffer, and how you have eas'd me now, by letting me know my Father's Repentance, fince nothing could have comforted me, if he had not in some degree repair'd his Ingratitude. But how is it possible, that the Fame of these Wonders you have told us, should never have come to our Ears before, and that I have been ignorant of fuch memorable Events, and wherein I had fo great an Interest? The distance of Places, (replied Arfaces) and the little Time fince they came to pass, have, without doubt, kept them from their Knowledge. By what I can judge, they happen'd during your Sickness at Susa, and since that Time few Persons can have travell'd into Scythia, and few Scythians are come into these Countries. In the interim (continued Arsaces) I was in the height of my Felicities; the King, by all manner of Kindnesses, endeavoured to make me lose the Remembrance of his harsher Usage; I saw my Princess with all the Freedom I could defire; I could not doubt of her Affection, after the important Proofs I had receiv'd of it; and if we had not waited for the News of Prince Oroundates, whose Presence was necessary to compleat my Fortune, I according to the Wishes of the whole Court, had obtain'd the King's Consent for the entire Possession of my Princess. Yes, Brother, 'twas nothing but your Absence alone that retarded our Marriage, and how passionate, and how impatient soever I was, my Love to N 3

you perfuaded me eafily to expect your Return, and to. approve, with a great deal of Satisfaction, that Respect of Berenice's, and that Testimony of the King's Consideration of you. When I was happy in what concerned my Love, the Memory of my Honour waken'd in me again, and I judg'd that all I had done, could not ferve my Reputation, while I fuffer'd Alexander to Reign peaceably over those Countries which he had usurped from us by the Death of the King my Father, and by the Loss of fome of my Friends. This Remembrance brought back part of that Sadness into my Heart, which my present Happiness seem'd to have banish'd thence, and though I found fome Confolation in the Hope of doing fomething toward the Recovery of my Glory, and of my Father's Dominions, the necessity of parting with Berenice began to afflict me very fensibly; yet did I pass over all that my Love represented contrary to my Glory, and having rast my self at the King's Feet, Sir, (said I) after the Honour your Majesty has done me to accept me for your Son, you should not suffer me to live unworthy of that Quality; and fince the Recovery of those Dominions I have lost is linkt to that of my Reputation, you are too much concern'd in both, to refuse me the Assistance I defire of you. Alexander has triumph'd over my Father's Empire and his Life, and Reigns quietly over those Territories which heretofore were his. Without your help, Sir, I can neither revenge the Death of my Freinds, nor rife to the Throne of my Predecessors; and if your Majesty refuse it me, the Princess your Daughter must be the Wife of a private Man, and of a Man dispossessed of his Inheritance; be pleased to grant me, Sir, for the highest Effect of Generosity, some part of those valiant Scythians who have thought me worthy of their Friendship. By their Courage I hope to repair my Shame, and to re-conquer my Dominions. That Destroyer of our House is an Enemy to all Kings in general, he already has invaded your Frontiers, and will, without doubt come into the Bowels of your Kingdom, if we carry not the War to him, into those Countries whereof he is yet but ill affured; I faid some other Things to the King, which he heard with Patience, and answer'd with a great deal

deal of Kindness. Doubt not Son, (said he) but that your Interests shall henceforth be mine own, not but that I will contribute with my utmost Powers, and even with mine own Person, to the Recovery of your Empire, not to make Berenice's Condition more advantageous by the Lustre of a Crown; I esteem your Person above all Greatnesses, and I know well enough you wear a Sword that can both maintain and conquer Empires; but because I judge as you do, that your Glory is interested in your Design, I'll arm the whole Power of Scythia for you, and will fet you at the Head of a Hundred Thousand Men, who having such a Leader, will think nothing difficult, but hew you out a Way to the Regaining of the Throne you have lost; yet I desire we may stay till we either see, or hear some News of Oroondates: I mean that he shall march along with you, that Friend whom you so highly have oblig'd, and whose Company is not to be despised; and while we expect him, Order shall be given, to make Levies for the fetting of this Army on Foot. Those I was raising against you, and the Troops you now command, shall make a Part of them, and the rest shall be ready against my Son's Return, or within the Time we will limit for that Expectation. I was fo extremely fatisfied at the King's Answer, that I could not dissemble my Contentment; and to render it absolutely compleat, the King protested he would not fuffer me to go from Isledon, before I had married Berenice. That fair Princess was afflicted at my Resolution; but being Mistress of a great deal of Reason, she yielded to the Necessity of my Affairs, and to a Thing for which she had ever prepared. But alas! How little Time had we to entertain one another, and how fhort my Joys were, tho' my Griefs had been of long Continuance.

I was in Bed, when some Hours before Day, I heard a confused Noise about the Palace, and an infinite Number of Cries, which were enough to waken the soundest Sleepers. I leapt into the Floor, and running to a Window, saw a great many Torches, and heard the Voice of many Persons, who cry'd that the Princess was carried away. At this News, I was very near falling

N 4

t

f

tl

th

W

ei

in

po

or

Ci

m

I

to

me

Pa

an

into a Swoon, but I strove to keep all my Powers in the Need I had of them for such an Occasion; and presently after Criton came into my Chamber; Sir, (faid he) the Princess is carried away. The Grief he felt for my Misfortune would not fuffer him to fay more; and I was fo stricken, that I had not the Power to get out one Word: I threw on a few Cloaths, and ran hastily to Berenice's Lodgings, where I found Theomiris with Cyllema, and other Maids, who by their Cries redoubled the Rage wherewith I was transported, and told me with interrupted Words, how the Princess had been pull'd by Force out of her Chamber, by feven or eight arm'd Men, and that those Ravishers had carried her away by the back Stairs into the Garden, and so out at a Hole they had broken through the Wall. I ran instantly to those Stairs, where I found two Men dead, who were known to be Grooms of her Chamber; and going down, I faw the Hole in the Garden-Wall, through which my cruel Enemies came in, and had got out again. Not knowing what Way, nor what Advice to take, I went up again to the King's Quarters, where I found him buried in an extraordinary Sorrow; I had but few Words with him, and those fo confusedly put together, that it was easy by them to know the Disorder of my Heart: While he was fending out Messengers every Way, I put on my Arms in his Presence, and taking a hasty Leave of him, got on Horseback with a great many Courtiers, who ran thronging to accompany me. We rode out of the City at the nearest Gate; and not being able to judge by any Coniccture what Way those Ravishers had taken, we wandred about all the rest of the Night, without knowing whither we went, and at Break of Day found our felves at a little Town, fome Two or Three Hundred Furlongs from Medon: There we could hear no News in the World; and having taken another Way, and after that a great many feveral ones, we could meet with no Body that could tell us any thing of what we fought. I pass'd that Night in a Village Four Hundred Furlongs from Isledon, and the next Morning we began our Search again with the same Diligence, and with the same Succefs. We fpent Three Days more in it, not leaving any Town,

Town, Borough, Village, House, or Wood within a Thousand Furlongs of the Ci.y, where we had not been to feek her; at the End of which, I returned to the King, to fee if those he had sent out other Ways had had any better Fortune; but I found their Pains and Care had been to as little Purpose as ours. We doubted not but that it was Arlacomes who had stol'n away the Princes; he had left the Court a Week before, and fince that Time there had been no News of him. The King, possest with that Belief as well as I, made sharp Complaints unto the Queen; and after having protested to her, that he would use his utmost Power to the Ruin and Destruction of her Brother, he promised her likewise, that if by her Persuasions he would return to his Obedience, and restore the Princess, he would grant him Pardon for her fake: But the Queen, whether it were that the was wilfully bent to favour her Brother's Action, or that indeed she was ignorant of it, cast her self at the King's Feet, and protested her Innocence with fo many Tears, that he ceas'd to press her any further; yet he thought good I should take Two Thousand Horse, and go at the Head of them, to fearch Arfacomes's Houses, and gave Order for a greater Strength to follow me, in case we should find him in a Posture of Resistance. I set forward in this Equipage, and to shorten my Discourse, went to all those Places whither it was thought Arfacomes could retire; but there was no News to be heard either of Berenice or him, and we were inform'd with an unquestionable Certainty, that he had not been seen in those Parts of many Years. How great soever the Rage that transported me was, I could not resolve to pour it forth upon those that were under his Obedience, or ruin a People that was innocent of their Prince's Crime. Then it was that I faw my felf abandoned to my Despair, and that I was often upon the Point of feeking an End of my Misfortunes in the End of my Life. I was going to fix on that Refolution, when happening to be near the Gate of a Temple dedicated to Juno, famous for Oracles, which they came to consult from all Parts of Europe, I determined first to try if I could find any Pity from the Gods. They express'd themselves to

me clearly enough; and though I do not remember the Words of the Oracle, I have not forgot, that the Goddess, by the Mouth of her Priest, commanded me to seek out of scythia for that which I had lost, and to visit the Walls of Semiramis, where I should find an End of all my Pains. I was the more willing to obey the Pleasure of the Gods, because my Hopes were lost all other Ways; and whether it were that they promis'd me the Recovery of Berenice, or that it was by the End of my Days they made me hope for that of my Miseries, I resolved

to give my felf up wholly to their Will.

My Design of marching into my Father's Territories with the Forces the King of Scythia had promis'd me, to fight with Alexander for the Empire, and the Glory he had taken from me vanish'd quite out of my Mind, and I was then call'd by a more powerful Motive to attempt the Recovery of Berenice, than that of my lost Dominions; 'twas also at that Time I heard that Alexander had married the Princess Statira my Sister, that he had given Parifatis to his Favourite Hephestion, and that he carried himself toward the Remnants of Darius's Blood, with the same Affection as to his own. This News afflicted me very much, for many Considerations; it troubled me to know it was my Sifter's Husband, against whom I was to prepare my self for War, as soon as I should be in a Condition to entertain such Thoughts; but I judg'd with a far more sensible Grief, that my dear Brother's Hopes were utterly extinguish'd, and that if he had still preferv'd his Affections to Statira, he in her Marriage could find no less Matter of Affliction than what I felt for the Lofs of Berenice. I should longer have reasoned with my self upon that sad Occasion, if I had not been too much taken up with my own Miffortunes; but being refolv'd upon the Voyage the Gods had ordain'd me, I meant to make it without any Train that could make me be observ'd in those Places where I pass'd; and to that End I took Leave of all those that were come along with me from Iffedon, keeping no body with me but Criton, and two other necessary Servants. I even refus'd the Company of my dear Theodates. But it was not without an extreme Violence, that I perfuaded

(

n

fuaded him to leave me; and I should never have won him to it, if I had not made him fee that his Stay in Scythia was absolutely necessary for me, both to make the greater Care be taken in the Search of Berenice, and to keep me right in the King's Opinion, which might perhaps be alter'd during my Absence, by Stratonice's Sollicitations, whereby he might in Time be drawn to approve of her Brother's Action. Theodates lent an Ear at last to this Consideration, which in Estect was strong enough to stay him; but tho' he could not yield to that Separation without Tears, and Lamentations, which I cannot express, in the End we parted, after he had promis'd to make my Excuses to the King, that I came not to take my Leave of him, and to tell him that fince he had done me the Honour to give me Berenice, I would either bring her home to him again, or die in quest of

From the Place where I left Theodates, I travell'd directly toward Mount Imaus which divides the Two Scythia's, and having cross'd through the Asiattique, and the Country of the Massagetes, I came into Bastria, and entred upon the Territories that had been the King my Father's. I pass'd unknown through all those Places, where I found many Marks of the Difasters of our Family; and tho' my Love was sufficient to possess me totally, yet could I not without a great deal of Trouble, fee those People that had been our Subjects, yield Obedience peaceably to new Masters. These Objects prefenting themselves daily to my Eyes, often drew Sighs from me, which seconded those my Passions forc'd more violently from the Bottom of my Heart. In short, I continued all that Journey in so deep a Sadness, that if the Consolations I receiv'd from Criton (whose Fidelity is beyond all Recompence) had not in some Degree allay'd my Sorrow, I think I should have sunk under the Burthen of it, before I could have reach'd the Country the Oracle had appointed me. In the End I arriv'd there, without any Encounter worthy to be related; and at my Arrival I heard of the Death of Alexander, who had paid the Debt of Nature a few Days before. I know not how to tell you the several Effects this News wrought in me,

ľ

I

n

I

t

S.

It

-

I was glad for my dear Brother's fake, who thereby recover'd the Hopes he had lost in Statira's Marriage; but I was forry in mine own particular, being thereby deprived of those I had conceiv'd, of regaining my Honour from him that had taken it from me. And tho' it feem'd to facilitate the Recovery of my Empire, it gave Alexander the Advantage of having kept it all his Life, and of having been the Conqueror and the Master till his I then thought upon the Condition of my Sifters, and was joy'd with a Hope of coming to the Place where they were, of feeing them, and perhaps of doing them fome Service in that Estate, to which so great Revolution of their Fortune might have reduced them. Altho' the Alteration of my Face in fo long an Absence, and the general Opinion of my being dead, might have put me out of all Fear of being easily discover'd, I would not hazard my Life however, knowing that in Babylon I should find Persons from whom Time had not taken away all Remembrance of my Features; and therefore, as foon as I was come into this Country, I retired to the House of a good honest Man, some Three or Four Hundred Furlongs from this Place, whom I by Gifts in present, and by the Hopes of more, engaged at first to as much Affection and Secrecy as I could defire.

The next Morning, knowing I was near the Temple of Apollo, which I had formerly visited, I had a Defire to confult the Pleasure of that God, and implore his Assistance. There it was I met with Prince Lysimachus, and that by his graceful Fashion, and his charming Converfation, I began to give him that Esteem and that Affection, which the Recital of his gallant Actions hath fince compleated. You doubtless have heard from him the Discourse we had together, and the Words of the Oracle that were delivered to us; I thought them so obscure that I could not comprehend any thing of their Meaning, and only found by the last of them, that the Gods would have me wait their Pleasure upon the Banks of Eupkrates. That Conformity with my former Oracle, did a little augment those faint Hopes I had conceived, and made me, in Effect, refolve to expect my Destiny a while upon the Banks of that River. The House I had taken for my Retreat,

Retreat, was feated near it, well enough built, and furnished to make some Stay there without Inconveniency, and far enough from the High-ways, not to be frequented with any Company. The Master of it profered with a great deal of Freedom to do me all the Service that lay in his Power; and finding him to be a discreet, understanding Man, I resolved to make Use of him, to try if I could learn any News of Beremice. For this Purpose, having given him Directions and Addresses to inform himself of what I defired, I fent him to the City; but O Gods! How forrowful was the News he brought me home, fince by him I heard the Rumour that was spread in Babylon, of the Death of the Princesses my Sisters! This was so heavy an Addition to my Grief, that it was like to have press'd me down into my Grave; and though I strove to dissemble it as well as I was able, I could not possibly hinder my Landlord from perceiving that I was infinitely troubled at that News. I made the dolefullest Lamentations in the World, when I was at Liberty to utter them; and accused my self of Meanness of Spirit, for having given my whole Life up to my Love, instead of bestowing part of it on the Relief I ow'd to those poor Princesses. I vented a Thousand Threats, and made a Thousand Designs against their Murtherers, and was yet in the Violence of these Thoughts, having hardly dried up my first Tears when I met the valiant Lysimachus a second Time by the Riverside. He without doubt has told you the Discourse that passed between us, and how (just as I was going to ask his Name, after I had told him that mine was Arfaces) it was interrupted by a Cavalier, who passing near us, enquir'd the Way to Babylon. It is very true, (said Lysimachus then to Arfaces) the coming of that Stranger depriv'd me of your Company, after it had caused in me an Esteem, or rather an Admiration of you, which all I could fay was not able to represent to Prince Orondates, when I made him the Relation of that Encounter. That Cavalier (continued Arfaces) who passed so suddenly by us, was Arfacomes. You may easily judge, by what I have told you, that his Image was always present enough to my Remembrance, not to need

any long Time to know him, and that his Sight produced in me at the very first, all those Estects it was probable it should. The Knowledge thereof oblig'd Lysimachus to pardon me the Rudeness of my hasty Departure, which would not fuffer me to pay all the Civilities that were due to him. I ran fo swiftly after Arfacomes, that tho' he was already a great Way off, I began to fee him again when we were out of the Wood; that fecond Sight did so animate me, that my Impatience doubled my Horse's Speed, and at last I got near enough to my Enemy to make him hear my Voice; Stay, (cried I) flay Arfacomes: These Words which he heard, after I had often repeated them, caused him in the End to take up a little, and looking back to fee who it was that called him by his Name, he beheld me with my Sword drawn, coming at him as hard as ever I could drive. My Action, and my threatning Cries, made him know I was his Enemy, wherefore, not wanting Courage, he turn'd about, and expected me in the Posture of a Man resolv'd to defend himself. He had a Javelin in his Right Hand, which he lifted up into the Air, and when I was within twenty Paces of him, he raised himself upon his Stirrups, and darted it at me with his utmost Force. The Blow miss'd me, but struck my Horse so violently in the Head, that he fell stark dead between my Legs. I disengag'd my self presently from my Stirrups, and leaving my Horse upon the Ground, cover'd my felf with my Shield, to end the Combate on Foot, but Arfacomes gave me not the Leifure; and whether it were that he disdain'd to fight with me upon Advantage, or that he was call'd other where by preffing Occasions, as soon as he saw me fall, he turned about again, and gallop'd on his Way at the same Rate as he had done before. I remain'd in a Vexation hard to be imagined; and no longer having any Means to pursue my Enemy, who rode away from me at Liberty, I was ready to have vented all my Despair upon my felf: Yet did I moderate my Rage by a Reflection I made upon this Encounter; for I believed with Likelihood that I had Cause to hope in the Promise of the Gods, and that Berenice was not far from those Parts, since I had found ArfaArfacomes there. This Belief comforted me very much, and a while after I was confirm'd in it by Criton, who came up to me at last, his Horse not having been so fwift as mine, and his Impatience not so violent. He was very much troubled to hear the Accident that had befallen me, and having alighted to give me his Horse, I would have gotten upon him to purfue my Enemy again, but I found him fo spent, that I lost all Hope of overtaking Arsacomes, and was constrain'd to think upon some new Resolution. I remembred that Arsacomes had ask'd the Way to Babylon, and I was of Opinion I might light upon him in that City; but Criton (whose Prudence I had observ'd in all his Actions) thought it not safe for me to go thither at that Time, considering the exact Guard that was kept at the Gates, where Passengers were fearch'd, and examined whence they came, and what was their Business, and where they did many Things that would put me in very great Hazard of being known. He represented to me, that it would be much more easy for him to inform himself in Babylon concerning what I desir'd, than for me, who for fear of being discover'd, would be fain to keep still within Doors. Therefore, by his Advice, in which I found a great deal of Reason, I with his Horse took my Way back to the House of our Retreat, and he went on Foot to the Town, which was but a little way off, from whence he was to come home to me the next Day, with all the News he could learn, and with another Horse, which I gave him Charge to buy.

Thus did I return to the Place where I made my Abode, and where I pass'd the rest of that Day in Discontents, mingled with some Glimpse of Hope; but before it was Night, Criton came back with a brave Horse he had bought; and asking him why he return'd sooner than I expected, Sir, (answer'd he) before I came to the Gates of Babylon, I met Arsacomes, and which is more, Sir, I met him with the Princess Berenice. Ah, (cried I) What dost thou tell me; hast thou sound Berenice? Yes, Sir, (replied he) I sound her in the Arms of Arsacomes, who in spite of her Resistance, and in spite of all her Cries, carried her away before him, galloping

back the same Way we saw him go. O Gods! (added I, quite transported) What a happy Progress is this toward the Accomplishment of your Promises! If I had had a Horse, (said Criton) I should certainly have follow'd them, tho' I had been fure to lose my Life; but being a-foot as I was, I could not possibly execute my Desires, for having presently lost Sight of them, tho' I ran as fast as I could, after I had complained of my ill Fortune, I thought the best Service I could do you, would be to go on to the Town, and buy a Horse for

you, as you had commanded n.e.

This Discourse touch'd me, as you may imagine, but it was with Joy, which encouraged me to believe I ought to hope for all things from the Promise of the Gods. I hardly would allow the Night Leisure to pass away, and as foon as ever it was Break of Day, mounting the Horse which Criton had brought me, and which I found to be a very good one, I began afresh to ask after my Princess. Yet would I not stir out of this Country, for fear of disobeying the Gods, whom I began to find exact, in the Hopes they had given me; and when I had spent the Days in my Search, I for the most part came back at Night to my usual Retreat. There is no Town hereabouts which I have not visited, no Village, nor House whose Entrance was permitted me, where I have not been to look for my Princess, but all my Endeavours were unprofitable; and after having vainly fought through all the Province, I thought at last to return to that Temple where the Gods had promised me the Return of my Happiness, and where (if I might be suffered) I meant to reproach them for having deceiv'd me. With this Intention, being departed from a Village where I had lain, I left Babylon upon the Right Hand, and was hardly gotten Twenty Furlongs from it, when I faw a Chariot coming toward me, which Six Horses drew at a very great Rate. The Defign I had of feeking my Princess every where, made me go near the Side of it, where I faw a Woman in a Man's Arms, who by her Cries, and by all her Actions, shew'd she was carried away by Force. My Hopes were awaken'd in me by that Sight; but as foon as I

beheld her Face and heard her Voice, I knew it was not my Princess, tho' methought neither that Face nor Voice was unknown to me: Yet was I refolv'd to fuccour her whofoever she was, and to that End riding up to the Charioteer, I commanded him to stand. He made a Difficulty to obey me, but I brought the Point of my Javelin to his Face, and made him know there was no Safety for him but in Obedience. In the mean Time, he that was in the Chariot, having observ'd my Action, leapt nimbly out, and calling a Man that carried his Cask, gave him Charge to hold that Lady, if she should offer to get away; and making him alight from a gallant Horse he was upon, he threw himself into the Saddle with a great deal of Agility; he was no fooner in his Stirrups, but coming toward me with a threatning Action, Whofoever thou art, (cry'd he) tho' thou wert Lysimachus again, if thou opposest my Intention, thou shalt be fure to meet with Death in thine. I am not Lysimachus, (answer'd I) but if thine Intention be to carry away that Lady by Force, mine shall ever be to defend her against thy Violence. Thou must die then, (reply'd he) and with those Words flew upon me with a great deal of Courage: Being he indeed was valiant, the Combate lasted for some Time without Disadvantage to either; but in the End, I was more fortunate than he, and after having warded many Blows he made at me, I gave him Two or Three Wounds, which made him fall from his Horse unable to fight any longer. Then I turn'd toward the Lady I had rescued, and he that held her by his Master's Command, no sooner faw me coming, but he let her go, and fled toward Babylon. The Woman presently leaped out of the Chariot, and the Charioteer lashing on his Horses toward the City, got a great Way from us in a little Time. Scarce had I alighted, and fet my Eyes upon that Lady's Face, but I observ'd all the Lineaments of Queen Statira my Sister. You may well enough conceive how great my Amazement was at fo unexpected an Encounter; especially there being a general Rumour that she was dead. That Belief, and her Habit which was very different from what she was went to wear, hindred me from giving Credit to my Eyes:

Eyes; but when by my Action she saw me express my Astonishment, Never doubt of it (faid she) I am Statira, I am the Widow of Alexander the Great. And I, Sifter, (cried I, quite transported) am Prince Artaxerxes your Brother; and casting my Head-piece at her Feet, I ran to her with open Arms, and in her Amazement whichmade her incapable of Refistance, I gave her a Thousand Kiffes, accompanied with Tears which my Eyes bestow'd on my Affection. If the Wonder that had feiz'd on me was great, you may well imagine that hers was without Comparison, and that she could not see that Brother again, whom we had lov'd fo well, and whom she had thought dead eight Years before, with a moderate Astonishment. When she was got loose from my Embraces, she retired a Step or two to consider my Face, and could not believe but that it was my Ghost, ask'd me often if it were possible I should be alive, and in short did all those Actions which you did your self at our knowing one another. As foon as she was persuaded that I was Artaxerxes indeed, she cast away her Doubts, to give her felf over to her Affection; and throwing herself into mine Arms with transported Cries, she made me see that neither Time, nor the Accidents of her Life, had at all diminished her former Love.

We continued a great while in a strict Embrace, without having Power to bring forth a distinct Word, and when once we were able, we question'd each other mutually concerning what we were ignorant of: How came you to be alive, dear Brother? How came you to be alive dear Sister? said we both together; and answering both at the same Time, we began a very consused Discourse, and so interrupted with Endearments that we could tell one another nothing. Besides, my Sister believed, that in the Place where we were, we could not without Danger engage our selves in a long Conversation; so having pray'd me to carry her from thence, and to run, if it were possible, to the Relief of Parisatis, who was alive and a Prisoner, she persuaded me to get on Horseback, and having set her behind me, we rode as

she desir'd, along the River-side.

She would have question'd me about my Adventures, but I having told her that the Relation of my Life would require no less than a whole Day, and that it were more necessary I should learn something of her present Condition, and of Parisatis, she in a few Words told me all that had happen'd to her since Alexander's Death, the Name of Perdiccas, with whom I had sought, and the Estate in which she had lest Parisatis; but she said nothing of Prince Orondates, whether it were that she judg'd that Remembrance saulty after the Death of Alexander, or that she meant to speak of him more at large when she had better Leisure.

She had not quite ended her Discourse when we saw the Chariot coming, in which Parifatis was; you have heard the beginning of that which passed, and how having made Statira alight that I might be fitter for the Encounter, I was affaulted by half a fcore Horsemen who guarded the Chariot, and that, while I was engag'd among them, Statira was taken again. I heard her cry aloud when they put her into the Chariot, and would have run to help her if I could have had free Passage; but the Enemies I had upon me stopt my. Way, and reduc'd me to a Necessity rather of defending my felf, than of relieving my Sisters. Three of them lay already gnawing the Earth, and the rest began to find that tho' I was alone, they should obtain no easy Victory. In effect, my Strength was fo redoubled by my Anger, and by my Grief for this last Accident, that I quickly dispatch'd another, and by good Fortune Criton, who was returning from a Place whither I had fent him, came in just then to my Assistance, and he no sooner knew me but making use of Policy to strike a Terror in my Enemies; Courage, Sir, (cried he) you are reliev'd. I know not whether these Words, and the Confidence wherewith they faw him fall upon them, made them believe he was followed by others, or whether their Fear of two Men alone produc'd that Effect; but however it were, the Fierceness of my Enemies began to cool, and presently after they turn'd their Backs, leaving me the Victory and the Field; but at the same time my Horse fell dead of the Wounds he had receiv'd, and Criton feeing

ing five or fix without Masters, catch'd the best of them and brought him to me: I no fooner was upon his Back, but I ran after the Trace of the Chariot, which had carried away the Princesses, and had follow'd the Bank of the River a while in that Pursuit, when I was stopp'd by a considerable Encounter, and such a one as I ought well to remember, fince I still bear the Marks of it, and that it cost me more Blood than I had lost in all the rest of my Life. It was the Encounter of you and Berenice, Brother, I found you when I least expected it, and I also found Berenice, but in fuch a Condition as I believ'd I could never have taken her. O Gods! what were my Thoughts when I knew my Princess! but O Gods, what were my Refentments when I faw her hanging about the Neck, and killing the Face of a Man in Arfacomes's Armour! I presently believ'd that it was he, but knew nothow to imagine my Princess should be guilty of so horrible a Lightness. I stood a while considering their Actions, but when I faw her continue fuch extraordinary Kindnesses, as could not have been pardon'd if any Body but a Brother had receiv'd them, I gave my felf over to a Rage, which in appearance was but too lawfully grounded: You found the Effects of it, dear Brother, as I felt those of your matchless Valour, which by a number of very deep Wounds made me fall upon the Ground without Sense or Understanding. The Condition I was reduc'd to (interrupted Prince Oroondates) was no better than yours, and if I had Glory to share equally with you in the Event of our Combate, I owe it to those you had fought before, which, without doubt, could not have left so great a Vigour as I encountred in that last, in any other Man but the invincible Arfaces. If my former Combates (replied Arfaces) had caus'd any Weariness in me, the Jealoufy, or rather the Fury wherewith I was transported, banish'd it in such a manner, and did so powerfully redouble my Forces, that I never was fresher, nor in better Condition to dispute my Pretensions against any Body else but Oroondates. In short, I was fallen upon the Ground, where Criton had me in his Arms, who that Day did me his wonted Services, and who after he had long tormented himself about me, went to feek help, either

either for my Recovery or Burial. When he had gone a little way, he by good Chance met a Company of Horsemen who were riding towards Babylon, and having told them my Misfortune in a few Words, found fome among them fo generous as to be fensible of it, and to offer him their Assistance. They were the brave Seleucus, and certain Horsemen that attended him, who no sooner were come to the Place where I lay where I had died the Earth about me red with my Blood, but they were touch'd with Compassion, and making me be taken up in fome of their Cloaks, they caus'd me to be carried to a poor Man's House, about ten or twelve Furlongs from the Place where we had fought. Seleucus was fo careful as to have my Clothes pull'd off, and to fee my Wounds himself; but he thought them so great, that he conceived very little hope of my Recovery; yet would he not leave me, knowing by many Signs that I was still alive, and therefore fent away a Man instantly to the City, to fetch Chirurgions with all possible Speed. Before they came, having found fomething in my Face that made him defirous to know who I was, he enquired of Criton, who thinking he should thereby oblige him to succour me with the more Affection, contented himself with concealing that I was Artanernes the Son of Darius, and told him I was that Arfaces who had conquer'd Arimbas, and gain'd some Victories in Scythia. Seleucus had heard of Arfaces, and of the first Things I had done in the King of Scythia's Service; wherefore being indeed virtuous himself, he was persuaded by some Report of Virtue that had run to my Advantage, and no fooner knew that I was Arfaces, but instead of the Compassion which had mov'd him to lend me that first Assistance, he thought himfelf oblig'd by all manner of Confiderations to neglect nothing for my Salety, and expressing a very great Trouble for the Istate he faw me in, he at the Chirurgions coming promised them excellive Recompences if they could contribute any Thing toward my Cure. When they had fearch'd my Wounds, they faw small hope of Life, tho' according to what they faid, my Loss of Blood was Cause of their greatest Apprehensions. Yet did they do their Office very carefully, and employ'd all their

their Skill in dressing my Hurts, and in fetching me to my Senses. Part of the Night was pass'd when I came to my felf again, but with very little Memory and very little Understanding, and the Day appear'd before I was able to discern any Object, or recal to mind any Thing that had pass'd. As soon as I began to have a little Knowledge, I turn'd my Eyes on every fide, and feeing Criton by me, I ask'd him where I was, he told me the Truth in a few Words; and presently after, Seleucus coming to me; Courage, (faid he) valiant Arfaces, you have Persons about you who are very affectionate to your Virtue, and who labour for your Health as passionately as for their own. He faid no more, nor staid any longer with me, for fear of obliging me to answer him, and Criton having only told me that it was Seleucus, and entreated me not to speak, went also out of the Chamber with him, who was recall'd to Babylon by very pressing Occasions, and who nevertheless would not go away, till he faw me in that degree of Amendment.

When they had left me alone, I was more accompanied than I had been before; you easily guess that the Remembrance of my last Encounter came not into my Mind, without driving me into an Extremity of Grief, and that I could not call to memory the Conditions I had found Berenice in, without falling into another a thousand times worse than that, out of which the Chirurgions

endeavour'd to recover me by their Assistance. O Gods! how shall I be able to express my violent Thoughts, or rather how will you supply the Defect of my Discourse, by fancying part of them in your Imagination? I cannot represent them better to you, Brother, than by your own; but yet my Sorrow wanted one Con-Tolation which you received in yours, for you could not believe Statira to be inconstant, without having your Affliction counterbalanced by a Joy at the Assurance that Statira was alive. Yes, I remember'd that I had found Berenice, but I had found her so unworthy and so shamefully chang'd that I had feen her give my Rival Favours, the smallest part whereof had never been granted unto me. I remember'd likewise that I had fallen under the Forces of my Rival, and that Remembrance made me doubt

doubt whether it was Arfacomes; he wore his Arms, he was with Berenice, whom Arfacomes had carried away, and with whom Criton had feen her a few Days before; but I had found the Valour of that Enemy fo different from that of Arfacomes, that I had much ado to persuade my felf it could be he, unless the Gods, to compleat their Anger against me, had so augmented his Strength, to hinder the Satisfaction my Revenge might have given me. I remain'd uncertain what to believe; but whether it were Arsacomes, or some new Servant, I found so great cause of Grief and of Despair in that abominable Change, that all I have told you hitherto of my former Afflictions, had touch'd me but lightly in comparison of this last. could not fancy Berenice in the Posture I had seen her, holding a Man in her Arms, and kissing him with that Mouth which had been fo niggardly to me, even then when her Father's Confent might have authorized the Permission of such Favours, without losing that little Reason I had recovered; and then yielding to the Rage that transported me, Ah! light inconstant Woman (cried I) by what horrid Change half thou loft the Remembrance of what thou wert heretofore, and the Remnants of that Vertue which made thee leave a Lover to put thy felf into the Hands of thine Enemies ? Ah ! if thou wert to give thy felf to Arfacomes, thou should'st have done it when thou might'st with less Unworthiness, and when. thy Infidelity might have been justified by thy Father's Thy Crime had been less shameful by that Pretence; and by the Reproach of thy Inconstancy, thou might'st have avoided that of thy Disobedience.

After these Words followed whole Troops of cruel Thoughts, and my Jealousy giving such Shapes to all Things as were most suitable to it, put Conceits into my Head, which I should never have fallen into if I had been in my right Mind. Ah! without doubt (said I again) thy Insidelity is not so new a Thing as I believ'd; that Astion of thine before Isedon, was an Essect of thy Change, and not of thy Virtue; nor wouldest thou ever have forsaken me, to cast thy self into the Arms of that Rival, from whence I had pull'd thee with the Peril of

my Life, if the Lover to whom thou ran'ft had not been dearer to thee than he whom thou forfookest. Thou hast dissembled since by Stratonice's Counsel, to begin to accommodate thy felf to thy Father's Humour, and thy stealing away whereby I lost all my Fortune with thee, had not been so easily effected, if thou thy felf hadst not consented to it; pardon me dear Princess, (pursued Arfaces, turning toward Berenice) pardon me the Injury I then did your Virtue, and consider then that Condition I was reduc'd to, made me uncapable of any found or reasonable Judgment, yed did I strive to repent my Opinion, but could not do it without belying my own Eyes, and accusing them for having deluded me in that Encounter. Perhaps I may be deceived, (faid I) and my Imagination prepossessed with the Remembrance of Berenice, did (it may be) present some other Object to me instead of her. Ah! no, (cried I again, immediately after) I was not deceived, and Berenice's Features are too truly graven in my Memory, to suffer me to be conferr'd in the Knowledge of her, I saw her but too plainly, and look'd but too long upon her, to be in doubt whether it were fhe or no. 'Tis she, and she is now in the Arms of my Rival, and of my Conqueror, and if Fortune has dealt any better with him than with me, they now rejoice together at the Victory he has obtain'd. In this Thought seeing Criton who was come to my Bed-side again, I commanded him to relate the true Islue of our Combate, to tell me in what Condition I had left my Enemy, and what became of Berenice. Sir, (faid he) I must confess that the Distance, the Trouble I was in duing your Combate, and a Vail she had put down over her Face, hindred me from knowing it was the Princess; but the Woman that was present while you fought, no fooner faw your Enemy fall, (who funk from his Horse at the same time with you, either dead, or in the same Case you were) but she ran instantly to him, with Cries that came unto my Ears as far as I was off; and she still was making Lamentations over him, when I went from you to feek for Help, but at my return we neither found her, nor the Body of your Enemy. This Account of Criton's wrought two different Effects upon me; for tho'

ir

te

fi

CO

re

it

in

ing

W

Wa

to

die

foo

Ber

defi

that

muc

himfelf

it confirm'd my Princess's Infidelity, it comforted me in the Belief that I had flain my Enemy, or at least that he had not gotten an entire Victory. Then I turned over a thousand several Resolutions in my Mind, and tho' they tended all toward Death, yet the last upon which I. fix'd was, that if it pleased the Gods I should escape my Wounds, I would never die without being affur'd of my Revenge, or without finishing it by another Combate ? and moreover, that I would never die but before the Eyes of the ingrateful Berenice. The Princess, who had often blush'd during Arsaces's Discourse, could no longer forbear to interrupt him: Ah! Arfaces, (faid she) how ingrateful were you your felf, in those cruel Thoughts you had of me; certainly my Humour should have been well enough known to you, to make you believe that no Body but my Brother ought ever to hope for those Kindnesses from me, which caused your Jealousy. If I had had any other Witnesses but my own Eyes, (replied Arsaces) I should never have given Credit to them; but in short, I my felf had feen that that was as bad to me as Death, and I was then fo unfortunate, that the Truth of this Adventure never came into my Thoughts.

I rather believed that my dear Brother was no longer in the World, fince in so great a Revolution of my Sifters Affairs, we had not heard the least News of him; fince upon that of her Death, wherein he was much more concern'd than any Body else, he had neither appear d to relieve her, nor to revenge her; and fince my Sister who it was likely would best have known it if he had been in this Country, had not faid one Word to me concerning him. This Opinion of your Death, dear Brother, which by little and little fettled it felf in my Thoughts, was Cause of many of those Things that have happened to me fince, and confirm'd me in the Defign I have to die, as foon as I was certain of my Revenge, and as foon as I had poured those Reproaches into the Ears of Berenice, which I thought due to her Infidelity. The defire of prolonging my Life till I could find Occasion to lose it in her Presence made me suffer the Help that was given me, and affift toward my Recovery as much as they about me defired. Seleucus, who interested

Vol. IV.

himself in it very cordially, came back to me the same Day, and when once I was in a Condition to thank him for his Care, I endeavoured to let him see he took it not of a Person that would ever become unworthy thereof by

his Ingratitude.

The Chirurgeons could not yet fettle any certain Judgment about my Cure, but they found I was fo inconveniently in that little House, and in a scurvy Chamber where I was almost suffocated with the excessive heat of the Season, that tho' there were danger in removing me, they believed there was more in letting me continue in that Place. Seleucus, whose urgent Occasions call'd him perpetually to Babylon, and who nevertheless could have been glad not to be from me, consented willingly to the Proposition of carrying me thither, and I had given my felf up fo wholly to be ordered by them, that I did not fo much as enquire what they meant to do with me. I knew not whether it was to Babylon, or to some other Place that they intended to remove me; but tho' I had known, I had preferv'd fo little Care of my Affairs, and of all other Thoughts but those my Jealousy inspir'd me with, that I should never have opposed them. I therefore suffered them the fourth Day to put on my Clothes, and lay me in a Litter to carry me to the Town, whither Seleucus, going along with me himself, made me be brought to his own House, where I was very bravely lodg'd, and more commodiously attended. It surprized me a little to fee I was in Babylon, but as I have already told you, my Despair swallowed up all my former Fears of being known, and I judg'd, that happen to me what would, my Condition could not be worfe than it was fince Berenice's Infidelity. Yet did I endeavour to free my felf from receiving many Visits, and to that end, having made that Request to Seleucus, he promised I should be feen but by very few. The Condition I was in hindred me from feeing all the Preparations that were made for Defence against those Forces of yours that began to appear; and Seleucus, who, by reason of Perdiccas his Wounds, bore the greatest Weight of those Assairs, knowing my Weakness made me unfit for that Entertainment, talk'd nothing of it to me, but when by Occasion

of Discourse he could not avoid it. Yet thus much I understood by what I heard him say, and by what Criton told me, that the Princes Lysimachus, Ptolomeus, and their Companions, had form'd a Party against Perdiccas and his, for the Interest of the Princesses my Sisters, either dead or Captives, and the Justice I found in your Quarrel, made me forry I was oblig'd to Seleucus, since

he was engag'd among your Enemies.

e

0

S

5,

1-

n

of

Yet did I stick but lightly upon those Considerations, for a more powerful Grief had made me incapable of taking an Interest in any thing, which concern'd not the Cause of my Despair: I continued certain Days without other Thoughts fave those of my Revenge, and of Death, the Danger whereof, according to the Chirurgions Opinion, was not yet quite over, and perhaps I should not have admitted any that could have oblig'd me to join with either Side, if I had been fit for Service, but for a Thing that happened to me about that Time. I had fent Criton to the Place where I had fought to enquire after Berenice, and my Enemy, and to endeavour to learn fomething that might inform me what was become of them; but at his Return with the Remedy for my Wounds, he brought me News which awaken'd my Interests powerfully enough to make me neglect those of our Family, to mingle mine with these of Seleucus. Criton came back to me, Brother, with the Herb you had given him for my Cure, told me what had befallen him in your Camp, delivered your generous Message, shew'd me the Present you had fent me, and assured me that you were not Arsacomes. This Encounter made me fall into a Confusion of Thoughts, and into an Astonishment hard to be describ'd; and tho' I was glad to hear my Enemy was in a Place where I could meet him, and where we might have Opportunity to end our Quarrel, it was a great Discontent to me to know that by the Greatness of my Wounds, I should not of a long Time, and perhaps never, be in a Condition to fight him again; or that I must be fain to be beholding to my Enemy for the Healing of them. Seleucus was present at Criton's coming in, and at the Account he gave me; and after having admir'd your Generosity, he knew the Herb you sent 0 2 me,

me, and confirm'd the Truth of the Story of Ptolomeus. He with a great deal of Joy perfuaded me to apply it to my Wounds, but the Repugnance I had to receive my Health from the Hands of my cruel Enemy, made me for a long Time oppose his Desires, and perhaps I should never have confented, if I had not thought my Rival might attribute that Refusal of his Assistance, to a Fear of coming to fight with him again. I judg'd moreover, that that Obligation did not engage me to any Peace with him, fince he had no other Intention in obliging me, than that of finishing with his Hand, what my Wounds perhaps were too flow in effecting, and that our Hatred being founded upon the Possession of Berenice, and not upon any flight Formality, it could end no other

way but by the Death of one of us.

These Considerations made me resolve to use the Prefent he fent me; and turning toward Seleucus, who press'd me to it very earnestly, Yes, Seleucus (faid I) from whence foever I receive my Cure, I accept of it to ferve you, and to acquit my felf of my Obligations to you: I'll fight on your Side, if I can recover my Strength; and tho' in my Opinion you have not the justest Cause, the Remembrance of what I owe to you, and the Defire of taking Revenge upon my Enemy makes me pass over that Consideration. Seleucus expressed an excessive Joy when he heard me say so, and taking me by the Hand, which I put forth to him with much Affection, We have conquered, valiant Arfaces, (faid he) since you say you'll fight for us, and you are too accustomed to Victory, to let us fear an ill Success of this War, while you are of our Party. If there be any Injustice in our Quarrel, I protest to you 'tis more than I know of, and that I am engaged in it only by my Friendship to Perdiccas, whom I have ever known too vertuous to be suspected of those Crimes whereof his Enemies accuse him.

When he had faid these Words, he caused that Sovereign Herb to be made ready; but presently after, he began to doubt whether I might fafely use it, and whether I ought not to suspect some foul Play in an Enemy's The Knowledge he gave me of his Fear, wrought

wrought no Effect upon me; but hastening the Chirurgions to apply that Remedy, My Enemy is too gallant (faid I) to be suspected of such a Baseness; and if you had feen how he maintains his Interests with his Sword, you would not believe he had any need of Poison, or that the Use of it were known to him. On this Manner did I accept the Present you fent me, and made no Difficulty to receive my Life from you, that I might be able to imploy it once more to the Destruction of yours. I confess my Resolution was something strange in the Choice of that Party; and tho' I knew that I ow'd my Life perhaps to Seleucus, and that he continued to engage me further by all kind of Testimonies of his Affection, that Respect was not strong enough to make me take up Arms for Men, who probably were the Enemies of our House; and the Memory of what I ow'd to my own Blood, and to the Friendship of Persons so near me, was powerful enough to counterbalance my Obligations to Seleucus; but my enraged Passion stifled all Remembrances, to thrust me headlong to my Revenge; and living for no other End but to die in the Presence of Berenice, after I had first made an End of him who had fo unjustly robb'd me of her, I shut my Eyes against whatsoever Reason and Nature could represent. Let all perish (said I) if the Gods ordain it so, since Berenice is false, and fince I must no longer hope for that Fortune, whereby I have furviv'd the Ruin of our House, what is't to me if it be utterly destroy'd; and why should I any more be concerned at any thing in the World, where I am detained by nothing else but my Desire of Revenge? They on both Sides are equally my Enemies, fince they have equally endeavour'd the Destruction of our Family, and they equally possess the Dominions that were ours; and if I ought to put any Difference between them, the Obligation I have to Seleucus, ought to make it wholly in Favour of his Party. Yet do I neither fight for Seleucus, nor for Perdiccas, against Ptolomeus, and against Lysimachus; but among the Enemies of Seleucus and Perdiccas I feek mine own most cruel and irreconcileable Enemy. If the Gods permit that I may kill him, I'll cease to offend my Family, by ceasing to outlive him; and if I perish by his Hand, the End of my Faults, and the End of my Misfortunes will both be

join'd together in that of my Life.

Besides these Thoughts which were inspired unto me by my Despair, I reflected as much as it would suffer me, upon many Things that confirmed me in the Defign of ferving the Party, contrary to that of my Enemy; and tho' I had very just Causes of Resentment against Roxana, I smother'd part of those I had against Perdiccas, and could not remember that his Love had thrust him upon Actions that were displeasing to the Queen my Sifter, without remembring also, that both she and Parifatis were indebted to him for their Lives, and that but for the Assistance he had given them, I should have been the only Person remaining of the Blood of Darius. Moreover, I believed that the Love which he and his Brother bore my Sisters, would engage them still in their Defence; and that if they were at that Time in their Hands, they were fafer there against Roxana's Hatred, than in any other Retreat what soever. I communicated none of these Thoughts to Seleucus, tho' his Virtue might have given me a great deal of Confidence in him, not thinking it convenient, for the little Time I had refolved to live, and in the Condition I then was, to make any further Liscovery of my felf; I said not a Word to him of my Combate against Perdiccas, nor of that I knew of the Princess's being alive, whom for all your Declaration every body believed dead, or at least feign'd to believe Perdiceas had never feen my Face, and tho' we have often met and talked together since, he still continued ignorant that I ever had any Encounter with him: Yet you easily imagine, that so were Roxana and him; and in the midst of so many Men, whom their Interest was fure to make my Enemies, I could not be without a great deal of Danger; but you also know, that as I car'd but little for my Life, I took but little Care of its Conservation. Yet did I desire (aiming at nothing less than my Safety) to avoid the Sight of Roxana, and of all others that could know me; and Seleucus, of whom I daily requested that Favour, being willing to fatisfy me, ordered the Matter so, that I was visited by none but his particular

cular Friends. The Report, nevertheless, of my lying wounded at Seleucus's House, began to spread about the Town; and that small Reputation I had gain'd, was the Cause that many had a Mind to see me. Roxana herself, who out of Cunning flatters those with great Civility whom she has a Desire to engage in her Party, had oftentimes a Thought to visit me; but Seleucus, at my earnest Intreaty, dissuaded her from it, saying I was not yet so well as to receive her Visits without Inconveniency.

In the mean Time, Brother, your Medicine had wrought its usual Effect upon me; and within Ten or Twelve Days after the applying that Herb, I was well enough to leave my Bed. Perdiccas who was cured almost about that Time, was the first that visited me, and came into my Chamber with Seleucus, Alcetas, and Caffander, and fome other of the most considerable among them. He entertained me with the civilest and most obliging Discourses in the World, and told me that my Reputation had come to the Ears of Alexander, and had not only gain'd me the Esteem of that Great King, but of all vertuous Perfons whatfoever, that he received the Assistance I made him hope for, as the chiefest Step to Victory, that he would refign me all the Authority he held over those of his Party, and that there was none among them who would not voluntarily fubmit to me. I answered that Excess of Civility, with all that I had left in the forrowful Condition of my Heart, and affur'd him in a few Words, that I would ferve him without any Command, and without other Ambition than that of fighting by Seleucus's Side. After that Visit I receiv'd many others from him; but as foon as the Forces were come up, finding my felf able to leave my Chamber, I pray'd Seleucus I might go out of the Town to encamp with them, and to lie in his Tent, which with those of the other Princes, were pitch'd along the Bank of the Euphrates. There I pass'd many tedious Days, or rather many wearisome Nights, since my Soul was nothing but in Darkness, or at the best enlightned only by some Hope of Revenge. Criton, who had already told me that my Enemy was not Arsacomes, confirm'd it to me after he had feen him again with Chitophon, when he carried him 04 Thanks

Thanks for the Favour he had done me, and I was already perfuaded of it, by the Tryal I had made of his Forces, , and by the admirable Generosity of that Rival, who in all his Actions, methought, was very different from Arfacomest yet the' I doubted not of what Criton faid, I knew and what to believe, when the Report came into our Camp, that a Scythian Prince nam'd Arfacomes, was with our Enemies, and very much consider'd among them. This News, which came to us many feveral ways, put me at first into great Disquiets, to learn the Truth of it; but in the End I banish'd them all, slicking close to my former Resolutions. Let him be Arsacomes, (faid I) or let him be a Stranger, 'tis still he that takes Berenice from me, and he whom I ought to profecute to Death. In the Person of Arsacomes I shall kill my ancient Enemy, and in that of a Stranger I shall punish the cruel Man, who unjustly robs me of what he has not purchased by his Blood and Services, as I have done, and who makes Berenice a Thousand Times more faulty by such a horrible Lightness than if she had given her self to Arsacomes, who has lov'd and ferv'd her many Years. These were my Thoughts, till the Time of my Conference with Lysimachus the Day before the Battle. Seleucus had told me the History of that Prince; and besides the Esteem which was caused in me by the Recital of his gallant Actions, the Affection he had testified to my Sister, and to all our Family, made me value him exceedingly; but when I found by his Letter, that it was he with whom I had contracted a Friendship at the Temple of Apollo, and afterward by the River-side, I received the Occasion of feeing him with all the Joy I could then be capable of; you from him have heard what pass'd between us, and how our Conversation was interrupted, and from me you shall hear, that after we parted, the Remembrance of his Words put me again into my former Confusion, and I could not call to Mind what he had faid of the long Services my Rival had done my Princess, without believing it was Arfacomes. The last Actions (faid I to my felf) which I did in Scythia, till which my Passion was never openly declared, were done too lately to be come to the Knowledge of Lysimachus; and Arsacomes's Passion,

Passion, which has been discover'd these Seven or Eight Years, can be unknown to no body but those that know not him, 'tis Arfacomes without doubt. Criton has forgotten his Features, or else his Face is alter'd by his Wounds, or some other Accident, and with his Face, the Gods to ruin me, have chang'd his Forces, and his Courage. 'Tis certainly this advantageous Change that has also chang'd Berenice, and this new Gallantry may have obtain'd that of her, which he never could have done by his ordinary Qualities. With Discourses and Thoughts of this Nature, I impatiently waited for the next Day, wherein I hoped to make my Revenge famous to Eternity; but being I fought for nothing but to meet my Enemy, I would needs have fought as a private Man, and 'twas almost by Force that Seleucus prevail'd with me to share with him in the Command of those Troops he was to lead. I will not fay any thing to you of that bloody Day, wherein, after I had long fought the supposed Arfacones, I met him, but to my Loss and to my Confusion; yet you may guess by what I have told you, and by what I attempted, with how great an Extremity of Anger and Affliction I have been tormented fince. When I knew that the Gods had fav'd my Enemy from my Revenge that fecond Time, I was ready to have turn'd all the Effects of my Despair, against my felf; and 'twas with all the Difficulty in the World, that Seleucus got me to suffer the Dressing of fome light Hurts I had received. From my first Transports, I fell into new Designs, and began to condemn the Ways I had taken for my Revenge. The Injustice of the Side I was of, was more known to me than it had been before; and when I heard that Prince Oxyartes, my Uncle, and all those that lov'd the Memory of Darius, were of your Party, and that your Intention appear'd to me to be fuch as you had declared in your Manifests, I with Remorfe perceived that my Passion had made me criminal and ingrateful, and that my Fault was too odious to the Gods, to hope they would ever grant me the Revenge I aim'd at, and in which I had bounded my utmost Desires. Fight no more against thy Friends, ingrateul Artaxerxes (faid I) and give not that Advantage to

thine Enemy, to serve thy House, while thou art favouring its Enemies. The Choice be has made of that Party, ought to make thee bluft for Shame; and if he be worthy of thy Hatred, by Wrongs that are more considerable than the Services be does thy Friends, fet thy felf against his Person alone, without fighting still against thy nearest Kindred, and against those that have taken Arms for the Remainders of thy Family. Go, and dispatch bim in his Tent, since without Crime thou canst not stay here till a second Battle, and that thy Impatiency will not yield to so long a Delay; perhaps the Gods may suffer thee to effect what thou hast resolv'd; and if they bave decreed that thou must fall, thy Death will be more to thy Advantage that Way, than if theu bouldst receive it at the Head of the Enemies of thy House, from the Hands of Oxyartes, or of some other Prince of thine own Blood. This Defign was put in Execution, and the next Day without thinking so much as upon Criton (so far had my Fury blinded me) while he was gone to some other Part of the Camp, I put on my Arms, got on Horseback, and being fully refolv'd to be kill'd, or kill my Rival, I left our Camp, and advanc'd directly toward yours. There was little Probability I could effect that Enterprize, but the Regard I had of Life, was a great deal less; and equally defiring my Death and my Revenge, I ran to both with a like Precipitation.

I shall not need to tell you any more (continued Arfaces) since you are not ignorant of the rest; and that
you know as well as I, the admirable Change that has
happen'd in my Fortune. Where I sought my cruel Enemy, I met my dearest Brother; where I sought a faithless
Berenice, I sound Berenice still constant, and still sull of
Goodness, to pardon me the Injuries I have done her;
and in short, where I sought my Death, I sound my Life,
but a Life happy beyond all my Hopes, and a Life that
makes me bless all my past Afflictions, since I see them

brought to so sweet, so glorious a Conclusion.



The Continuation of the Fourth Part of

CASSANDRA.

BOOK VI.

HUS did the Prince finish his long Narration; and his Illustrious Hearers, at the Recital of his marvellous Actions, remain'd in an Astonishment, which for a long Time they could not express otherwise than by their Silence. They look'd a while upon one another, as if it had been mutually to ask what Judgment Arsaces was to expect of those his Wonders; and in the End, they broke forth all together into an Admiration of that Prince's whole Life, and of all his particular Actions, extolling them with Praises

which his Modesty could not suffer. Yet was he constrain'd to let pass the first Motions of those generous
Persons, who could not hold their Peace, having so great
and so gallant a Subject to discourse of. After that Consussing

fusion was a little over, and that a single Body could be heard, The Greatness of these Actions (faid Oroundates) which the Prince my Brother hath related, has not at all furprized me; for tho' perhaps they are above all that the Virtue of any Man, without the Help of Fortune, hath ever executed, yet are they not above the Opinion I had conceived of Prince Artaxerxes. The Gods have restor'd him to me, (purfued he, giving that Prince most affectionate Embraces) and in restoring him, contrary to my Hopes, they have made known to Men, what exact Observers they are of their Promises. The Words of that Oracle, which we thought to be so obscure, are now fufficiently explain'd; and in our latter Actions we cannot be ignorant, That THE DEAD have BUILT THE FORTUNE OF THE LIVING, and that THE LIVING have laboured for the REPOSE OF THE DEAD. While Orondates LIVING defended Berenice against the Violence of Arfacomes, and deliver'd her out of his Hands, to reftore her into those of Prince Artaxerxes; Artaxerxes DEAD in the Opinion of the World, fought also for Orondates, and by the Effects of his usual Valour, freed the Queen his Sister out of the Power of Perdiccas. the Providence of the Gods in this Encounter is wonderful, so is the Conjuncture of it likewise very strange; and by this happy Beginning, I, from the same Gods, and from this DEAD Prince they have raised again, expect the End of that Felicity they have promifed us, with an undoubting Confidence. They that heard Oroundates's Words, after they had kept him Company in admiring fo extraordinary an Event, confirm'd him in his Opinion, and were going to fall into a Conversation, for which they wanted not Matter, when Arfaces, to whom Berenice's Adventures were unknown, and who was therein too much concerned to be ignorant, of them any longer, defired her to favour him with that Relation, and in that Defire he did but prevent Oroondates, who knew no more of them than he, and oblig'd the Company who long'd extremely to hear the last Accident of that Princes's Life. She staid not to be any longer entreated; but after having thought a while upon what she had to say, began to fatisfy their Expectations thus:



THE

CONTINUATION

OFTHE

History of BERENICE.



HE whole Day has been spent in Prince Artaxerxes's Story; but mine shall be so short, that 'tis not the Length of it will make it tedious to you.

I shall not need to tell you it was Arfacomes that carried me away, since you

are certain enough of that Truth already; I will only let you know, that I had pass'd Part of that fatal Night in which he executed his perfidious Resolution, with Arsaces, Prince Carthasis my Uncle, and many other Perfons; and that after all were retired to their feveral Lodgings, I, instead of going to Bed, ingag'd my self in a long Discourse, wherein (tho' Cyllenia often desired me to go to Bed) we fpent Two or Three Hours: It feem'd my evil Destiny had so ordain'd, to give my Enemies the more Facility to execute their Design, or my good Fortune to hinder me from falling into their Hands in an undecent Manner. Our Conversation at last was at an End, and we were beginning to undress us to go to Bed, when I saw my Chamber-door thrust open, and seven or eight armed Men come in. You may well enough imagine in what a Fear I was, without my going about to repre-

represent it; therefore I will only tell you, that it was fo great as it deprived me of all my Strength, and that I faw my felf in a Man's Arms, without being able to refift him, and almost without having the Confidence to call Theomiris, and Cyllenia to my Relief: Yet did I fend forth loud Cries, when they took me out of my Chamber, which drew fome of my Servants, who instead of Rescuing me, found their Death in the Swords of those barbarous Men. They carry'd me down the back Stairs, crofs'd thro' the Garden, and being got out at the Hole they had made in the Wall, they put me by Force into a Chariot, in which I was stay'd for by two Men and a Woman; and no fooner was I in it, but three of those Ravishers placing themselves by me, the rest got on Horseback, and the Charioteer lashing his Horses, drove away as fast as possibly he could; I then fell prefently into a Swoon, as one of greater Courage than I might have done, and continued fo long in it, that we were above Three Hundred Furlongs from Medon before I came to my felf again. I open'd not mine Eyes to recover Light, the Night was too full of Darkness to afford any to a Person blinded with Grief; but I recover'd my Understanding, to know the miserable Condition I then was in, and I open'd my Mouth to give my felf over to fuch Cries and fuch Complaints, as it was likely I should make in such a Missortune, I did all I could to throw my felf out of the Chariot, but I was held by very strong Men, who heard all my Cries, and all my Imprecations, without giving me any Answer; nor did I hear any other Voice, fave that of the Woman who was in the Chariot with me, and who endeavour'd to comfort me by Discourses, to which I lent no manner of Attention.

In the mean Time the Chariot went on with an incredible Swiftness, and at Break of Day we came to a Place where they took fresh Horses. Arsacomes, during the Time he had to prepare for his Design, had been careful to make them be laid at every Three Hundred Furlongs thro' all the Way he meant to go, judging it requisite to use all possible Speed to escape those that would be fent in Pursuit of him. He had also furnish'd

furnish'd himself with very skilful Guides, and such as were well acquainted with all the By-ways thro' which they led him, hardly ever coming into any inhabited Place; you know that's a very easy thing in Scythia, where the Way lies open over all the Fields, and where there is neither Ditch nor Wall to hinder one. The fresh Horses expected our Passage in Woods, or in By-Houses known to our Guides; and by this Order which was observ'd through all our Journey, Arsacomes found as much Facility as he could wish, to get to Byzantium, whither he intended to retreat, and whither he had fent a Man to defire Protection, knowing he could make no Abode, nor find any Safety in any of my Father's Territories. This Knowledge had made him refolve to retire among the Enemies of Scythia, and he had perfuaded the Lieutenant of Thrace, Zopirio's Successor, to receive and protect him, having promis'd to raise a Party in Scythia, that might be powerful enough to take Revenge for the Defeat of his Predecessor. I have thought fit to inform you of these Things in a few Words, before I tell the Beginning of my Voyage; and now I will let you know, that after the rest of that first Night was past, I, by the Light of the approaching Day, perceived my felf in Arfacomes's Arms, and knew the Face of my Enemy, who till then had not discover'd himself, nor had ever open'd his Mouth to interrupt the Lamentations I had made. I learn'd nothing by that Sight, which was not known to me already by all manner of Probability; yet could I not forbear to break into a greater Sorrow than before; and my Aversion to that insolent Man being increased, as you may imagine by this last Offence, made his Presence insupportable to me. Another Woman, transported as I was, would have flown immediately at his Face, and would have employ'd her Hands, and all the Arms that Nature hath given us, to take Revenge upon fo cruel an Enemy, or elfe to exasperate his Anger; but I am not of so violent a Nature, and therefore left that only to my Cries and Tears, which I could not hope for from my Forces: Traytor, (faid I, bursting forth into Tears) Traytor to thy King, to thy Country, and to thine Honour, Is it thus thou usest the Daughter

Daughter of thy Sovereign, and a Princess to whom thou did'st profess thy felf ty'd by other Duties than those of her Birth? Are these the brave Effects of that Passion. which had made thee not to know thy felf, and of that Love which raised thy presumptuous Thoughts so high? Is it possible it should make thee stoop to so black, so shameful a Treachery? Dost thou think this Infidelity to thy King, and to a King who has fo particularly oblig'd thee, can remain unpunish'd? And canst thou believe thou shalt escape the Justice of the Gods, though thou fave thy felf from that of Men? I faid a great deal more to him, and pour'd forth Reproaches which he hearken'd to, without interrupting me: But when I was a little fettled, or at least when being tir'd with long speaking, and tormenting my self, I was constrain'd to hold my Peace and take Breath; Madam, (faid he) I should find a great deal of Justice in your Reproaches, and should condemn this last Action of mine, if I had done it in a less Extremity than that you had reduc'd me to, and if a Service of Eight Years, and a Service paid with as much Respect and Submission as you could desire, were not enough to justify this Esfect of my Despair.

So long as I had any Hope, you never faw me abuse the King's Favour toward me, nor license my self to any Liberty that could displease you; but when I lost my Hopes, both by your cruel Obstinacy, and by the King's dishonourable Change, I to extreme Missortunes apply'd Remedies of the same Nature, and would not leave unto my Rival what was due to me, both by my Services, and by the King your Father's Promise. In short, Madam, I have done nothing that I can justly repent of, nor for which I ought to fear any Reproach; and rather than leave you to my Rival, I would not only have pull'd you out of the King's own Arms, but would even have facrific'd himself to my lawful Resentments, have made the whole Kingdom perish, and have set all Scythia on Fire, if it had been in my Power. Ah! Thou unworthy Man, (reply'd I) if thou couldst not endure to leave me in the Hands of thy Rival, thou shouldst have pull'd me out of them, as once he pull'd me out of thine; thou shouldst have undertaken that against him alone, which

he undertook against thee at the Head of thine Army; and thou shouldst have disputed me like a Prince, and like a valiant Man as he is, fince thou knew'ft he never would have refused those Occasions. I would willingly have made use of them (faid Arfacomes) if they could have been any Advantage to my Passion; and as valiant, and as fortunate as Arfaces is, he never faw me run away from him; nor did the Scythians ever fee Arfacomes turn his Back in the greatest Dangers; but if I had fought with Arfaces, Berenice would not have been the Prize of my Victory, fince the King's Injustice had otherwise disposed of her; and that by his express Command he had utterly extinguish'd all my Hopes: By taking that Course, tho' I might have reveng'd my felf upon mine Enemy, I had not obtained my Princess; but by this I have followed, Berenice is mine, and Arfaces is more cruelly punish'd, than if I had given him a Thousand Deaths. Berenice thine? (cry'd I, interrupting him) Berenice thine? Ah! never hope it; and fince thou hast feen her refift her Father's Will, while he was fo far blinded as to favour thee, and while thou wert less criminal than now thou art, be certain that she knows well enough how to defend her felf by her Death against thy Violence, and against thy Persecutions; and that so long as she lives, she will never look upon thee as other than a Monster, and as an Enemy, black with the basest of all Crimes. Time (replied Arfacomes) and the Continuation of my Respects, will, without doubt, abate your unjust Anger, and you will cease to hate me, when you come to consider, that 'tis the Excess of my Love which forces me to displease you, in taking you away from a Rival more fortunate than I am, but which shall never make me go beyond the Limits of that Respect I owe you, and which shall ever leave you the same Empire over me you had in the Court of the King your Father. these Words, Arsacomes strove to appeale and comfort me; but all his Endeavours were to no Purpose; and as often as he opened his Mouth to speak to me, he receiv'd no other Answer but Reproaches and Imprecations.

I continued almost Two whole Days, before I would eat any thing in the World; and certainly I should have

III

Scythia,

Part IV. kill'd my felf with Hunger, rather than have fram'd my felf with Hunger, rather than have fram'd my felf to live with my cruel Enemies, if I had not hoped I should be retain'd, and if I had not expected marvellous Effects from Arfaces for my Deliverance. Arfacomes to use me with the more Decency, and not to keep a Princess of my Quality alone among a great many Men, had taken Care, as I have told you, to provide a Woman to ferve me. I knew her well enough, having feen her often with the Princess of the Isledons, Arsacomes's Mother; but tho' she did me all the Service she was able, with a great deal of Cunning, and in Shew with a great deal of Affection, I could not receive it but as from my mortal Enemy; and wherefoever I look'd upon her, the Remembrance of Theomiris and Cyllenia, whose Confolations would have been fo fweet to me in that Condition, drew new Tears from my Eyes, and new Sighs from my afflicted Heart. Alas! How often did I name Arfaces! And how often did I call him unprofitably to my Assistance! I made no Difficulty at all of it before Arfacomes himself, and I so little fear'd to displease him, that I never used any Constraint upon my self to smother my just Resentments. His whole Train consisted of Ten Men, whom he had chosen amongst those that were most faithful to him, Three of which were in the Chariot with us, and the rest follow'd it on Horseback; he, of whom he made most Account, was Asiages, the wickedest of all Men living, and one who having left his Country, where he was born, for many Crimes he had committed, and particularly for the Death of his Brother, which he had caused by his mischievous Practices, had taken Refuge in Scythia, where he had found a Retreat with Arsacomes, during the Time he was in Favour. 'Twas he who had discover'd Arfaces, and who remembring the Face of Artaxerxes, whom he had often feen in the Court of the King his Father, had more confidered the Recompences he hoped for from Arfacomes, than the Fidelity he ow'd to his lawful Prince, and after he had told him of it, went by his Orders to the King, declared the Truth of Arfaces's Birth to him, took upon him to know the Intentions that had brought him into V.

n'd

elf

I

ous

to

in-

ad

to

er

0-

le,

at

ny.

er,

n-

n-

hs

ne

to

re

n,

n.

ſŧ

ot

of

(-

is

d

)-

-

-

0

n

1-

,

,

n

0

scythia, and by his Difcourfe made those cruel Impressions in the King's Mind, which afterwards caused so many Disorders. He, after Arsaces's Return, and his Reconciliation with the King, had retir'd to one of Arfacomes's Houses, not being able to look on the Face of his Prince, whom he had betray'd; but from the Time Arfacomes left the Court, he had been with him again, and by his Persuasions had strengthen'd him in his wicked Intention, and had counfell'd him to go to Byzantium, where, by Means of his Acquaintance, he affur'd him of a fafe Retreat. 'Twas that wicked Fellow that perfecuted me more than all the rest; and thinking thereby to gain himself more Favour with Arfacomes, he wrought fuch an Aversion in me, that I was not able to endure him. I will not trouble you with the Discourses we had by the Way, and you shall only know that we arriv'd at Byzantium without any Hindrance. Eurimedon was Lieutenant there for Alexander, under Prince Lysimachus, who was Vice-Roy of Thrace; but he being absent with the King, Eurimedon was absolute in Thrace, and in the Bosphorus; as foon as he heard of Arfacomes's Arrival, he receiv'd him in a very obliging Manner, and by Word of Mouth confirm'd whatfoever he had promifed to his Messenger: I was ever well lodg'd, and Eurimedon having taken Care to furnish me with other Women, I was ferv'd as well as I could have defired, if it had not been Arfacemes daily employ'd all his Eloquence, by Enemies. and all his Cunning to work upon me; he bethought himself of all the Submissions whereby an exasperated Mind could be appealed, and made no Difficulty of suffering any thing, except the Proposition of my Return, and of my Liberty.

The impudent Astiages sollicited me every Day to savour him, and persuaded me that in the Condition I then was, nothing could be of greater Advantage to me than to marry Arsacomes: He told me, it was not my best Course to drive a Prince into Despair, who had Power to do what he pleased himself; and that a Lover reduc'd to the last Extremities, was capable of doing any thing; but I repulsed that persidious Man with such Words, as, if he had had any Shame in him, would have serv'd his

Turn

Turn for ever. Eurimedon himself at first spake for Ar. facomes with a great deal of Earnestness, and strove to win me to an Opinion that I should not be unfortunate with a Prince that adored me, and in whose Favour he offer'd me his Protection against all Enemies whatso. ever, and Part of Alexander's Forces against Arfaces, and against the King my Father, if he disapprov'd my Change, He endeavour'd also to comfort me in my Sorrow, by all manner of Civility; but when he found me inflexible, and not to be comforted, he ceased to trouble me any more. I for a while believ'd that the Compassion he had of my Misfortune, or the Respect he had of my Person, had made him cooler towards Arfacomes; and with that Conceit, I endur'd his Company more willingly than before, but within a little after I perceiv'd that Alteration proceeded from another Caufe, and by his Looks, and by all his Actions, I found that his own Interests had made him forget those of Arsacomes. In brief, by an Effect of my Destiny, either good or bad, Eurimedon fell in Love with me, and I faw my felf exposed by my cruel Fortune, to suffer the Affection of a Man of meaner Birth, and of meaner Quality than Arfacomes. He for some Days spoke nothing to me of his Passion but in ambiguous Terms; yet within a while after, the Power he faw he had, made him grow infolent, and not only took away all the Respect he had born to my Quality, but also the Consideration he had of Arsacomes, and the Promise he had given him. The first Time he explain'd himself to me, was after a Discourse we had of my Misfortunes; and having quietly hearken'd to the Complaints I made, Madam, (faid he) you are not so unfortunate as you believe; and if you were but of an Humour to discern those Persons that have an Ambition to serve you, from those that have offended you, your Miseries would not be of any long Continuance.

These Words, into the Meaning whereof I did not dive at first, gave me some Glimpse of Hope; and being desirous to keep the Good-will of a Man who had Power to oblige me, Do not doubt, Eurimedon, (said I) but that I am as sensible of Courtesies, as I can be of Injuries; not but that I would fully acknowledge those

I should

Ar.

e to

rtu-

our

atio-

and

nge.

all

ble,

any

had on,

hat

han

raks,

ad

an ell

ny

er

or

in

er ly

1

ie d

[-

e

0

I should receive from vertuous Persons. If it be so, (replied he) Eurimedon will be the happiest Man in the World, and you shall not be the most unfortunate Princess. I know what I owe to Arsacomes, and to the Laws of Hospitality; but I also know what I owe to Berenice, and to my felf; and though I should commit a Fault, that Pailion wherewith Arfacomes covers his, may

more reasonably excuse those of Eurimedon.

These Words, wherein there no longer was any Ambiguity, caused a Disdain in me which I cannot express, and if Eurimedon look'd then upon my Face, I am confident he faw it overspread with a Colour that was not ordinary. Go, Eurimedon, (faid I) go, declare your Passion to others than the Daughter of the King of Scythia, and re-double not by your Insolence the Afflictions of a Princess, whom you ought not to behold but with Respect. Though Eurimedon was dash'd at this Reply, yet would he have spoken again, but I gave him not the Leisure, for going away without so much as casting an Eye toward him, I shut my self up into my Closet. Imagine the Complaints I made after this last Effect of my. Misfortune, and spare me the Pains of repeating them: 'Twas not without a very sensible Discontent that I consider'd that new Conquest, nor was it without a great many Tears that I looked upon the Misery of my Condition, which forced me to receive Declarations of Love from a Man of Eurimedon's Birth. Ah! Artaxerxes, (faid I) what an unworthy Rival has my hard Fate procured thee! And how much thou wouldst be ashamed if thou knewst my Misery, to have a Petty Lieutenant of a Province, thy Competitor in Affection, thou to whom a Hundred Provinces, and Ten Thousand Subjects more confiderable than this Rival, ought to yield Obedience. This Remembrance made Eurimedon more odious to me than Arsacomes; and tho' according to the Rules of Prudence, I ought perhaps to have diffembled with him, to get by his Means out of the Power of Arfacomes, my fear of falling into worse Hands than his, opposed that Subtilty, or rather I had not command enough over my felf to make my Refentments give Way to that Confideration: I therefore avoided all Discourse with Eurime-

Turn for ever. Eurimedon himself at first spake for Ar. facomes with a great deal of Earnestness, and strove to win me to an Opinion that I should not be unfortunate with a Prince that adored me, and in whose Favour he offer'd me his Protection against all Enemies whatso. ever, and Part of Alexander's Forces against Arfaces, and against the King my Father, if he disapprov'd my Change. He endeavour'd also to comfort me in my Sorrow, by all manner of Civility; but when he found me inflexible, and not to be comforted, he ceased to trouble me any more. I for a while believ'd that the Compassion he had of my Misfortune, or the Respect he had of my Person, had made him cooler towards Arfacomes; and with that Conceit, I endur'd his Company more willingly than before, but within a little after I perceiv'd that Alteration proceeded from another Cause, and by his Looks, and by all his Actions, I found that his own Interests had made him forget those of Arsacomes. In brief, by an Effect of my Destiny, either good or bad, Eurimedon fell in Love with me, and I faw my felf exposed by my cruel Fortune, to suffer the Affection of a Man of meaner Birth, and of meaner Quality than Arsacomes. He for some Days spoke nothing to me of his Passion but in ambiguous Terms; yet within a while after, the Power he faw he had, made him grow infolent, and not only took away all the Respect he had born to my Quality, but also the Consideration he had of Arsacomes, and the Promise he had given him. The first Time he explain'd himself to me, was after a Discourse we had of my Misfortunes; and having quietly hearken'd to the Complaints I made, Madam, (faid he) you are not so unfortunate as you believe; and if you were but of an Humour to discern those Persons that have an Ambition to serve you, from those that have offended you, your Miseries would not be of any long Continuance.

These Words, into the Meaning whereof I did not dive at first, gave me some Glimpse of Hope; and being desirous to keep the Good-will of a Man who had Power to oblige me, Do not doubt, Eurimedon, (said I) but that I am as sensible of Courtesies, as I can be of Injuries; not but that I would fully acknowledge those

I should

Ar.

to

tu-

our

tfo-

and

ige.

all

ble,

any

had

on,

hat

han

ra-

ks,

nad

an ell

ny

or

in

er

ly

y,

d

S

0

I should receive from vertuous Persons. If it be so, (replied he) Eurimedon will be the happiest Man in the World, and you shall not be the most unfortunate Princess. I know what I owe to Arsacomes, and to the Laws of Hospitality; but I also know what I owe to Berenice, and to my self; and though I should commit a Fault, that Passion wherewith Arsacomes covers his, may

more reasonably excuse those of Eurimedon.

These Words, wherein there no longer was any Ambiguity, caused a Disdain in me which I cannot express, and if Eurimedon look'd then upon my Face, I am confident he faw it overspread with a Colour that was not ordinary. Go, Eurimedon, (faid I) go, declare your Passion to others than the Daughter of the King of Scythia, and re-double not by your Insolence the Afflictions of a Princess, whom you ought not to behold but with Respect. Though Eurimedon was dash'd at this Reply, vet would he have spoken again, but I gave him not the Leisure, for going away without so much as casting an Eve toward him, I shut my felf up into my Closet. Imagine the Complaints I made after this last Effect of my. Misfortune, and spare me the Pains of repeating them: 'Twas not without a very sensible Discontent that I consider'd that new Conquest, nor was it without a great many Tears that I looked upon the Misery of my Condition, which forced me to receive Declarations of Love from a Man of Eurimedon's Birth. Ah! Artaxerxes, (faid I) what an unworthy Rival has my hard Fate procured thee? And how much thou wouldst be ashamed if thou knewst my Misery, to have a Petty Lieutenant of a Province, thy Competitor in Affection, thou to whom a Hundred Provinces, and Ten Thousand Subjects more confiderable than this Rival, ought to yield Obedience. This Remembrance made Eurimedon more odious to me than Arfacomes; and tho' according to the Rules of Prudence, I ought perhaps to have dissembled with him, to get by his Means out of the Power of Arfacomes, my fear of falling into worse Hands than his, opposed that Subtilty, or rather I had not command enough over my felf to make my Resentments give Way to that Consideration: I therefore avoided all Discourse with Eurimedon,

don, as carefully as with Arfacomes; yet for all I shunn'd him, I could not keep him off, but growing more inflam'd by that Relistance, he omitted nothing that could advantage his Design; and having found me one Day alone at my Closet window, whither he came to me fo fuddenly that I had not Time to get away, Madam, (faid he) it is in your own Power to be at Liberty, and Sovereign in Byzantium; and if you did not difdain my Services and my Person, I would quickly revenze and free you from the Tyranny of Arfacomes. Altho' I hated Arfacomes, as you well may judge, I confess I abhorr'd the Falseness of Eurimedon, who voluntarily offer'd to betray a Man that had trufted him with his Life, and with that which was dearest to him. Knowledge made me hate him, and despise him the more; but thinking I should be unwife to neglect the Means of recovering my Liberty, If you will ferve Berenice, (faid 1) as Vertue obliges you to do, the Gods will recompense so good an Action, and the King my Father will neither want Power, nor Will to acknowledge it. I de-· fire nothing but Berenice (replied he) for the Price of her Liberty; and for a less Recompence than that, I would not undertake a thing which in Appearance is worthy to be condemned. Perhaps I am not so despicable as you believe, for tho' the Gods have not made me Owner of a Crown, I am allied to those that are, and I serve a Master from whom I may possibly hope for one. Serve that Master then in that Hope (faid I, being extremely vext) but never ferve fuch a Mistress as Berenice, with Hope of a Recompence that is too far above you. With these Words I left him, and tho' he follow'd me to profecute that Discourse, I no longer would afford him any Attention.

He was not at all the colder for my Disdain; but his Passion rather increasing to my Missortune, he every Day gave me so many Signs of its Violence, that I had a great deal of Reason to fear it might make him at last abuse his Power. He began not long after to threaten me with it, or at least to make me know by his Discourse, that I should not do well to drive a Man into Despair, who was able to do whatsoever he would,

ŀ

V.

n'd

In-

ıld

fo fo

m,

y,

if-

e-

lefs

ly

nis nis

;

of

n-

11

eof

I

is

1-

d

-

ł

and that perhaps he could not always continue fo much mafter of himself, as he had been fince the Beginning of his Love; and in the End it blinded him so far, that lofing all manner of Discretion, it came at last to the Knowledge of Arfacomes. He was most violently transported when he perceiv'd it; and as foon as that Belief was fettled in his Mind, Rage and Indignation entred fo powerfully with it, that he was ready to go and kill Eurimedon, tho' he saw his infallible Ruin in that Action: Astiages dissuaded him from that furious Resolution, and if his Words were not able to moderate that Fury, they at least wrought so far as to make him hearken to less desperate Propositions. Neither of them doubted but that there was a Necessity of leaving Byzantium, and of feeking a fafer Retreat otherwhere, but they were a long Time e're they could think of one, and that Uncertainty kept them for some Days in a very great Trouble. the End, Afriages thought he had light upon what they studied for, and made a Motion to Arfacomes, which he gave Ear to, it not being without some Ground of Reafon. Sir, (faid he) fince you can find no Safety in Scythia, nor with any of the neighbouring Princes, whom the Consideration of Matheus would hinder from protecting you, make your Retreat to Alexander, he is no Friend to the King of Scythia, having lost two Armies, and two Generals against him, and without doubt nothing but his great Employments have made him defer the Defign he has to invade his Territories: if you retire to him, and let him know that by the Credit, and by the Intelligence you hold in Scythia, you can facilitate his Conquest of it, he not only will hearken to your Proposition, and receive you very favourably, but will consider you as a Prince useful to the Augmentation of his Greatness, and protect you against the King of Scythia, and against all Enemies whatfoever. Moreover, when he shall hear that your Rival is the Son of Darius, whose Empire he now is Master of, and who while he is alive, may trouble him in that Possession, you need not question but he will help you against him with all his Power, and use all the Strength he has to ruin him. Having Alexander's Assistance and Protection, there is nothing any more

more to be fear'd, for your chiefest Enemies will be too weak to hurt you when once you are so powerfully supported; he readily will give you Berenice, and if to the Interest of your Love you desire to join that of your Revenge, you may ask him Justice against Eurimedon's Insidelity. Arsacomes approv'd so well of this Counsel of Astiages, that he immediately resolv'd to follow it; and after having a Thousand Times embrac'd the Giver of it, they began to deliberate what Course they should take to escape from Byzantium, not doubting but if Eurimedon should suspect their Intent, his Love would make him oppose my Departure, and perhaps thrust him upon worse Resolutions.

When they had long confulted, they at last agreed that Astiages, by a considerable Sum of Money, should gain the Master of one of those Barks that use to carry Persons over the Pass at Byzantium, that after having won him to his Devotion, he in the Night should carry over the Chariot and the Horses that had brought us, which should be left on the other Side the Water, under the Custody of some of his Servants, and that the next Night following they should get me out of my Lodging, to go over altogether in the same Bark. They found no great Difficulty in this Design, because Eurimedon mistrusted nothing, and because I ever had the Liberty to go abroad whitherfoever Arfacomes would; besides, by reason of the Tranquility they were in at that Time, there was no Guard kept either at the Gates or Haven, so that if Eurimedon were advertised of their Enterprise, it was not easy for him to prevent it. Astiages went away immediately about it; and had as fortunate Success as he could wish, that very Day he gain'd the Master of a Bark by a confiderable Present, and having disposed him to all that he defir'd, he at Night sent the Chariot over, and the Horses, which he trusted to the Care of three of Arfac mes's Servants, who by his Direction fet them up in one of those Houses, that are about Fifty Furlongs from the little Town on this Side of the Water. Arfacomes pass'd the next Day in a great deal of Fear and Impatiency, and when Night was come, Eurimedon and he staid in my Chamber till the Hour I was wont to

retire; then they both withdrew together, but Eurimedon went to his Lodging, and Arfacomes, having walk'd Two or Three Turns in my Gallery, came again into my Chamber with Astiages; his Return caused some Apprehension in me, not being used to see him come back at fuch an Hour; but he quickly put me out of Doubt, and coming to me with fomething a troubled Countenance, Madam, (faid he) all your Servants are not fo full of Respect as Arsacomes; for tho' the Power my Fortune has given me, has not made me forgetful of that I owe you, Eurimedon cannot fay the same; he is resolv'd, Madam, to take that by Violence, which he has not been able to obtain by Persuasion, and if you stay here but a Day longer, you'll feel the Effects of that Authority you now are under. I know I shall die in your Defence, but my Death will not be able to secure you; therefore I had rather give up all my Hopes, and carry you back to the King your Father, than leave you to the Mercy of this faithless Man. Dissembling Arsacomes had coined this Invention, for fear I should cry out, or make any Noise when he flould take me out of my Chamber; and the Probability I found in what he faid, by the Knowledge I had of Eurimedon's Passion, made me immediately believe him. I praised the Gods for putting him into fo good a Mind, and looking upon him with a Countenance very different from what I ordinarily afforded him: If it be true, (faid I) that you will restore me to the King my Father, not only he and I will pardon you the Faults you have committed against us, but you will recover the same Place in his Affection you herctofore enjoy'd, and shall obtain as great an one in my Acknowledgment and in my Esteem, as you in Reason can desire. I am full'y resolved upon it, (replied Arsacomes) and tho' I knew you were left to me for ever, I had rather lose you by doing you Service, than abandon you to treacherous Eurimedon. But Madam, (continued he) we must fly without any longer Delay, for if we let pass this Night, without employing it to save you, there will be no Possibility to do it to Morrow. I am ready, Arfacomes, (replied I) nor shall I be less joy'd to escape the Tyranny of Eurimealm, than to return to the King VOL. IV.

my Father. We must away then instantly (said he); all things are prepar'd for our Departure, and wait for us at the Gate of the City. There was no Body in my Chamber at that Time, but the Woman that came along with me out of Scythia, for I had sent away those Eurimedon had put to me. Wherefore, seeing I had free Passage out, I joyfully laid hold of that Occasion to save my self; and not being frighted with the Night, which might have caused some Apprehension in me, I gave Arsacomes my Hand more willingly than ever I had done in all my Life, and let my self be guided by him without any Torch, since in the Design we had, Dark-

ness was more favourable to us than Light.

We got out of the House without any Hindrance, and went a-foot till we came to the Haven. I was fo little acquainted with the Streets, that I never perceiv'd my Error; but when I saw my self at the Water-side, and that A facomes took me in his Arms to carry me into the Bark that staid expecting us, I found I had been deceiv'd; and recalling my first Resentments against Arfacomes, Ah! Traytor, (cry'd I) how much was I to blame, to believe thou couldst be capable of any vertuous Motion, and how foolish I was, to give Credit to the Words of fuch a faithless Man? Thou hadst found a Friend of Eurimedon very like thy felf; but fince I was to perish by the Infidelity of one of you, thou shouldst have let me die at Byzartium, without drawing out my Misfortunes longer by thy Perfidiq usness, Arfacomes received these Words as he was wont to do those he had ordinarily from me; and I receiv'd that Loss of my Hopes with an Affliction that was like to have brought me to my Grave.

In the mean time, our Bark put, off from the Shore, and within a while after, came to the other Side. I was taken out of it in spight of all my Complaints, and put into the Chariot that waited for us; we had no fresh Horses to change, and therefore were fain to travel more slowly than we had done in Scythia; and indeed there was not so much Danger for Infacomes and his Crew, because the second Day we got out of Eurimedon's Jurisdiction. I was in eternal Lamen tations all the Way, my

Tears

Tears run down incessantly, and in whatsoever Argacomes said to comfort me, I still found new Matter of Affliction. Within a few Days I learn'd that Arfacomes's Purpose was to retire to Alexander; and as he had found some Probabilities of settling his Fortune by that Design, I also found some Hope of Consolation in it. I knew that Alexander was a generous Prince, an Enemy to those that were Traitors to their Princes, as he had shewed in punishing Bessus; that he had a great deal of Consideration of Persons of my Sense and Quality: and moreover, that he had married Statira, to whom my Brother had been extremely dear, and who was the Sifter of Artaxernes, to whom I was fo, and from whom they had taken me away: I hoped, that by discovering my felf to that Great Queen, by giving her the Relation of her Brother's Life, and by letting her know how much he was concerned in my Lofs, I should make her take so much Interest in my Fortune, as to grant me her Protection, and to procure the King her Husband's. This Thought did fomething allay my Discontents, and gave me Strength to go through that Journey.

We overcame it without any other Troubles, fave those of my afflicted Mind, and we cross'd through Provinces, and faw Towns, whose Names I know not. At last we arrived in this Country, but at our Arrival we heard that Alexander was dead the Day before, which News deprived Arfacomes of all his Hopes, and put him to think upon other Resolutions. He would not go to Babylon, which he heard was in great Troubles, by the Contests that arose upon the Death of Alexander; but Astiages, who was in his own Country, provided a Place for him to retire to, and brought us to the House of a Cousin of his, not above a Hundred Furlongs from this Place, and about Fifteen or Twenty from the Euphrates; we were very well received there by the Master of the House, who shewed an Excess of Joy to Assiages for his Return, and for his Friend's fake offered Arfacomes all

the Services he could defire of him.

His House was very well built, and strong enough to make some Resistance in it; besides, it was far from any High-way, encompassed with Woods, and very little in P 2 Sight;

Part IV.

Sight; we spent some Days there, with Conveniency enough to my Persecutors, but with so great a Sadness to me, as was like to have put an End to all my Mise. ries with my Life. Ah! Arfaces, how often did I complain of you, when I saw my felf deprived of the Relief I had expected from you; and then again, how often did I excuse you, when I remembred the Order Arsacomes had taken in Scythia, to keep you from knowing whither we were gone? Then from the Complaints I had made against you, I fell into Lamentations for you, and not doubting but that you loved me well enough to feek after me, I could not think of the Grief my Loss had caused in you, without becoming as sensible of your Sorrow as of mine. I had passed some Days in these Afflictions, when Opportunity made me undertake a thing above my ordinary Courage. The Knowledge Arfacomes had, that I was of no very adventurous Humour, made him less careful in keeping me, than he had been when first he took me; and seeing me now in a strange Country, where I knew no Creature in the World, he left me at greater Liberty than before. The Season then was very hot, and being got up one Morning before Day, to take the cool Air at a Window that look'd into the Garden, I stood there for a while, musing upon my ftrange Misfortunes: But scarce had the first Beams of the approaching Light discover'd the Prospect of the Field, when that Sight made me think upon my Liberty. That Window was low enough to flip down into the Garden, by Tying my Sheets to the Bar of it, and I knew there was a Gate which gave Passage out of the Garden into the next Wood, and which was fastened only with a Bolt on the Infide.

Then I believed, that if by that Means I could get forth, I should find some Way to get to Babylon, where I might andress my self to Queen Statira, at whose Feet I hoped to meet a Sanctuary. This Thought was hardly come into my Mind, when I resolved to put it in Execution, knowing that if I should be taken again, my Condition could not be worse than it was already. The Woman that came out of Scythia with me, lay in my Chamber, but she was then asleep, and used always to sleep

fleep fo foundly, that one could not wake her without a very great Noise; that Assurance made me much the bolder, and so going to my Bed-side as softly as possibly I could, I got me ready in Haste, and taking my Sheets, tied them to one another, and having fasten'd them to the Window, the Desire of Liberty shut up my Eyes to all manner of Danger. I skipp'd down into the Garden as happily as I had contrived, and being gotten out, I put my felf, tho' not without extreme Fear, into the first Path I met, hoping I should quickly find some body or other, that might direct me the Way to Babylon. I had thrown my Veil over my Face, and tho' I trembled exceedingly for the Danger I was in of making some ill Encounter, yet did I go fo fast, that I presently got a good way from the House, and my Legs little accustomed to fuch Journeys, were extremely tir'd, and stood in need of Rest to carry me further. I was constrained therefore to fit down under certain Trees, where while I endeavour'd to unweary my Body, my Mind was perplex'd with terrible Disquiets; my Fear then began to make me see the Greatness and Difficulty of the Business I had undertaken, I considered the Dangers into which a Maid all alone, and a Maid apparel'd in a Habit rich enough to be observ'd, might fall, as well in the Remainder of the Way I had to go, as at my entering into the Town, before I could get unto the Queen. But all the Evils my Fear could represent, seem'd less to me than that I fled from, nor did I know any Peril fo great, into which I would not have cast my self, to escape the Hands of my cruel Enemy. That Defire renew'd my Strength, and I rose up again with a Design to think no more of Resting till I came to Babylon. I had met with no body to learn the Way, but I faw the Euphrates within a Hundred Paces, and knowing it stood upon that River, I resolved to follow the Bank of it at a little Distance, nor nad I walk'd very long before I discovered the Towers of that stately City. My Hopes were redoubled by that Sight; but alas! they were cruelly deceived, for when I had not above eight or ten Furlongs more to go, I heard a Noise behind me, and turning my Head in a marvellous Fright, I faw Arfacomes riding after

Part IV

ter me as fast as ever he could; it was the Day he kill'd Arfaces's Horse, and 'twas after me he was running when he met Arfaces and Lysimachus by the River-side, and by that Encounter interrupted their Conversation. Judge, if you please, of the Excess of my Grief, at that cruel Loss of the Hope I had conceiv'd, and exempt me from repeating the Complaints I made, and the Reproaches of Arsacomes. He took me in his Arms without alighting, and lifting me with a great deal of Strength, fet me before him upon his Horse, and gallop'd back toward the House from whence I was flying, but he follow'd not the Bank of the River, for fear of some Encounter that might stop him; and presently after having met Astiages, who was riding after him, he did not want a Guide to find the Way. My ungrateful Fugitive, (faid he to me) you see the Gods have not approved your Flight, fince they have so little favour'd it, and you may judge by the little Care they have taken to deliver you out of my Hands, how much they blame and condemn your Cruelties. I was so dejected with my Grief, and so tired with my Journey, that I had hardly Strength to give him any Answer; and if I reply'd sometimes to what he faid, 'twas only with a few interrupted Words, whereby my Refentments expressed themselves better than by any other kind of Discourse. In short, I was brought again to that House, or rather to that cruel Prison, where I fince have passed so many wretched Days. Arsacomes being exasperated by this Accident, and by the unlucky Mischance of Alexander's Death, which deprived him of the Hope of that Retreat and Protection he had expected from him, but more by the pernicious Counsels of Astiagos, who incited him continually to make use of his Power, and who could not forbear, even in my Presence, to blame the Remainder of that Respect he still had toward me, began to use me otherwise than he had done formerly, and made me see by all his Actions, that I had Cause to fear the highest Outrages from him, if the Gods fuffered me to be much longer in his Hands.

This Fear compell'd me to dissemble with him, and I often disarm'd his Fury by a seigned Compliance. But Assiages, who being less preposses'd than he, discovered

my Intention better, press'd him every Day to seek Ways to satisfy himself, and by his Sollicitations corrupted him so far, that in the End Arsacomes forgot who I was, and no longer knowing me to be Berenice, whom he was wont to behold with so much Submission, ran on to that cruel Resolution, which was diverted by the Assistance of the Gods, and by the Valour of the Prince my Brother, whom they miraculously sent to my Relief.

The Princess made a Pause at these Words, and lest the Princes Matter enough to entertain themselves with the Events she had related: Lysimachus told her the Discourse he had heard in the Wood between Arsacomes and Assiages; but scarce had she taken a little Breath, when she was sollicited by the Princes, and by the Amazon Queen, to let them also hear her last Adventures; and being willing to give them that Satisfaction, she went

on thus:

You have been informed by Hippolita, that it was the Encounter of a Litter that made me leave her; but she could not tell you, that he whom I faw lying in it, was Arfaces, who according to what I guess by his Narration, was then removing to Babylon; his Paleness could not hinder me from knowing him, and after what you have heard of his Life, you cannot be ignorant of the Motions which were stirr'd up in me by that Sight, yet could it not have perfuaded me, Brother, to leave you in the Condition you then were; but I believed I could do no less than use my Endeavours to see Arfaces again, and to shew him Berenice, whom he fought, and the finding of whom would put an End to all his Wandrings; this was my only Intention, and when I followed the Litter, 'twas with a Hope to overtake it quickly, feeing it went but very flowly, and to come back to my Brother again within a little while, as I had done but for the Hindrance I met withal, and then I had spar'd you both the Blood which you have mutually shed. I walk'd as sast as I was able, leaning upon Alcione's Arm, when I unfortunately met with five or fix Horsemen, who presently furrounded us, and having cry'd that I was Berenice, they leapt from their Horses, and putting up the Beavers of their Helmets, no longer concealed their Faces from me.

me. The first I cast my Eyes upon, was that Villain Astiages, and by him, with an incomprehensible Amazement, I saw Eurimedon. Eurimedon the Lieutenant of Thrace, from whose Persecutions I had sled with Assacomes, and whose Presence was yet less supportable to me than his. To instruct you by what Encounter he was then with Assiages, you shall know that after my Departure, his Love to me had made him leave Byzantium, and not caring to lose his Fortune to obtain me, he had substituted his Brother in his Command, and with a greater Number of Men than Arsacomes had, was come in Pursuit of us with a Resolution to kill Arsacomes, and

pull me out of his Hands.

But whether it were that he made not so great Speed, or took not the fame Way, the Gods would not fuffer him to overtake us. He was at last arrived at Babylon, where he had lain a while conceal'd, not being willing to be known in the Design that brought him, and not having been able to learn any News of me there, he had spent a great many Days in feeking me about the Country, but all his Search had been to no Purpose, till the Day my Brother kill'd Arfacomes, and laid Assiages for dead, with a Blow of his Gauntlet. As foon as that wicked Fellow had recovered himself again, he went directly to the Place where Arfacomes's Body lay, and finding there was no Life in it, when he had lamented his Loss according to the Affection he bore him, he caused him to be taken up by some of his Servants that were come thither, and was carrying him to the House of our Retreat, when he was furprized in that Employment by Eurimedon and his Party. Eurimedon, as foon as he knew Astiages, ran at him with his Sword drawn; but Aftiages finding he was too weak, had cast himself at his Feet, and appealed him by the Promise he made to serve him in the Recovery of Berenice.

Hereupon Eurimedon had changed his Threats into Protestations of Friendship, and having learnt all that Assiages knew of Arsacomes's Destiny, he had kept him from that Time, to make use of him for the Execution of his Promise. They had together caused Arsacomes to be buried, and meeting in each other a great Conformity of Dispo-

fition,

fition, they by little and little had banish'd their Distrusts, and Heart-burnings, and had resolv'd to seek me together in a Country, from whence Astiages be-

liev'd I could not be gotten very far.

Eurimedon had been careful to win Astiages by all manner of Kindnesses, and Astiages, who in the Condition of his Affairs, stood in need of a Support against those whom his Crimes had made his Enemies, had really engaged himself to do him Service, and unfeignedly sought Occafions to fatisfy his Desires. He also had brought him to the same Retreat where we had been, and which Arsacomes's Servants had quitted after their Master's Death, and from thence it was that they were come, when my cruel Destiny made me fall into their Hands. Eurimedon appeared transported with Joy at that Encounter, and taking one of my Hands, which he kifs'd whether I would or no, How great is the Goodness of the Gods, (faid he) fince they restored me the adored Princefs I had loft, after having punish'd him that stole her from me. I was so extremely surprized at this unhappy Accident, that I neither had Strength nor Courage to reply; but only pulling away my Hand from between his, and looking upon him with a disdainful Eye, I made him know, that if my Sight was a Contentment to him, his produced a quite contrary Effect in me; but this Encounter surprized not me alone, for Alcione, who was with me, was like to have fallen down dead, when the faw Aftiages, and Aftiages who knew after he had ey'd her a good while, was so astonish'd at that Sight, that as impudent as he was, he had much ado torecover himself. In the mean Time Eurimedon being got again on Horseback, and having set me before him, by the Help of one of his Servants, carried me toward that cursed House, which my ill Fortune had chosen for the Retreat of my Ravishers. Astiages having overcome his Amazement, did the same to Alcione, and in spight of our Cries, which made all the Plain to ring, and of all the Resistance we could make, after having many Times escaped, and many Times been taken again, we were at last partly on Foot, and partly on Horseback, carried or dragg'd to that House, with all Violence in the World; P 5

Aftiages's Friend, who was as wicked as himself, lent it him very readily, as well out of his Inclination to Mischief, as his Expectation of those Recompences Eurimedon

made him hope for.

As foon as we both were Prisoners, as I had been before, Eurimedon came to me, and putting on all the Mildness he could, alledged his Love to excuse his Violence, pray'd me to take Heart, and to believe that his Passion should never make him exceed the Bounds of that Respect he ow'd me, and that if I would but take some Pity of it, I might expect any thing in the World at his Hands, and even my Return into Scythia, and the Regaining of that Liberty Arsacomes had robb'd me of; he also protested, that if I had shew'd him but any Favour at Byzantium, he would from thence have carried me home to my Father, and that if by my future Carriage, I did not oppose the Intention he had to serve me, I should quickly fee an End of those Miseries, that hast cost me so many Sighs and Tears. He faid a great deal more to me, but I gave no Ear to him at all, and having learn'd by Arfacomes's last Deceit, never to believe the Promises of wicked Persons, I was nothing moved by his; but looking upon him with an angry Eye, Hope not (faid I) to work upon me by the Hopes thou givest me, I will not receive any Favour or Assistance from thee, but fcorn thy Services, as much as I hate and despife thy Person. Arsacomes himself was not so odious to me as thou art, for tho' he were unworthy of my Affection, he had many Advantages above thee, both by his Birth and Qualities, and by the Services he had done me, which should strangle those guilty Hopes thou hast conceiv'd, and make thee know, that if the Gods have punish'd his Crime with Death, thou oughtest to expect a much severer Recompence for thine. Moderate thy Ambition, (continued I, presently after) and consider, that if the Daughter of a King be to be ferv'd by Eurimedon, 'tis only as a Subject, or a Houshold Servant. Eurimeden found Matter of Offence in these Words, but his Love made him digest them, and my Quality, or some other Considerations did indeed give him some Respect which left him not the Courage to execute his wicked Intentions. Poor

Memory.

Poor Alcione, the Companion of my Fortune, who was then my only Consolation, was in no less Affliction than I, not being able to behold the Face of Assiages, the only Cause of all her Sufferings, and of the Death of her dear Husband Theander, without falling into Swoonings

which brought her almost to her Grave.

Yet that shameless Fellow came into her Presence with a brazen Impudence, and when he could make her hear him, Alcione (said he) for I dare not call you Sister, you have fuch a strange Aversion against me, let us henceforth forget all that's past, and suffer me to make a Concession to you which I never made before. I ever lov'd you, and if the Consideration of Theander made me silent, know, it was my own that made me jealous of Cleonimus, and not that of Bagistanes. The Interest of that Kinfman should not have perfuaded me to trouble the Repose of my Brother, who was much dearer to me than he, and you well may judge that that Compliance alone would not have been able to carry me on to fo great Extremities. Forget therefore those Injuries which my Love may excuse, and with them forget Cleonimus, who either is no longer in the World, or else no longer remembers you; and if you will receive me for your Hufband, I will supply the Place of Theander, we'll re-unite our Fortunes and our Houses, and you shall be no less happy with me, than you were heretofore with my Brother. Poor Alcione was not able to hear these impudent Words from a Man whom she had so much Cause to hate, without being transported with a Rage which she could not possibly dissemble.

Ah! Monster, stain'd with thy Brother's Blood (cried she) thou Monster, black with a Thousand Treacheries, canst thou think me capable to hear thy horrible Propositions? And hadst thou yet this last Crime to commit, to be the most detestable of all Men living? Having spread thy Villanies both in Europe and Asia, dost thou come back into this Country, to give them a Conclusion suitable to them, and to thy self? If C'eonimus be dead, thy Crimes have kill'd him; and if he no longer remember Alcione, 'tis only his Virtue has made him forget her, and 'tis only thy Vice that brings her again into thy

Memory. But be confident, be confident wicked Wretch (purfued she) thy Love is yet more cruel to me than thy Hatred, and I sooner will consent to see thee a second Time be the Death of what is dearest to me in all the World, and also of my self, than to let thee hope that I will make Theander's Murtherer his Successor. Aftiages, in whom all Shame was quite extinguish'd, hearken'd without blufhing to thefe Reproaches, but flill by all his Actions endeavoured to make Alcione believe that he was really in Love with her. In these Torments we liv'd till the Time of our Deliverance, having hardly an Hour free from the Persecutions of our cruel Ene-The Master of the House where we were, had obtain'd a Protection from the Officers of this Army, to the End your Forces might not indamage any thing that belong'd to him, neither did any of the Soldiers ever come near his House, and he leaving it to Astrages's Difpoling, went every Day into your Camp, and feigning to be very well affected to your Party, fought only to fecure his House, and his Estate; the Care he took in Fayour of his Friend, did much advantage the Defign they had to he concealed for many Confiderations. Eurimedon knew that Prince Lysimachus, whose Lieutenant he was, was one of the Commanders of your Army, and after the Fault he had committed in leaving Byzantium, at a Time when there was most Necessity of his being there, durst not appear before him. And Aftiages, blasted with Crimes, and defam'd in his Country, had not the Confidence to shew himself. And indeed I think they were feen but by very few, and if one of them went out sometimes, he left us under the Custody of the other, with fo exact a Watch, that all Means of Liberty were utterly cut off. Yet did I hope in the Assistance of my Brother, who I knew was fo near us, though I much fear'd his Wounds, and could never get any true Information concerning them from our Landlord; I was confident he would take Care to make me be fought after, and that if the Place of my Imprisonment could be but known to him, I doubted not but he would easily rescue me out of the Hands of my Enemies.

I also knew that Arfaces was in this Country, and dar'd to hope that his coming hither was for no other End but to seek me; and I may truly protest, that if I had not expected Relief from one of you, I had put an End to my Miseries by some Essect of my Despair. I receiv'd the sweetest Consolations from Alcione that she could possibly invent to give me, and the Assection she expressed to me, had oblig'd me to love her so dearly, that there was nothing in my Heart I did not utter to her; she knew all the Particulars of my Life, and took so great an Interest in them, that she forgot her own Missortunes to bewail mine, and bore all the Assistions which infamous Assigner made her suffer, with an admirable Patience, that she might be able to comfort me in

all my Griefs.

Our cruel Guardians were neither at the Battle you gave, nor in any of the Encounters that pass'd, but while fo many Thousand Men were fighting in this Plain, they kept within Doors, where their only Combates were against Berenice and Alcione. In the End, whether it were they believ'd they could not longer stay fecurely in that House, and that they had a Mind to seek some other Retreat that might be further from your Army, or that Eurimedon had a Defign to carry me back to Byzantium, or to some other Place where he thought himself more powerful and more absolute, they resolv'd to leave that House, and to perfuade us to be set on Horseback to go along with them; they often swore they would carry us to the Place where they had taken us, fince by all their Submissions they had not been able to soften our Hearts, nor make us lofe the Aversion we had against I gave no Credit at all to their Words, and yet I was easily persuaded to get on Horse-back, that I might leave that detested House, hoping that in the open Field I should find many more Occasions to save my felf, than in that Prison from whence I went, with a Hope which had not so strongly flattered me till then. Eurimeden had fent away some of his Servants the Day before, and had kept with him, besides Astiages and his Kinsman, who went also with us, only Three of his Men, well arm'd and well mounted. With this Company we were

riding in a Way which feem'd to lead us toward Babylon, when we faw a Cavalier compleatly arm'd, coming upon the same Road. We being desirous to interest all those we should meet, in our Deliverance, had our Faces unveil'd, and that Man had no fooner cast his Eve upon Alcione, as he was passing by, but he stopt short, and presently after turning about, and coming back again, began to ride at a little Distance by our Ravishers; but keeping his Eyes fixt upon us, with an Action that difpleased Eurimedon, in whom all Objects were sufficient to beget a Jealoufy, Friend, (faid he) travel on your Road whoever you are, and leave not your Way to follow us, unless you feek your own Destruction. The Stranger was not at all terrified with that Threat; but looking boldly upon Eurimedon, I know the Ladies that are with you, (answered he) and before I go away from them, I'll know whether they go along with you willingly or by Force. Ah! 'tis by Force, (cried we both together) and if you were not too weak against fo many Enemies, we would implore your generous Assistance. You shall have it as weak as I am, (replied the Stranger) and I will die in the Defign of delivering you, fince I am not strong enough to effect it. He had not ended these Words before his Sword was drawn; and with a most warlike Garb had prepar'd himself to receive Eurimedon, who transported with Anger, fell instantly upon him with all his Men. The Gods guided the first Blow he made; and tho' Eurimedon's Sword gave him a light Hurt in the Arm, his luckily finding way under Eurimedon's Cask, ran him thro' the Throat, and opening a Passage for his Blood and Life together, made him tumble dead among the Horses Feet. The Stranger, after this gallant Blow, rush'd into the Midst of his Enemies with an admirable Courage, but they inviron'd him fo furiously, that he quickly was wounded in many Places, and his Horse kill'd between his Legs: Yet had he the Satisfaction to fee Afriages's Coufin fall to the Ground before him, who being run quite thro' the Body, lost his Life for the Quarrel of his Friend. This kindled him with fo great a Rage, that re-doubling his Blows upon the valiant Stranger, who prepar'd himfelf to dispute his Life a-soot with the Help of a Tree, against which he set his Back, he in spight of that marvellous Resistance, being seconded by his Companions, would have seconded the Death of Eurimedon, and of his Friends, if the brave Demetrius had not come in to his Relief, and had not for the Preservation of his Life, and the Recovery of our Liberty, finish'd what he so gene-

roufly had begun.

You have heard what he did for our Deliverance, and how he gave that gallant Stranger (who presently after was known to be Cleonimus) the Means to save himself, and to kill Astiages's faithless Kinsman, and his ancient Enemy, but not without being so extremely wounded, that notwithstanding all the Care that has since been taken of him at Polemon's House, this is the first Day the Physicians have given any Hope of his Recovery, in which I am concern'd as much as I am oblig'd to be, by the Service he did me, and by the Consideration of Alci-

one, whom I dearly love.

Thus did the Princess conclude her Recital, and Arfaces, who for all his Impatiency at some Passages of it, had heard it to the End without Interruption, fell then into a very passionate Discourse, whereby he let her see how infinitely he was concern'd in the Afflictions she The Heavens be prais'd, (faid he) fair had fuffer'd. Princess, who after having expos'd you to Misfortunes, for which in Probability you were not born, restore you now at once this Brother fo great, and fo dearly lov'd, and (if in the Number of your other Happinesses I durst count this last) your faithful Arfaces, whom by the Remembrance of your Lofs, and by the Transports of this cruel Jealoufy, you have been like to lofe, and for whom you have had the Goodness to preserve your self. He faid a great deal more to that Effect, and after that Oroundates, with the other Princes, and Queen Thalestris had feconded him with the like Discourses, the whole Company retir'd, to leave the Night to Arfaces, who probably stood in need of it, having spent the greatest part of the Day in this Narration. Lysimachus and Itolomeus waited upon the Princesses to Polemon's House, and being afterwards come back into their Tents, pass'd the Night

Night all of them, if not with a perfect Rest, at least with less Disquiets than those they were wont to feel.

The next Morning Lysimachus, Ptolomeus, Oxyartes and Eumenes came to Oroondates's Tent, where they found Arfaces in fo fair a way of Amendment, as made them hope he would be absolutely cured within a few Days. All the Princes testified the Excess of their Joy; and after they were fet down by the Bed-fide, Lyfimackus addressing himself to Arfaces, Sir (said he) I protest to you, by all the Gods, and by the Respect I owe to Parifatis, that the most fensible Discontent I now am touch'd with, is that of having been one of those that have help'd toward the Ruin of your illustrious House, and that I am tied to you and yours, by fuch powerful Considerations, that this cruel Remembrance will ever give a Check to my most glorious Fortunes. It is true, Sir, I follow'd Alexander in the Conquest of those Dominions that were the King your Father's; and that in the Division that has been made of them fince the Death of Alexander, Thrace, Pontus, and Bofphorus, are fallen to my Share : These Provinces are big enough to form a Kingdom of a large Extent; but tho' by the same Right I were Possesfor of all that are in Asia, I would deliver them up freely to their lawful Prince. I therefore divest my self of all the Pretentions our Division may have given me, and fince it is not in my Power to restore you the whole Empire of the King your Father, I'll ferve you to the last Drop of my Blood in the Design you may have to recover it. Lysimackus had hardly spoken, when Ptolomeus who would not appear less generous than he, Ægypt, (faid he to the Prince) and Arabia, with part of Africk, shall also return to the Subjection of Prince Artaxerxes, for I never will accept a Crown, which I cannot hold, but from the Spoils of his. Eumenes made him the same Offers of Cappadocia and Papklagoria, and those generous Princes strove who should be forwardest to shew, that they knew how to despise Kingdoms, to render what they ow'd to But Arfaces abused not their Civilities, and looking upon them with a very grateful Countenance, I prefer your Friendship (faid he) before the Provinces you offer me, and before all those, which by the Rights

of War we have loft; but the Generosity you express, shall never find me of so unworthy an Humour as to make a wrong Use of it. 'Tis not by that Way that I ought to rife to the Throne again, nor will I receive that from all the Liberality of my Friends, which the Valour of my Enemies has taken from me. Therefore I protest to you by Orosmades, by Berenice, and by my Honour, that all your Offers, and all your Intreaties, shall never be able to shake me from this Resolution. Possess the Territories which now are lawfully yours, and which I fee you command without Envy, and without Difcontent; there are enough besides in the. Power of our Enemies to establish a Monarchy great enough; and if you would not have Darius's Son live as a private Man, I refuse not your Assistance to re-conquer. part of them. This was Arfaces's Resolution; and tho the Princes, especially Lysimachus, stuck obinately to their Proposition, it was impossible for them to overcome his Relistance, or make him recede from what he had determined. Since Artaxerxes is alive (faid Lysimackus) I never will command the Thracians, and if I will have a Kingdom to be worthy of Parifatis, I must take it up of other Provinces than those that belong to the Prince her Brother. 'Tis from my Enemies I ought to win Dominions, and not from Persons whom I honour more than all the World. He faid a great deal more to the fame Effect, but all was to no Purpose; for Prince Artaxerxes continued firm in his Intention. I cannot want a Crown (replied he) while I have fuch Friends as you are, and if we must divest any of those that are posses'd of our Inheritance, let us divest Perdiccas and Leonatus, rather than Lysimachus and Ptolomeus; our Enemies have Provinces enough for you, and for me too, and the Empire of Darius (concluded he with a Sigh) may very well fatisfy the Ambition of us all.

Orcondates, who was witness of this Conversation, and who never open'd his Mouth to interrupt it, admired the Magnanimity of both, and found Reasons in Artaxerxes's Resusal, which persuaded him to approve it. When from that Entertainment they fell upon another, Orcondates and Lysimachus began to shew the Disquiets they

were in for their Princesses, of whom they could hear no manner of News, of whom Arfaces had made no mention at all in the End of his Discourse, tho' he had been in Babylon, and that he continued a good while near those that had taken them. The Discontent of these two Princes was prefently observ'd by the Company, and after the Cause of it was known, there was so much Reason found in it, that it could not justly be condemn'd. ces, faid he, had heard nothing of them, but that the Rage wherewith he was then transported, had lest himvery little Care of inquiring; and after he had mused a while upon that Confideration, I think, Brother, (added he of a sudden) we may learn the Truth of what's become of them by a Means that's not come into my Hand. You do not doubt but that my Interests now are inseparably link'd with yours, and that tho' I were not tied to yours by those of our House, Roxana, Perdiccas, and all they of that Party must needs be my Enemies now, because I know them to be yours. I shall chearfully fight against them with you; but before you give me a second Battle, that which I owe to the Assistance I have receiv'd from Seleucus, obliges me to demand a Parley with him, and to use all my Endeavours to withdraw him from a Party, against which I am ready to declare my felf; if Perdiccas will make one at our Interview, he shall be admitted, and if you please to be present, Brother, you and I together will fee them Two, and make our felves known to them; and if we cannot by Generolity perfuade them to restore the Princesses my Sisters, we shall at least know what we ought to fear or hope concerning them, and the Truth of the Condition they now are in. Oroondates and all his Friends lik'd very well of Artaxerxes's Motion; and Lysimachus, both for his own Interest, and the Desire of keeping them Company, would gladly have been one, if his mortal Hatred to Perdiccas had not opposed all manner of Interviews between them. From this Discourse (which was broken off by the coming in of Craterus, Oxyartes, An'igonus, Demetrius, Polyperchon, and many other chief Commanders) they fell to that of the War, and of the Preparations they were to make for a fecond Battle; and those Princes to whom Artax-

Artaxerxes's military Experience was known only by Report before, heard him speak in Terms, which made them see, that for all he was but young, he had attain'd to as much Knowledge as the oldest and greatest Captains in the World had ever had. Wherefore all those great Commanders subscrib'd to his Opinions, with a Readiness which even wounded his Modesty; and the Knowledge of his Quality, and of his Vertue, begot fuch a Respect in them to his Person, as they had never given to any body but Alexander. There was not one among it them, who came not to pay him their Civilities with a great deal of Submission, and very few, who according to Lysimachus's Example, did not offer to restore the Territories whereof they had already taken Possession; but he gave them the same Answers he had done the former, and perhaps it was their Affurance of his Refusal, that made them fo forward in those generous Offers. Within a little after, the Room that was left in the Chamber, was fill'd by the Arrival of the Princess Berenice, Queen Thalestris, the fair Deidamia, Apamia, Arsinoe, Cleone, and other Ladies; and when they after one another had inquired how the Two Princes did, that noble Company began an Entertainment, in which they spent most part of the Day. The next Morning Prince Oreondates left his Bed, and Artaxerxes found himself much mended, that he doubted not but within a Week he should be as well as Oroundates.

The Princess Berenice, by her own Inclination, and by her Brother's Desire, kept him Company for the most part, and that passionate Prince enjoy'd a Happiness in her sweet and charming Conversation, which made him utterly forget his Wounds. That fair Princess, whose Love was not inserior to his, drew Contentments also from his Sight, and from the Testimonies of his Assection, which were able to make Reparation for part of the Sorrows she had undergone; and that long Deprivation of those Joys which were then assorded them, made them far more precious to one another, than if they had not been interrupted: A Thousand Times did lovely Berenice use little Reproaches to her dear Arsaces, for the Injuries he had done her in the Transports of his cruel Jealousy,

and a Thousand Times did happy Arsaces, (reading in her Eyes that her Anger was neither disobliging nor dangerous) excuse himself by a Silence accompanied with flaming Glances, and fixing his Lips upon one of her fair Hands, seem'd as if he would breath out his Soul

there for the Expiation of his Faults.

Oroondates was joy'd to see the Satisfaction of these Two Persons whom he lov'd so well, and the Happiness of Artaxerxes was fo dear to him, that he could not look upon his Contentments with less Delight than if they had been his own; but he could have wish'd as Fortune like that of his, and that Sight awakening the. Remembrance of his old Felicities, drew Sighs from his-Breast a Thousand Times a Day. In the Interim, he. busied himself with the other Commanders in the Duties of his Charge, and all of them labour'd to put the Army in a Condition to fight another Battle; they caused. their wounded Men to be carefully look'd to, their Arms to be mended, and also the Chariots that had been broken; they recruited their Troops with fresh Menthat came up daily to the Army, and in short all things. tended to the cruel Preparation for a bloody Day. Philonides brought a Reinforcement of Ten Thousand Men out of Agypt to Ptolomeus, Antisthenes Six Thousand to Antigonus out of Phrygia, Lysimachus Four Thousand Syrians to Laomedon, and within a few Days after with Six Thousand Cappadocians, and Paphlagonions, which Aristedes brought for Eumenes, they saw the valiant Menalippa arrive with Ten Thousand Amazons. Thalestris was not a little joy'd, when she saw her Supplies were come, and most part of the Princes would needs wait upon that fair Queen to meet them, and with Admiration beheld the March, and Discipline of those warlike Women. Their Queen receiv'd them with a great deal of Sweetness and Affection, and Menalippa, with the chief of her Companions, long imbracing her Knees, express'd what an infinite Trouble her Loss, or her tedious Absence had imprinted in the Hearts of all her Sabjects. The whole Army welcom'd these Succours very respectfully, and the Troops that were already quarter d willingly yielded them the most commodious Place to incamp

Book VI. incamp in. They were in this Condition when Arfaces left his Bed, and that fame Day his Satisfaction was increafed by the Sight of his faithful Criton, whom certain Soldiers brought in, having taken him about the Camp, where he was feeking after his Master. Arfaces, when he had embrac'd him many Times with a most particular Affection, heard by him, that the Commanders of the Enemies Army, especially Selencus, had shew'd a great deal of Trouble for his Departure, and that not having been able to guess the Cause, they had imploy'd several Persons to seek for him. This confirm'd Arfaces in the Design of seeing Seleucus and Perdiccas before the Battle, and with that Intent he impatiently waited for a more perfect Cure. In the mean Time, all the Princes being met together in his Chamber by Oroondates's Counfel, would have deliver'd up the fole Authority of the Army into his Hands, and press d him to accept of it, with the most earnest Intreaties they could invent to win him to it, but all their Persuasions would not serve; and after he had long refus'd all manner of Command, all they could obtain of him at last, was, that he would come in for the Seventh Man, to take his Turn among the Six other Princes, to whom the Army had already submitted. They all receiv'd that Companion joyfully, and while he was recovering Strength, they often fent out Parties; for knowing that the Enemies Army increas'd as well as theirs, they strove to diminish their Number by frequent Skirmishes, in which there was much Blood shed every Day on either Side. Among those that got greatest Renown in those Encounters, was the young Demetrius, who gain'd an extraordinary Reputation; and being of an Age to feek Occasions to shew his Worth, he fuffer'd none to escape without giving Proofs of a Valour that was far from common. Yet was it no longer Despair that thrust him headlong into Danger, for his Heart had allay'd part of its Sorrow, by the Birth of another Passion; the sad Remembrance of Hermione, had by little and little given Place to the Charms of Leidamia, and that Love of Ashes and of Tombs had yielded to a more lawful Affection; the Current of his Tears were stopp'd, and his Words were no longer inter-

interrupted with fo many Sobs, but his Sighs continued still tho' they had chang'd their Object, and tho' this last were less deplorable than the former, it was so powerful, and so imperious, that those timerous Messen. gers of his Love durst hardly venture to make their Paffage out of his Breast. Yet did he resist the Birth of this latter Passion, and oppos'd the Force of it with all the Remembrances of Hermione; but tho' those forrow. ful Ideas ferved his Intention for a few Moments, the fight of Deidamia conquer'd all those Obstacles, and dissipated all his Resolutions. That fair Princess wept daily for a Loss which was still fresh in her Memory, and at first Demetrius had contented himself with weeping with her, confirming her in the Design of loving the Remembrance of her dear Agis eternally; and if in the beginning he had found some Consolation in the Humour, and in the Destiny of that Princess, he now desired an Alteration in them both. He had infenfibly dry'd up his Tears to become her Comforter, whose Companion in Affliction he had been before; and in short, as he had before lamented only his own Misfortunes, so now he feemed to have forgot them, to become fensible of Deidamia's. She, who had observed the winning Qualities of Demetrius, who knew his Birth, and who (besides) found her felf oblig'd to his Civilities, and to the Care he took for her Consolation, and for her Fortune, shew'd him a great deal of Acknowledgment, and beheld him with more good Will than all the rest; but being her Grief was very lively, and very real, and that her Heart in that Condition was little capable of a second Affection, all her Inclinations to Demetrius went not beyond the Limits of Esteem and Gratitude, and he whose Passion settled it self with a most profound Respect, and who was more afraid of Agis, for all he was dead, than of all his living Enemies, knowing Deidamia's Mind, durst neither complain of his Condition, nor desire onemore advantageous. He thought it not enough to forbid his Tongue the Use of Speech, but would also keep even his Eye, and Sighs from discovering his Passion, and equally fearing to offend, both what he began, and what he ceased to love, he tied himself up strictly in a very narrow Constraint.

d

fr

ti

pe

m

R

cl

)

f

1

.

d

t

e e

le

r,

is

n

d

ne

i-

es

)

re

d

m

er

rt

C-

nd.

If-

nd

an

d,

neid

n

nd

at

ry

In these Terms he stood, when the whole Army was ready to try the Success of a second Day, and Arfaces being then well enough cured to ride on Horseback, and to fight, approv'd of the Resolution which he knew all his Companions had, to fend and present their Enemies Battel within Three Days. They had Intelligence by Spies that were return'd out of their Camp, that their Army was no less recruited than theirs, and that from Media, Lydia, Pamphilia, Caria, and Parihia, there was a Re-inforcement of Five and Thirty, or Forty Thousand Men come to them; and not being willing to afford them Time to make themselves stronger, they with a general Opinion determined to fend them a Challenge, and to agree with them both upon the Day and Field for deciding of their Quarrel. Cleomenes and Aristides were chosen for that Commission; but before they went, Arsaces taking them aside, informed them of what he defired, and gave them Charge to demand an Intervenience of Perdiccas and Seleucus the next Day between the two Camps for him, and one of his Friends with all necessary The Deputies departed, having received Securities. their Instructions, and the Princes remained with the Ladies, who began already to tremble, and grow pale at the Approach of the Battel. Berenice was like to die with Fear for her dear Ariaxerxes, and for the Prince her Brother, who she saw escaped out of so many Dangers only to precipitate themselves into a new one, and to try the Hazard of a Day, the Events whereof were very Apamia and Axfince grew wan for their dear and noble Husbands; Deidamia, for all she was exempt from loving any Body that was alive, was not without Fear for her worthy Friends, and among all, the Princess from whom the hoped for Support, the bestowed her particular Wishes for young Demetrius. Only Thalestris appeared fearless among so many timerous Princesses, and making some Attempts to banish out of her Mind the Remembrance of Crontes which afflicted her, she shew'd her felf at the Head of her fair Amazons, both fairer and chearfuller than ordinary, her Satisfaction was caused by their Arrival, and she could not dissemble the Contentment she receiv'd, by being able to affift those Princes with

with her Forces, whom till then fhe had only ferv'd in her fingle Person. The two Camps being not far assunder, Cleomenes and Aristides were not long ere they return'd, whereupon the Soldiers ran thronging to the Tent of Antigonus, who commanded that Day, and where the Princes were then assembled. The Answer they heard was fuch as they defired, for Cleomenes told them that the Enemies had gladly received their Proposition, and that Perdiccas had promifed to expect them the third Day, with a Hundred Thousand Men in the next Field. All the Company welcom'd this News with joyful Cries, and the Rumour of it going out of the Tent, ran presently from one to another, into all Parts of the Camp. Afterwards Cleomenes turning toward Arfaces to give him an Account of his whole Negociation: Sir, (faid he) I have followed your Orders, and having declared your Intention to Seleucus, he appear'd so astonisht to hear you were in our Party, that of a great while he was not able to answer me; in the End, after he had made some Complaints of your Change, he conterr'd with Perdiccas, and they both together promifed me, that to Morrow as foon as the Sun is risen, they will be upon that little Hill which you see on the Right-hand, and what is just half way between their Army and ours; Arfaces was very well pleased with this Answer, and hoping for a good Success of that Parley, he imparted his Thoughts to Prince Croondates, with whom he walked a while upon the Bank of the River. The rest of that Day was spent in their ordinary Employments, and the next Morning as foon as Day appeared, the Princes of Scythia and Perfia called for their Cloaths and Arms, and no sooner had they got them on, but they took Horse, and rode directly toward the Place Cleomenes had told them of. arrived there first, but presently after they saw them coming whom they expected, and Arfaces no fooner knew Seleucus, but he gallop'd up toward him, and the same did Oroundates by his Example. When they were near, they faluted one another in a Fashion that had nothing of Enmity in it, and the' Oroendates were unknown to Perdiccas, (whose Weakness had not suffered him to observe his Face when he had been fuccour'd by him) his grace-

V

tl

fe

h

2

n

-

-

e

y

m

n,

rd

d.

ly

r-

an

I

ur

ou

ole

m-

nd

on

ill

alf

ry

od.

to

oon

ent

ing

er-

nad

ect-

hey

om-

Se-

did

hey

En-

dic-

rve

ace-

ful

ful Presence working the Effect that was usual to it, mov'd Perdiccas to nothing but Respect. After the first Salutation, Arfaces prevented Seleucus, who open'd his Mouth, probably to use some Reproaches against him; You wonder, brave Seleucus, (said he) to see me in your Enemies Party, but when once you know me, you will wonder more that ever you faw me in yours. I know I am indebted to you for my Life, but you shall also know that I have fought for you against Nature, against Justice, against my nearest Friends, and even against my felf, and that perhaps few Men in the World would have preferred the Obligation I have to you, before the Interest which now has pull'd me from you; yet as great as it is, it is not able to make me forget a Friend fo worthy of Esteem as is Seleucus; and I was very desirous to fee him, to justify my felf in his Opinion, and to beg the Continuation of a Friendship, which I no longer can hope for from those of his Party. I never thought (replied Seleucus) it could be out of Inconstancy that Arfaces had forsaken us, and I have found Courage, and Gratitude enough in you, for a Service of small Importance, to believe they must needs be very weighty Considerations that had made you to become our Enemy. Yet could I not hear it without Trouble, nor (if I may fay fo to you) without Refentment, fince by the Promises of Friendship you had made me, I believed such a Man as you are sufficiently engaged. Say, (added Perdiccas, who had not spoken till then) that no Party can lose a Man like Arfaces, without being very much weakned; that the great Actions we had feen him do in favour of us, will not suffer us to bear his Loss without complaining of it; and that in short, (if we may use such a Reproach) we had given him no Cause, by the Usage he received from us, to carry his Assistance to our Enemies. That I gave to you, (replied Arfaces) as it is my greatest Crime, so would it also be my greatest Remorse, if it were not excused by what I owed to Seleucus, and by the Transports of a Passion to which I had then given my felf over. In brief, Perdiccas, fince you know what I have done for you, learn what I ought to have done against you, by learning that I am the Son of Darius. VOL. IV. Those

Those Princesses, whom you brought to the very brink of Death, and whom you now keep Prisoners, are my Sifters; and to give you a fuller Knowledge of me, he who pulled Statira out of your Arms, and who, upon the Banks of Euphrates, made you, with part of your Blood, to fatisfy for the Offence you committed against her that had been your Queen, was no other than this Artaxerxes, who fince has fought for you, against the Protectors of his Blood, and the Revengers of his Quarrel, and this Artaxerxes, who now speaks to you. The Confusion of Perdiccas and Seleucus was exceeding great at this Difcourse of Artaxerxes, and being they had heard by common Fame that Darius's only Son had been dead many Years, they could not learn that he was alive, and that he was Arfaces, without falling into an unparallell'd A. mazement. They should have doubted of the Truth of these Words, if they had heard them from the Mouth of a Person, whose Soul had been less great than his; but not knowing how to suspect such a Man as Arsaces of a Lie, they confidered him from Head to Foot, with more Respect than before, and were not able to open their Mouths to give him any Answer. Neither did the Prince afford them Leisure, but going on with his Discourse, while their Astonishment had struck them mute; Altho' I am the Son of Darius, (pursued he) I come not to reproach you as Enemies of our House, and tho' Perdiccas hath used those Princesses unworthily, whom he ought not to have beheld but with Respect, I know nevertheless that he employ'd his Industry to fave their Lives; and that but for his Care they might perhaps have been Sacrifices to Roxana's Cruelty; this Remembrance sifles part of my Resentments, and obliges me to make a further Trial both of Seleucus's Friendship, and Perdiccas's Generosity, to obtain the Liberty of my Sisters; Compleat the Glory of that Action, O Perdiccas, which you did in favour of them, and restore us a Queen, and a Princess which are of too illustrious a Birth to continue your Captives any longer. Artaxerxes demands his Sifters of you, and Oroundates's Mistress, the desire of gaining fuch a Friend should make you forget your Interests, and if you cannot become his by the Recital of his admirable

f

1

V

f

ri

to

V

da

fu

hi

th

an

Co

Pe

In

ag

bee

Oc

and

for

hith

in 1

me

7.

of

if-

ho

he

d,

at

es,

of

is

of

if-

m-

ny

at A-

of

of

a

ore

eir

fe,

10

re-

cas

ght

ne-

S;

les

11-

s's

m-

ou

sif-

in-

fts,

ble

admirable Actions, consider him as a Prince, who twice has been the Author of your Safety; he fecur'd you once from the Revenge of Lysimachus, and after our Combate upon the River-side, he assisted you again, tho' considering you as Statira's Murtherer, one would have thought he should rather have given you a Thousand Deaths, than the Succour you receiv'd from him. 'Tis this miraculous Man, whose Vertue wins him Idolaters in all Places. 'tis he whom at the Head of his Troops, you have feen defeat your Battalions alone, and carry'd Victory which way foever he turn'd, he under whose Valour I have funk two or three feveral Times, and he-Say no more, (interrupted Oroendates, whose Modesty could not fuffer Arfaces's Discourse any longer) these Praises offend our Friendship, and 'tis enough you told Perdiccas Artaxerxes loves me, to obtain the Favour you demand of him in my Behalf. Statira is without doubt indebted to him for her Life, and I shall be indebted to him for Statira, and also for my Life, if he generously can conquer his Interests, and if he will grant that to our Requests, which he has refused to the Threats, and to the Force of fo potent an Army as that of ours. Perdiccas, who during the Discourse of the Two Princes, had had Time to fettle his Astonishment, and to recall to Mind the Wounds Artaxerxes had given him, and the Shame Oroondates, for all he was unknown to him, had made him fuffer, when at the Head of his Army he had overthrown him on the Ground at the first Encounter, considered those Two Princes, but 'twas Orcondates as his Rival, and Artaxerxes as his Enemy: And recollecting all his Confidence to reply, I am very glad (faid he) to know Persons with whom I have had Encounters of no small Importance, and with whom I shall not fear the like again, tho' Fortune seconded them in the former; I have been wounded by your Hand, Artaxerxes, and by that Occasion that made us fight, you know Statira is alive, and moreover that she is alive by my Assistance; I therefore will not tell you she is dead, as all other Men have hitherto been made believe, and I have too much Interest in her Life to cease to defend it, while the Gods afford Statira is alive, but she's not alive for Oroonme mine. dates : Q 2

dates; altho' the good Office he did me, were sufficient Weight to counterbalance what he hath done against us; and altho' what Arfaces has done for us, were able to make me forget the Wounds he gave me, neither of them ought to hope for that from me, which I would not part with for all the Empires of the World; nor doth any Rule of Generofity oblige me to give that to my Enemy, and to my Rival, which I would refuse to my dearest Friends, and even to Alexander himself, if he were yet in a Condition to make use of the Power he once had over me. But thou shalt (replied impatient Croondates) thou shalt either give Statira to that Enemy, and to that Rival, or else that Life which thou hast already been like to lofe by the Sword of each; I expected nothing from thee, and if I did abase my self so far as to entreat thee, know thou owest that forcing of my Inclinations only to the Power Artaxerxes hath with me.

If I were not with-held by the Promise I have given him, perhaps thou never shouldst return into thy Camp, to boast of the Advantages thou hast over me; and thou shouldst quickly know, that if Statira be not alive for Oroendates, she never shall be so for Perdiccas. Think not (replied Perdiccas, putting his Hand upon the Hilt of his Sword) that thy Threats can terrify me, or that I will take Advantage by the Promise thou hast given thy Friend; I'll defend Statira, both against thy Person, and against thy Forces, she is in my Power, she is in Babylon with her Sister, and that which I have hitherto kept secret for other Considerations than thine, shall now be publish'd to the whole World, to engage thee so much the more to execute what thou hast threatned.

Oroundates suffer'd himself to be transported with his Anger, and would without doubt have decided his Quarrel with Perdiccas, if he had not been with-held by Artaxerxes, who still considering Seleucus as a Man to whom he was obliged, desired to shun the Occasion of drawing his Sword against him. It is an easier Matter, (added the Prince of Persia) for such Persons as Oroundates to execute than to threaten; but I should have hoped that Seleucus (continued he, turning toward him) would have used some Endeavour to draw Perdiccas to

nt

s;

to

m

rt

ny

y,

est

et

ad

5)

at

en

ng

at

ns

en

p,

011

or ik

ilt

at

en n,

a-

to

ee

is

is

14

an

on it-

as ve

n)

re

more vertuous Thoughts. If I had not hitherto (replied Seleucus) known a great deal of Vertue in Ferdiccas, and a great deal of Justice and Integrity in all his Actions, I would never have been his Friend; but I am fo now in fuch a high Degree, that I ferve him without arguing against his Intentions, and without considering any other Interests but his. Then I am disengaged (faid Artanernes briskly) of Part of what I owe you. I acquit you of all, (answered Seleucus) and since you are Perdiccas's Enemy, I cannot look upon you as other than the Enemy of Seleucus. I will not be fo far his Enemy, (replied the Prince) but that I shall remember I am obliged to him, and shall difcern him always from the rest of his Party. They had faid more, if Oroundates, who could no longer endure the Sight of Perdiccas without breaking forth into Rage, had not hastened their Separation: Let's away, Brother (faid he to the Prince) and stay no longer with Enemies, with whom we must henceforth converse no other way but with our Swords. Farewel Perdiccas, (continued he, looking upon him with an Eye that sparkled with Fury, and with an Eye which as resolute as he was, did a little daunt him) defend Statira, fince thou hast undertaken it, but know the Day draws near when thou shalt restore her to me, and all the Blood in thy Body with her. He faid no more, but pulling Arfaces by the Arm, made him without other Salute turn from his Enemies, whom he left with very threatning Words and Actions; yet in the midst of all his Anger, he carried away no small Satisfaction, in having learnt from Perdiccas (who till then had difavow'd it) that Caffandra was in Babylon; and fince he was affur'd of the Place of her Abode by him, who knew it better than any body elfe in the World, he hop'd he should recover her by Force, tho' his Enemies were yet stronger than they were, and tho' Babylon were defended with a Hundred Walls, like that wherewith it was enclosed.

As foon as the Two Princes were returned to the Camp, all the Commanders came about them, to hear what had been the Success of that Interview; and they gave them an exact Account of all that had pass'd be-

Q3

tween

tween them. Dear Companion of my Fortune, (faid Oroundates to Lysimachus) our Princesses are in Babylon, and from henceforward we no more can doubt of their Tife, nor of the Place of their Captivity, but we must win them with the Edge of the Sword, for Perdiccas prepares to defend them with his utmost Power. Perdiccas's Defence (reply'd Lysimachus) will be but weak against the Valour of Oroundates, and perhaps Alcetas has, not conquer'd all the Difficulties he has yet to encounter for the obtaining of Parisatis. After these Words, the rest of the Day was spent in necessary Preparations for the Battle, and the next Morning all the Troops were carefully overlook'd, their Number exactly taken, and the feveral Battalions were disposed, according to the Order they intended to observe. The Day of Battle happen'd to be that of Orcondates's Command, and all the Officers in whom that Prince's Vertue had made a wonderful Impression, shew'd an extreme Contentment that ir fo fell out. Yet Orondates would have shar'd that Glory with his Companions, but they opposed his Intention fo stiffly, that it was impossible for him to make them consent; and even Arfaces himself, whom he press'd to it by all the Considerations of their Friendship, perfifted formerly in the Resolution of the rest, and contenting himself with the Glory he had gain'd at the Head of the Scythian Army, would needs fee his dear Brother, at that of fo many gallant Men, and leave him the whole Honour of that memorable Day.

Oroendates being in the End constrain'd to yield to the Desires of his Friends, protested that nothing but Obedier ce made him accept of an Advantage, to which his ambition never had aspir'd, and asterwards by their Advice he disposed of the Forces on this Manner: He divided them into Four Bodies, as at the other Battle, the first of which was given to the valiant Arsaces; 'twas with an exceeding Joy, and with a marvellous Hope of Victory that they saw so great a Man obey'd by the Conquerors of the greatest part of the World; and with them they that had been his Father's Subjects acknowledged their Prince, and submitted to him with an extraordinary Assection. That Body was composed of Battriordinary Assection.

t

C

(

h

b

t

a

n

V

ſ

C

J

0

F

t

t

iı

d

73:

r

ft

25

C-

k

as.

15

e

or

e.

d

e

)-

C

1-

it

t

-

e

e.

,

d

3

ans, and Zogdians, under Prince Oxyartes, who defired to unite himself to the Fortune of his Nephew, and under Cophes the Son of Artabasus; of Syrians under the brave Laomedon, of Lydians under Menander, and of Cappadocians under the generous Eumenes. The second Body was given to Lysimachus, consisting of Thracians, and of the Inhabitants of Pontus, and Besphorus; of Egyptians and Arabians under Pto'omeus, who would needs fight that Day by the Side of his dear Friend, and of Cilicians, under the Conduct of Orestes, the Brother of their deceased Commander Philotas. The third was affign'd to the great Craterus, and under him marched the valiant Macedonians that were lately of Alexander's Guard, with Polyperchon, who defired to fight at the Head of them; the Africans, Subjects of Ptolomeus, under his Brother Menelaus; as alfo the Armenians, and Mesopotamians, who wanted Leaders fince the Death of their Princes Phrataphernes, and Archesilaus, who with their Sons had fallen by the Sword The gallant Queen of the Amazons comof Arfaces. manded the last, and tho' she would have resused that Charge, she was constrain'd to accept of it, by the most urgent Entreaties of all the Princes; she was follow'd by her courageous Amazons under Menalyppa and Amalthea, by the Paphlagonians, who were led by Euristeus, Eumenes's Lieutenant, by the Hyrcanians under Ibilip, and by the Phrygians under Antigonus, who for all his Greatness, and the Height of his Quality and Reputation, would needs place himself that Day under the Banners of that valiant Princess: Demetrius had an Employment worthy of himself, which was a Body a-part, composed of fix thoufand Horse, that was to keep upon the Wings, and according to the Events and Necessities, to succour them that had need of his Assistance; and the Conduct of Two Hundred Chariots of War, arm'd with Scythes and Plates of Iron, and full of Archers taken out of the feveral Nations, was committed to young Alexander the Son of Pohperchon. The whole Army being thus disposed of, the Four chief Commanders took a Survey of those Troops that were to obey them, and during the Remainder of that Day, they shew'd themselves to the Soldiers, and instructed the Officers in those things they desired to Q4 make

make them know. Craterus, who had the Command that Day, was careful to overfee the Arms, Horses, Chariots, and the Field of Battle; and when Night was come, befides the general Cares, every Man in particular was diversly employ'd in Preparations for that important Day.

The Morning Light began newly to appear, when the Signal of Battle was fet up on the Top of Oroendates's Tent, and the Sound of a Thousand warlike Instruments, which were heard from one Camp to the other, rouz'd up those that were fastest asleep, and excited in the faintest Hearts a Courage which was not natural to them. The Prince of Scythia had not stay'd for it, but his Cares, and his generous Impatience had made him leave his Bed before the Break of Day. As foon as he perceived the Shining of the earliest Beams, I salute thee (cry'd he) O. giorious Day, and thou bright Sun, the tutelary God of my Princess's Country, who To-Day art to give Light to an Action worthy of thy Prefence; if these Years, which my Love has covered with a gloomy Obscurity, have vals'd with fome kind of Dishonour to me, perhaps I To-Day may find Occasion to make my Fortune alone be accused of part of those Faults which have hitherto reflected upon me. My Arms, (continued he) my Arms; and prefently after Loncates having brought them, he put them on with the Help of Araxes, who busied himfelf in that Employment with a Joy which he drew from the Contentment of his Master. They were the same he wore in the former Battle, as well because he had try'd their Goodness, and for Love of the Prince that had given him them, as to make himself the more cafily known to Perdiccas, against whom he had now turn'd all the Anger which before was chiefly against Arfaces. There had been but very few with him at his Rifing, because he was one of the first up in the whole Camp, but his Arms were not quite on, when his Chamber was full of Officers of the Army. He with them went out of his Chamber to go into that of Arfaces, whom he found out of Bed, and with him Oxyartes, Ilvoneus, and many other noble Persons, whose Affections that Prince's admirable Vertues had acquir'd. Brother, 6 cry'd Oroondates as he came in) To-Day we shall have you

you to fight with us, and I hope we shall conquer, since in turning of our Side, you without doubt will make the Victory turn with you. Yes, Brother, (replied Prince Artaxerxes) we shall conquer, and if the Gods are not too much our Enemies, an Army commanded by Oroondates, and by so many valiant Princes cannot chuse but

hope for Victory.

e

's

5,

d

7.

S,

d

e

O.

of

0

h

re

I

e

0

1-

V

e

e

e

t

S

S

1

,

After these Words, and many others full of Modesty, and Civility, they received Lysimachus, Ptolomeus, and Craterus, and by little and little all the confiderable Men of the Army. Berenice, Apamia, and the other Ladies, whom the Apprehensions of that Day had waken'd sooner than ordinary, came thither also. Apamia and Arsinoe openly shew'd the Fear they were in for their dear Husbands; and Berenice, tho' she endeavoured to dissemble part of hers, or to make the Opinion of it fall upon her Affection to her Brother, could not keep the Company from discovering, that tho' Orcondates was very dear to her, yet her greatest Disquiets were for Artaxerxes. Oroondates observed it with much Joy, and as jealous as he had been of him for another, he envied not his Friend the Precedence in his Sister's Affection. 'Twas in her Presence Artaxerxes called for his Arms, which had newly been presented to him by his Uncle Prince Oxyartes; they had been Darius's, and were the same he wore when under the Name of Codoman, he by a memorable Combate had added Armenia to the Crown of Persia, and the Prince's Son having kiffed them, out of the Respect he owed unto that Memory, could not put them on without folemnizing that Remembrance with some Tears, nor without drawing some by his Action from the Eves of Oroundates, and Oxyartes, with the rest of their Compa-As Davius had been the greatest, and most magnificent King in all the World, his Arms shewed Tokens of his Magnificence, and of his Greatness, and the Gold and Stones of Value wherewith they were enriched, afforded no fight of the Matter whereof they were made; to that when the Prince had put them on, he look'd like fierce Achilles in those gallant Arms whereon Vulcan at the Request of Thetis had set forth the utmost of his Skill. All the Princes went out of the Tent together to be Q5

be present at the Sacrifices that were going to be offered thro' the whole Camp, and by the Zeal they testified in that Action, made the Soldiers know that 'twas rather from the Gods than from their Valour they ought to expect the Success of that dangerous Day; the Priest found nothing ominous, either in the Smoak or in the Entrails of the Beasts, and some among them having espied an Eagle slying toward the Lest-hand, drew a Presage from thence, that gave them a very great hope of Victory.

The Troops began presently after to march out of their Entrenchments, and were drawn up in the Plain by the Care of Eumenes and Polyperchon, while Arfaces took a leave of Berenice, which she could not give him without breaking forth into Sorrow, and while Prince Oroundates attended by his faithful Araxes, gallop'd thro' all the feveral Divisions, and by his Words and Presence stirr'd up a Desire to fight in the Hearts of the veriest Cowards; the Princesses were already retired, all the Commanders were at the Heads of their Battalions, and the Forces being quite drawn up, marched toward their Enemies in gallant Order; they had mov'd but a little Way when they perceived them, and from a rifing Ground faw all the Field of Babylon covered with Men and Horses. Their Order was no less beautiful than that of our Princes, nor their March less considerable. had divided his Army into fix Battalians; the first composed of Macedonians, Parthians, and the Inhabitants of Mount Caucasus was commanded by the valiant Seleucus. Cassander led the second, consisting of Carians, Lycians, and of the invincible Argiraspides. The third obeyed Leonatus, and under him marched the Pamphilians, the Oraches, and the Argeans. The fourth was under the Conduct of Alcetas, in which were the Inhabitants of the two Mediaes, the Pelasgians, and those Zogdians that were not under the Jurisdiction of Artabasus. The fifth, whose Leader was Neoptolemus, was made up of natural Persians, and the Inhabitants of Susiana, and those of that part of Bactria, which was under the Obedience of Scytheus. Peucestas brought up the last, and was followed by the Babylonians, Bellites, and the Soldiers of Margiana. Python had the Charge of Two Hundred and Fifty arm'd

arm'd Chariots, and Statanor that of Five or Six Thoufand Horse, which were a Reserve for the same Purpose as those of Demetrius.

The two Armies were no fooner within fight but they faluted one another after the usual manner, and all the valiant Commanders of each Side, animated by the prefent Objects, and by the Resoluteness they observ'd in their Soldiers Faces, shew'd a generous Impatience in their own, and forgot not any Thing belonging to their Charge that could conduce unto the Victory. Lysimachus, Ptolomeus, Craterus, Thalestris, Eumenes, Polyperchon, and Demetrius, appear'd at the Head of their Troops like fo many invincible Alcides; Arfaces was before the first with a more than human Presence, and with a Majesty worthy of his high Birth, which begot Love, Respect, and Fear in all that beheld him; and Prince Oroundates, fuller of Business than all the rest, seem'd also to be greater and handsomer than ordinary, and the Action wherewith he was animated, made a Fire appear about his Face, which dazel'd the Eyes of all that confider'd him. He had already wearied two Horses with riding about to every Rank, nor did he forget any of his natural Eloquence to inflame the coldest Hearts with a desire of Victory. ' My valiant Companions, (faid he to those that could hear him) I am unworthy to command these invincible Forces, which under a Leader worthy of them, have ' vanquish'd all the Earth; but since I have the Glory to fight with you to Day, I shall also have the Glory to conquer with you. I to less generous Persons should represent the interest you all have in this Victory, I ' should make some of you defire it by the hope of inestimable Spoils, others by that of Rest, which after ' fuch tedious Labours you well may wish for, and all by that of the high Reputation your Arms have given 'you, and which from the Issue of this Day expects its · last Establishment : But to the Conquerors of the World, to the Masters of the whole Earth, what can a Stranger promise; what can he make be hop'd that is onot far below them; and what Belief can they have in ' an unknown Person, whose most glorious Advantage is that he holds to Day from the Goodness of your Princes, s and

and of your felves? It shall therefore be neither Spoil onor Glory that I'll propose to you, but the Revenge of vour great King, and the Safety and Liberty of your il-· luftrious Queen: 'Tis against the horrible Murtherers of Alexander you are to fight, and from those very Murtherers you demand nothing but the Widow and Sifter of that victorious King. Besides the Quality that Al-· liance gave them, their Birth is considerable to many of vou; and I affure my felt, that among Troops of fo many feveral Nations, which heretofore were under the 6 Obedience of the worthily deplored Darius, there are a great Number who yet hold his Memory in Veneration. Allow fomething, (valiant Men) allow fomething to that Remembrance; the Son of that great King, more considerable by his Virtues than by his Birth, fights on your Side to Day, and forgets whatever some of you have done against his House, to turn all his Refentments against your Enemies. You will infallibly conquer, being supported as you are, both by the Juflice of your Quarrel, and by the Courage of so many brave Commanders who fight at the Head of you: If vour Foes are valiant, as without doubt they are, fince they heretofore were your Companions, and that they ' shar'd with you in the Honour of so many Conquests; if they be harder to vanquish than those Nations you have overcome without Resistance, the Victory over them will be much the more glorious, and you may boaft, that after having subdued Afia, and the greatest part of Europe and Africa, you at last have conquered the only Enemies that could dispute the Prize of Valour with you'. Oroundates had hardly ended these Words, when the Soldiers, by loud Acclamations, testified what an Impression they had wrought upon them, and at the fame time, they were come so near their Enemies, that it no longer was in the Power of the Generals to bridle their Impetuousness.

The last Signals were given on either side, and the Troops marched up with such a Fury as could be compar'd to nothing but it self. On one side the great Arsaces, and on the other the brave Seleucus began that bloody Day, and the foremost Ranks of each Party, after having exchang'd

natus

exchang'd a Cloud of Arrows, closed to a nearer distance, and drawing their Swords fell without delay to handy Blows. Their valiant Leaders who equally fought for Glory where the Danger was greatest, and who knew not one another by reason they had chang'd their Arms, ran fiercely to the Charge, and having broke their Javelins upon their Shields, which they mutually opposed against their Strokes, they shock'd each other with an incredible Violence. Arfaces was disorder'd in his Seat, and Seleucus was like to have lost his, yet did he fettle himself again with a great deal of Agility, and by his Readiness in drawing his Sword, cover'd part of the Difadvantage of that Encounter. These two great Men being in the middle of their Troops, had not the liberty of a lasting Combate, but were both constrain'd by the Throng that parted them, to carry Death to other Perfons. Eucrates the Son of Axiarchus, Prince of the Inhabitants of Mount Caucasus, with his Brother Evagoras, were the first that found it under the Sword of Arfaces, and tho' they had Courage, and that they charg'd him both together, their Attempts were to no purpose against him, and received a different Death, one by the Point, the other by the Edge of his keen Sword.

From these he passed on to other Enemies, disdaining common ones to chuse out those that were more terrible; Oxyartes, Eumenes, Cophes, and Ilyoneus, endeavoured to follow him amongst the thickest; but though they did Actions worthy of their great Reputatiou, Arfaces open'd their Way whitherfoever he turn'd, and in all Places left bloody Marks of his having pasted. Seleucus and his Men contested for the Advantage with wondrous Courage, and the hand of Seleucus had already laid Copbes in the Dust, and given two dangerous Wounds to Ilyoneus; but then Perdiccas made Cassander advance with his Battalion on the Right-hand, and Leonatus with another on the Left. The falling on of the fierce Argiraspides, who gave Death to all that came before them, soon made the Victory incline toward Perdiccas's Side, and if Prince Oroundates in Person had not brought up Lysimachus with his Troops, those of Arfaces would have been in manifest danger. Demetrius, by the same Order, assaulted Leonatus also at the same Time, but with such Vigour, that he presently trampled under Foot whatsoever opposed his Passage. This double Re-inforcement chang'd the Form of the Battel, and all Perdiccas's Advantage was lost in a Fight of more Equality; but Python then appear'd with his arm'd Chariots, and rushing on with them into the Enemies Infantry, did very considerable Execution. Oro-ondates commanded one young Alexander with his, which making a no less bloody Slaughter, return'd a cruel exchange to the contrary Party. Then it was that the Face of the Battel became more horrible, and Death ran through all the Ranks in many hideous and dismal Forms.

Oroundates having disengag'd himself of the first Cares of his Command, began to fight now in his own Person; and after he had flain the first that withstood his Fury, fought Perdiccas amongst all his Enemies, and made his Name refound which Way foever he went. Perdiccas avoided not the Combate, but he was inviron'd by a Number of his Friends, to whom Oroundates's Valour was well known, and who by the Trial they had made of it in the former Battel, were afraid with Reason for their General, and opposed the Design he had to stand the Fury of that dreadful Enemy. Orondates hew'd open his Passage to them, but not without Difficulties, and Dangers wherein any other Man but he would have been loft. Python, who at the Head of his Chariots made a lamentable Massacre of the Foot, having a while beheld his admirable Actions, notwithstanding the Hazard he. faw in that Resolution, had yet the Boldness to encounter him, and remembring in how many Perils he had out-brav'd pale Death under the Command of Alexander, he thought that without Dishonour he could not shunthat laft.

With this Belief he opposed Croondates's Passage, and charg'd him with so weighty a Stroke, as made the Prince of Scythia know the Vigour of his Enemy; but he soon gave him better Proofs of his, for with his Shield receiving those Blows wherewith he seconded his first, he with one single Thrust, in the Default of his Cuirass, found Entrance to the Seat of Life. That samous Captain opening

ce

it,

in

opening his Arms fell dead at the Feet of Agenor his youngest Son, who, not willing to furvive his Father, instead of giving him the last Assistance, ran desperately as a Lion to his Revenge; Cruel Man, (cried he to the Prince) fince thou hast kill'd my Father, either die, or kill me also. As he spake these Words, he rush'd precipitately upon him with fo little Circumspection, that in the Point of the Sword yet wreaking with his Father's Blood, he found the End of that Life, which he no longer would preserve. Nearchus, a most intimate Friend to Python, flew upon this Murtherer with a great many others, but the furious Scythian made Way amongst them like a Thunder-bolt, and fending some of the forwardest to bite the Ground, laid Nearchus himself there also. having given him two very dangerous Wounds. This Action was in the fight of Perdiccas and of his Friends, who altogether ran upon Oroondates with terrible Cries, and with Perdiccas whom he fought, had like to have made him also find his Death. Yet did he lay about him with a more than manly Fierceness, and there came but few Blows from his Hand, that drew not some of the Enemies Blood. He had descried Perdiccas in the midst of them, and 'twas at Perdiccas he rush'd headlong thro' the clashings of a Hundred Swords. Are these (cried he to him) the Effects of thy gallant Resolution, and of thy Love? Come out of that Croud, which faves me from thy Valour, and if thou art a worthy Successor of Alexander, shun not the Sword of thy Rival, and of thine Enemy.

These Words receiv'd no Answer, but the Blows of a great many Swords at the same Time; and without doubt that obstinate Prince had met his Death among so great a Number of Foes, if the Gods had not sent Arsaces and Lysimachus, with a Troop of valiant Men to his Relief. Arsaces was all dyed in Blood, and Lysimachus had shed so much, that his Arms were read all over with it. Those two brave Princes having sound Oroendates in so great a Danger, Courage, (cried they both together) we must Conquer, we must take Revenge, and breaking into that Rampact of Men which sheltred Perdiccas from

the Prince of Scythia's Fury, quickly lessen'd their Number, and with Actions worthy of themselves, disengag'd

their gallant Friend.

Oroundates was forry he had neglected the Care of a General, to follow his particular Revenge; and knowing that all the Enemies Army began to encompass them, fent Word by Alexander to Craterus, and to the Amazon Queen, that they should bring up the last Battalions to charge. This Order was presently perform'd, and Craterus on the one Side, and that matchless Queen on the other, came into the Fight, presently after Alcetas, Peucestas, and Neoptolemus. Then it was that the Massacre grew horrible, and that the famous Troops of Alexander, with the renowned Amazons, slew many Thousand Men, whose Courage might have prolong'd their Destiny against other Enemies. But on the other Party, the Macedonians, and the invincible Argiraspides made no less Slaughter of those with whom they fought. Those fearless Women, led by their warlike Queen, got Ground of Neoptolemus's Squadrons; and Thalestris being engag'd in Fight with their Commander, after some Blows that pass'd without Inequality, wounded him at last with many others, and made him fall under the Horses Feet. No sooner was Alcetas come up into the Battle, but Lysimachus had fought him through all the Field, loudly defying him to the Combate, and by provoking Words inviting him to use the same Diligence on his Side; but Aletas was not at Liberty to do fo, for he was then exchanging Blows with Demetrius, and that with fo little Advantage, that if his Friends had not deliver'd him out of the Hands of that young Prince, there was no doubt but he had lost his Life. Among all the chief Commanders on either Side, there was not one but made himself remarkable that Day, by many Proofs of Courage. Lysimachus did Actions beyond all the fabulous Heroes; Ptelomeus, thrust on by an old Animosity, clofed often with Seleucus, but they still were parted by their Men, and carried the Effects of their Anger otherwhere, which became fatal to divers valiant Soldiers. Eumenes fought all about for his ancient Enemy Neoptolemus, but the Amazon Queen had already dispatch'd him

to his Hand. Craterus, Oxyartes, Polyperchon, Antigonus, and Laomedon, appear'd both in the Duties of Commanders, and in the Actions of Soldiers, worthy of their high Reputation. Part of the Day was passed without giving any probable Conjecture of the Success of that bloody Battel, when Statanor (whom Perdiccas had referv'd with Six Thousand Horse) advanc'd at the Orders he receiv'd, and came pouring down upon the Amazons. Seleucus on the other Side having rallied the Argiraspides; Invincible Argiraspides, (cried he) who have never fought but to overcome, will you fuffer your felves to be robb'd of a Victory which is your due? And will you lose in one single Day that high Renown you have acquired in fo many Years? Ah! Let us rather die together, and if we cannot be Conquerors, let us at least fall with a Glory worthy of the Memory of Alex-

With these Words he ran foremost into the Lydian Squadrons, and having with a shock overthrown their Prince the brave Meander, he with two fuccessful Blows flew Cleobulus and Leoftenes, the Sons of Ariobarfanes, who fought near his Person. The Argiraspides, encouraged by that glorious Example, gave fuch a furious Charge against the Lydians, and Cylicians, that having forc'd their Opposition, they made them turn their Backs, and began to purfue them with a terrible Execution. On the other Side the Amazons not having been able to refift the brunt of Statanor's Cavalry, had given back in fpite of them; and those fresh Men falling in when they were tir'd with fighting, put them in so great Disorder, that they wanted but very little of being defeated. The valiant Thalestris, doing Wonders in her own Person, saw Clytemnestra and Amalthea fall dead at her Feet, and running headlong to their Revenge, her Horse was kill'd under her with a multitude of Wounds. The Danger in which she faw her felf could nothing daunt her, but fighting a-foot with an invincible Courage, she made a heap of Bodies which for a while defended her from her Foes. Yet was she ready to have lost her Life, not being able to hope for any Relief from her routed Amazons, when

when the Gods brought Arfaces to her Assistance. The Name of Arfaces struck a Fear into the Enemies Troops; but before he could make his Passage to the Queen, her Cask was fallen at her Feet, and her Head being unarm'd, would certainly have been wounded by the Hand of cruel Statanor, if the unexpected Sword of a Warrior, who appear'd upon a sudden, had not flash'd off that sacrilegious Arm, and with a fecond Blow taken the Life of that barbarous Man, whom the fight of fo much Beauty had not been able to make relent. After this Action, that valiant Man slew Sinus, also the Prince of Susiana, who was one of the eagerest to kill or take the Queen, and gave the Son of Scytheus a mortal Wound. By these Exploits he scattered the Throng wherewith Thalestris was almost o'erwhelm'd, and had already procur'd her Means to get upon Statanor's Horse, when they saw the Foe gave way at the arrival of the redoubted Arfaces. Arfaces was follow'd by a Squadron of Battrians and Cappadocians, who under fuch a Leader quickly chang'd the Face of the Combate; for charging into the thickest of Scytheus's Susians and Zogdians, he not only stopt their Impetuosity, but made them lose the Design they had against the Life of their Enemies, to think upon the Preservation of their own. How many courageous Men fell then under the Sword of great Ar saces, and how much Blood did he pour forth to the fair Amazons Revenge, and to Darius's Memory; Soytheus was one of the first that felt his Fury, who being run quite thro' the Belly, fell without Breath in the middle of his Troops. Arthous, Prince of the Pelasgians, would have reveng'd his Friend, but he met a Destiny which dister'd only in this, that Scytheus received his Death by the Point of Arfaces's Sword, and he his by the Edge; for both his Arms, which he had lifted up to discharge a Blow with all his Force on his Enemies Head, being cut off close to his Elbows, he was carried away a while by his unguided Horse, and tumbled at last among the Feet of the rest, where he miserably lost his Life. That Warrior who had first relieved the Amazon Queen, seconded Arfaces with Blows little different from his, and Thalestris

lestris being got on Horseback, and having put on her Cask again by his Assistance, labour'd in her own Revenge with marvellous Animosity. The Amazons rallied in a little Time, and being encourag'd by the Example of their Queen, and by the Help of the Bactrians, and of the Cappadocians their Neighbours, they came on afresh with such a Fury, that the Troops of Statanor, the Susians and the Zogdians having lost their chief Commanders, were no longer able to withstand them, but having fought a while retiring, at last turn'd their Backs, and quitted the Victory and the Field together. The Conquerors feeing them routed, follow'd their Advantage with loud Cries; but in the interim on the other Wing of the Battle the Success was very contrary. The Argiraspides and Macedonians, led by the furious Seleucus, Cassander, and Perdiccas, who then fought there in Perfon, after having broken the Lydian and Pamphilians Squadrons, were already enlarging their Victory upon the Phrygians, and by little and little were putting the better part of the Army in a Rout. They still advanc'd like an impetuous Torrent which nothing was able to resist, when the Gods, for the Safety of their Foes, brought Prince Orcondates to oppose them, who with Ptolomeus and Lysimachus came from another part of the. Battel, where his Presence had been necessary. O Gods, how great was the Indignation of the Prince of Scythia, when he faw his defeated Troops file shamefully before the Face of their Enemies? Certainly, it would be very hard to represent his Fury, but they that came in his way felt the prodigious Effects of it; he cast up his terrible Brow on every side, and having a while considered that fad form of Combate, he gallop'd before the chief of them that fled, and raising his Voice that he might be heard, Whither fly you, (cried he) valiant Men? Whither fly you? What Retreat have you if you lose this Battel? What Walls to escape the Fury of your Conquerors? And how will you fave your felves either from Death, or from eternal Infamy? Are you not the fame: Men that fought under Alexander the Great? and the fame Men who but a few Minutes fince had so gloriously begun

gun the Victory? By what Accident, and by what Loffes are you chang'd and weaken'd? In speaking these Words he opposed their Flight with his Sword up, and stopping one of the chief Lydian Captains by the Arm, Stay, (said he) and face about, see here are thine Ene-By these Words, animated with an extraordinary Gesture, and seconded by others from Lysimachus, and Ptolomeus, he made some of those frighted Men take Heart again, but he encouraged them a great deal better by his Actions. Follow me, (faid he to them) do but follow me the Way that I will open to you; and at the same Time having observ'd Seleucus at the Head of the Argiraspides, he judg'd that a good part of the Victory confifted in defeating him. He advanc'd toward him with a threatning Cry, and Seleucus, who faw him coming, expected him with a great deal of Resolution; the first Strokes they gave were reasonable equal, but tho' at another time Seleucus might have been able to make a long Refistance; Oroondates's Force was then redoubled by his violent Anger, and he shew'd no small Proof of it, when being closed with Seleucus, he lockt him fo firengly in his Arms, that clapping Spurs to his Horse, he lifted that gallant Man out of his Saddle, and having carried him above Twenty Paces, let him fall quite aftonished among the Horses Feet. Cassander, to revenge Selencus, struck Oroendates a blow behind; but the furious Prince turning about to him, made his Sword come down with fuch a force upon his Head, that his Cask was deeply dinted by it; and Cassander himself, having his Face bath'd in Blood, reel'd from his Horse among fome of his Men who were come up to his Relief. Perdiccas could not see these Actions without being terrified, yet having Courage enough to prefer Death before Infamy, did not turn his Back, but dar'd to stand the furious Prince, who knowing him by many Marks, flew at him as an Eagle at his Prey. Thou must die, Perdiccas, (cried he) thou must die for Statira, since thou art unworthy to live for her. With these Words he rush'd upon him with a Fierceness which made him grow pale under his Arms, and forc'd him to approve of the Help he receiv'd from those about him.

With

With two Blows Oroendates gave him, he died his Arms in Blood, which came streaming from Two several Places; but as eager as he was upon his Victory, he could not hinder Perdiccas's Friends from thrusting themselves between, nor from rescuing him out of his Hands half vanquish'd and half dead. Orcendates took Revenge for the Displeasure he receiv'd, upon some of those that caus'd it; and at the same time, turning his Eye towards his own Men, he saw Peucestas and Leonatus fall by the Hands

of Lysimachus and Ptolomeus.

By these brave Examples, the Phrygians, Lydians, and Pamphilians staid their Flight, and fac'd about to their Enemies with fo great Refolution, that they feeing themfelves depriv'd of those valiant Commanders, who had animated them, had not enough to make Resistance; especially when they saw the brave Demetrius, follow'd by a good Body of Horse, come thundering upon them, and Craterus also at the Head of the Macedonians. fecond Charge finding them wavering, utterly took away their Courage; fo that of terrible Conquerors which they were a few Minutes before, they became timerous Runaways; and instead of Victory, which by so much Blood they had almost gotten, they only fought to fave themfelves by Flight. That Rout amongst them was so general, that the stoutest of them shamefully turn'd their Backs, and even the Two chief Leaders of the Agirafpides, Antigenes and Teutamus, both wounded by the Swords of Lysimackus and Demetrius, being escap'd out of their Hands, like feeble Birds out of a Falcon's Tallons, fled to avoid the Danger that threatned them, and by their Example perfected the Routing of their Men.

They are beaten, my valiant Friends, (cried Prince Orondates) they are beaten, and if you neglect not the Advantages your Valour has given you, this is the last Day of the War, and of your Enemies. As he had said these Words, he threw himself among them who yet made Opposition, the greatest part of which were Macedonians, and having with the Troops that vigorously seconded him, water'd the Field with the Blood of those that were most resolute, the rest (unable to sustain his Violence) sollow'd the Example and the Destiny of

their

their Companions. From this part of the Battle, and from that where Arfaces, Thalestris, and Eumenes, had fought with the same Success, the Rout spread over all the Field, and Perdiccas's whole Party gave it felf up either to Flight, or to the Mercy of the Enemy; nor was there longer any fighting feen, but only Execution without Relistance, and a lamentable Slaughter which for a long time the Commanders were not able to hinder. The Amazons, incenfed by the Lofs of their Companions, gave Store of Blood to their Revenge, and the People of the most cruel Natures, as the Thracians, Arabes, and Hircanians, not regarding Pity, covered the Ground all over with dead Bodies. Those that could make use of the Swiftness of their Horses, sought Safety toward the Town, but the miserable Foot either lost their Lives upon the Place, or found their Deaths in the River, where they leapt in headlong to shun the Sword of their Enemies.

The Waters of Euphrates, which before were clear and pure, turn'd red with the Blood of many Thousands, and feem'd to fwell higher with those Screams, which made a fecond River upon their Banks. The renowned Arfaces, carried on by the Ardour of the Fight, had croffed thro' fo many Squadrons, that he at last was come near the Place where Oroundates, by his glorious Actions, had given the Victory to his Party, and feeking for Refistance wheresoe'er he thought he might find it, was brought by Seleucus's good Fortune, where that valiant Man, reduc'd to the last Extremity of his Life, was disputing the Remainders of it a-foot against a Company of Soldiers, who but for his Arrival had certainly made an End of him. Arfaces having heard some body name him, and knowing him by divers Marks, he who tho' he had not known him, and for all he was an Enemy, wou'd not have fuffer'd so brave a Man to be slain, rode up before all his Soldiers, and by re-doubled Cries, stopping the Fury of the hottest among them, drew near to Seleucus, who making use of the Respite that was given him, fet the Point of his Sword upon the Ground, and leaning on the Hilt to take a little Rest and Breath, saw his Blood run down from a great many Parts of his Body. Arfaces

Arjaces putting up the Bever of his Helmet, Valiant Seleucus (faid he) you shall not die, nor shall you be overcome, Arfaces will repay you part of what he owes you, and tho' he was not oblig'd to you for his Life, he, with all generous Men, owes his Relief unto your Vertue. Seleucus knowing him, would no longer difpute his Life, nor his Liberty against him, but presenting him his Sword, I yield my felf (faid he) and I yield my felf without Shame to the Great Arfaces, with this Belief, that if he had not ceased to be my Friend, I should not now have been conquer'd. Arfaces was going to reply, when he perceiv'd him to grow pale, and by little and little to fink into a Swoon, which his Weariness and Loss of Blood had caused. He embraced him presently to hold him up, and feeling him faint in his Arms, he turn'd towards fome he knew, and making them take him up, commanded them to carry him into his Tent, and lay him in his Bed, with the same Care he would have defired to his own Person. Then seeking Orcondates on every Side, he found him bufied with Lyhmachus, Demetrius, and Ptolomeus, to stop the Slaughter of fo many Men, who had given over all Refiftance. Spare, Friends, (cried he, running from Place to Place) spare those who were your Countrymen and your Fellow Soldiers; there has been Blood enough shed already, and our Victory for being the more bloody, cannot now be any thing the more entire. Arfaces help'd the Prince of Scythia in that Employment; and by the Care they took they fav'd the Lives of many Thousand Men. The Soldiers having long been deaf to those Commands, began to obey in many Places, and giving Quarter took some of their Enemies Prisoners, leaving the rest free Liberty to escape; all those that could get off, retir'd to Babylon, the Gates whereof were fet open to them, and of all that mighty Number of Soldiers, which a few Hours before had covered all the Plain, there remained not any without the Walls, but what were either dead or Prisoners. In short, our Princes had as total a Victory as they could have wish'd; and if the Ardour of Oroundates and Arfaces had been follow'd, they that very Day wou'd have appear'd at the Heels of the Run-aways, before the Gates

Gates of Babylon; but Antigonus, Craterus and Polyperchon opposed that Resolution; and knowing that it was near Night, and that the City was not in a Condition to be easily taken, they staid their Impetuousness with very specious Reasons; and telling them how well they ought to be satisfied with the Actions of that Day, perfuaded them to bestow the rest of it in the Care of their wounded Men, and in the Help they ow'd to their Friends, many of whom lying among the Dead, may yet have need, and be in a Condition to make Use of their The Two great Princes, to whose Valour Assistance. and Conduct the Army confesseth it felf indebted for the Victory, subscribed to the Opinion of their Friends; and after having employ'd their Care and their Authority in quieting all the Field, they caused a Retreat to be sounded on every Side, moderating their Impatience by Hope of laying Siege within a few Days to Babylon.

The End of the Fourth Part of CASSANDRA.



